

MHI  
Copy 3

*cop. 1*  
**FM 22-5**

**DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FIELD MANUAL**

---

*Revised*  
*by FM 22-5, Nov. 1971*

# **DRILL AND CEREMONIES**



**HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**  
**AUGUST 1968**

FIELD MANUAL

No. 22-5

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
WASHINGTON, D.C., 2 August 1968

## DRILL AND CEREMONIES

|  | Paragraphs | Page |
|--|------------|------|
| CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION                          |            |      |
| Section I. General                               | 1-3        | 3    |
| II. Drill instruction                            | 4-6        | 4    |
| CHAPTER 2. COMMANDS AND THE COMMAND VOICE        |            |      |
| Section I. Commands                              | 7-11       | 7    |
| II. The command voice                            | 12-17      | 8    |
| CHAPTER 3. SCHOOLING OF THE SOLDIER WITHOUT ARMS | 18-35      | 11   |
| 4. SCHOOLING OF THE SOLDIER WITH ARMS            |            |      |
| Section I. Manual of arms for the M14 rifle      | 36-49      | 18   |
| II. Manual of arms for the M16A1 Rifle           | 50-53      | 31   |
| III. Manual of arms for the .45 caliber pistol   | 54-56      | 43   |
| IV. Manual of arms for the revolver              | 57-60      | 45   |
| V. Manual of the guidon                          | 61-65      | 47   |
| CHAPTER 5. THE SQUAD                             |            |      |
| Section I. General                               | 66-68      | 52   |
| II. Squad drill                                  | 69-78      | 53   |
| CHAPTER 6. THE PLATOON                           |            |      |
| Section I. General                               | 79-83      | 61   |
| II. Platoon drill                                | 84-90      | 63   |
| CHAPTER 7. THE COMPANY                           | 91-105     | 67   |
| 8. INSPECTIONS                                   | 106-111    | 75   |
| 9. THE BATTALION AND THE BRIGADE                 |            |      |
| Section I. General                               | 112-114    | 83   |
| II. The battalion                                | 115-120    | 84   |
| III. The brigade                                 | 121-123    | 87   |
| CHAPTER 10. CEREMONIES                           |            |      |
| Section I. Reviews                               | 124-131    | 89   |
| II. Parades                                      | 132-135    | 96   |
| III. Escorts and honor guards                    | 136, 137   | 98   |
| IV. Colors                                       | 138-146    | 100  |
| V. Funerals                                      | 147-161    | 103  |
| CHAPTER 11. MOUNTED DRILL                        |            |      |
| Section I. General                               | 162-175    | 111  |
| II. Movement of vehicles                         | 176-181    | 114  |
| III. Signals                                     | 182, 183   | 117  |
| IV. Mounted reviews                              | 184-189    | 118  |
| V. Inspection of mounted units                   | 190, 191   | 121  |

\*This manual supersedes FM 22-5, 30 November 1956, including C 1, 15 September 1967.

|   | Paragraphs | Page |
|---|------------|------|
| APPENDIX A. REFERENCES . . . . .                                  |            | 123  |
| B. SYMBOLS . . . . .  |            | 124  |
| C. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M1 RIFLE . . . . .                      |            | 125  |
| D. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE CARBINE . . . . .                       |            | 137  |
| E. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE BROWNING AUTO-<br>MATIC RIFLE . . . . . |            | 139  |
| F. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M14A1 RIFLE . . . . .                   |            | 140  |
| G. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE GRENADE<br>LAUNCHER, M79 . . . . .      |            | 145  |
| H. EXAMPLES OF CEREMONIES . . . . .                               |            | 148  |
| I. CIVILIAN PARTICIPATION IN MILITARY<br>CEREMONIES . . . . .     |            | 152  |
| INDEX . . . . .   |            | 153  |

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION

---

### Section I. GENERAL

#### 1. Purpose and Scope

*a.* This manual is designed as a basis for teaching uniform methods of drill and ceremonial instruction throughout the Army. It includes teaching techniques, manuals of arms for infantry weapons, unit drill, ceremonial drill, inspection procedures, and various other aspects of basic drill instruction.

*b.* Users of this manual are encouraged to submit recommended changes or comments to improve the manual. Comments should be keyed to the specific page, paragraph, and line of text in which the change is recommended. Reasons should be provided for each comment to insure understanding and complete evaluation. Comments should be forwarded direct to the Commandant, U.S. Army Infantry School, Fort Benning, Ga. 31905.

#### 2. Drill Terms, Symbols, Capitalization

*a. Drill Terms.* Drill terms used in this manual usually appear at the beginning of each chapter in which they are first used.

*b. Symbol Keys.* Symbol keys accompany figures, and a reference key for all symbols appears in appendix B, figure 77.

*c. Capitalization.* For ease in distinguishing the four types of commands (para 7-11), they are printed in this manual as follows:

(1) Two-part commands:

(a) Preparatory commands are in SMALL CAPITAL letters.

(b) Commands of execution, LARGE CAPITAL letters.

(2) Combined commands, LARGE CAPITAL letters.

(3) Supplementary commands, SMALL CAPITAL letters.

(4) Directives, LARGE CAPITAL letters.

#### 3. Drill and Ceremonies

*a.* During his first few weeks in the Army the soldier often asks, "Why are drill and ceremonies needed? Why couldn't I use my time more advantageously learning how to fire my weapon?" The answers are that individual efforts alone do not bring survival or victory for the soldier; that the soldier has to learn teamwork and the value of unified and cooperative action so thoroughly that they guide his later actions instinctively. The first opportunity that the Army has to build the spirit of teamwork is on the parade ground. Here, all soldiers learn that there can be no orderly movement of men or units without a precise and unified effort, and every man learns to play his part in the squad, platoon, or company. The commands for drill and ceremonies take on a meaning similar to the signals barked out by the quarterback on a football team. After a short time the soldier knows what to do in response to a command. He also knows what his friends will do and his confidence grows in himself and his friends. Teamwork results, unit pride grows, and a solid foundation is established for further training of all types.

*b.* Drill consists of certain movements by which the squad, platoon, or company is moved in an orderly manner from one formation to another or from one place to another. These movements are executed with order and precision. Each member of the squad does his part with exactness so that on command the squad moves instantly, smartly, and smoothly. The men are trained to stand, step off, march,

halt, and to handle the rifle smoothly as individuals and in unison as members of the squad.

c. Drill training begins the day the soldier enters the Army. In the beginning, he is taught individually the foot movements and the manual of arms. Immediately following this instruction, he practices these movements while marching, halting, and in combination with the handling of his weapon. He repeats the movements until he can perform them smartly and automatically in response to a command. He is then placed in a squad and trained to do all these movements together with other men. His squad is then placed in a platoon with other squads and he learns

other movements. Finally, he takes his place in companies, battalions, and brigades.

d. Ceremonies are formations and movements in which a large number of troops execute movements in unison and with precision upon command, just as in drill. Although the colors and the martial music add glamor to military ceremonies, their primary value is in rendering honors, preserving traditions, and stimulating esprit de corps. A ceremony may inspire hundreds or even thousands of men to work as a great team, standing at attention in ranks, making 1,000 rifles click as one, or marching with machinelike precision. Esprit de corps is generated and every soldier in the unit becomes proud of himself and his unit as the result of snappy appearance and precise group performance.

## Section II. DRILL INSTRUCTION

### 4. Conduct of Instruction

a. The progress made by individuals and units in precise and unified action in drill and ceremonies is determined by the following:

(1) The methods of instruction and the thoroughness of the instructors.

(2) The organization of training groups into units of the most effective instructional size (*c* below).

b. The step-by-step method is the most effective one for instructing in drill and ceremonies. The steps are as follows:

(1) Give the name of the movement and its practical use to the individual or unit.

(2) Give the command to be used for the movement and explain its elements—the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* (para 8).

(3) Explain the movement so that soldiers may understand its pertinent points.

(4) Demonstrate the movement. If it has two or more counts, the demonstrators execute it "by the numbers" (para 5), one count or movement at a time and in the cadence (quick time, double time) in which it is to be executed. If the movement is not a precision movement, the demonstrators are talked through each part of it to acquaint soldiers with the pertinent points to be practiced.

(5) Give practical work by the numbers, or talk the movement through and follow this by having the movement executed at normal cadence. Instructors and assistant instructors supervise each movement closely and have it repeated until precision becomes habitual.

c. Instruction and practical work in all phases of the manual of arms, and in paragraphs 18 through 23, are most effectively presented in the U-formation. In this formation, three squads are formed, each in line, one to the front and one on each side of the instructor. If a fourth squad is present, it forms behind and uncovers the squad that is to the instructor's front.

d. Instruction and practical work in all phases of squad drill are most effectively presented in training groups of squad size. Instruction in platoon drill is best explained and demonstrated by a training group of platoon size. The practical work in platoon drill is executed by the platoon as a unit. The practical work in units larger than a platoon is most effectively conducted when the organized elements of the unit are left intact for drill purposes rather than being arbitrarily assigned to training groups of any given size.

e. Officers, noncommissioned officers, guidon bearers, and special units occupy designated

posts in the various formations or units. When changes of formations involve changes of posts, the new posts are taken by the most direct route, except when otherwise prescribed, and should be taken as soon as practical after the command of execution for the movement. Officers and noncommissioned officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement take their posts when such duties are completed. When executing a facing movement, alining units, or when moving from one post to another, officers and noncommissioned officers maintain a military bearing and move with precision.

*f.* When armed with a rifle (M1, M14 or M16A1) an officer, first sergeant, and the platoon sergeants will *carry* their rifle at sling arms. When a noncommissioned officer takes the place of an officer in commanding a unit, he will take the post of the officer.

*g.* When acting as instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever their presence is necessary. They correct mistakes and insure steadiness and proper performance in ranks. When an individual shows clearly that he is unable to execute the proper movements or assume the proper position, the instructor may use his hands to manually assist the soldier.

*h.* When teaching a marching movement, the instructor will explain the movement and then have the movement demonstrated.

## **5. Additional Techniques for Drill Instruction**

*a.* By the numbers is a method whereby precision movements of two or more counts are demonstrated, practiced, and learned, one count at a time. This method enables the soldier to learn step by step and permits the instructor to make detailed corrections. The instructor commands **BY THE NUMBERS** before giving the commands for the movements. (**BY THE NUMBERS, ABOUT, FACE.**) The first count of the movement is executed on the *command of execution*, **FACE**. The second count is executed on command, **TWO**, of **READY, TWO**.

*b.* All subsequent commands are executed by the numbers until the command **WITHOUT THE NUMBERS** is given. For example, in teaching right and left face, the command

**BY THE NUMBERS** would be given at the beginning of the practical exercise. Each facing is repeated several times by the numbers until the instructor gives **WITHOUT THE NUMBERS**. The same movements are repeated in the cadence (para 16) for the movement. Subsequent movements are also executed in the cadence for the movement.

*c.* *Talking a movement through* is the method by which a movement containing several nonprecision movements is demonstrated, practiced, and learned. Each movement is executed as it is orally described. In Position of Attention, for example, the instructor tells the soldier to bring his heels together smartly on line, turning the feet out equally to form an angle of 45°. After the soldier has executed these steps, the instructor tells him to keep the legs straight without stiffening or locking the knees. After talking the soldier through the remaining steps, the instructor has him practice the movement as it would be normally executed.

*d.* *Oral examinations* are given soldiers at regular intervals throughout their training in drill and ceremonies. These examinations are given with the minimum number of students per instructor. Each soldier is required to give instruction to other members of his group as if they had no previous knowledge of the subject. The instructor rates the soldiers for instructional ability and technical knowledge. The group of soldiers will find that they increase their knowledge of the subject and learn by the repetition required in the examination.

*e.* *Competitive drill exercises* are conducted to determine the best drilled individual and unit within larger units. Appropriate prizes are awarded at ceremonies to the winners in the competition.

## **6. Command Voice**

Instructors should pay particular attention to developing command voice in soldiers. This can be done by—

*a.* Setting the example; that is, by giving all commands to soldiers with the correct voice control, distinctness, inflection, cadence, and snap (para 12–17).

*b. Mass Commands (Only).*

(1) Mass commands may be used to develop confidence and enthusiasm.

(2) When the instructor wants his unit to use mass commands, he announces AT YOUR COMMAND. He gives a *preparatory command* describing the movement he wants performed; for example, FACE THE PLATOON TO THE RIGHT. His *command of execution* is COMMAND. When he says COMMAND, all men in the unit give the command RIGHT, FACE in unison and execute it.

(3) To give mass command while marching, the instructor gives the *preparatory command* for the movement and substitutes COMMAND for the *command of execution* march; for example: COLUMN RIGHT, COMMAND; REAR, COMMAND.

(4) Mass commands for the execution of

the manual of arms is given in the same manner as described in *b* above.

(5) When the instructor wants to stop mass commands, he says AT MY COMMAND. The normal method of drilling is then resumed.

*c. Individual Commands From Ranks.* After a unit has acquired some skill in executing commands and in giving mass commands, the instructor may designate an individual by name or place in ranks and have him give commands. He designates the man while marching or at a halt and describes the movement to be performed as he does for mass commands, except that he does not add COMMAND. The designated man then gives the appropriate command, remaining in his position in ranks and executing the movement with the platoon. After the man has given several commands, the instructor and the rest of the group critique his performance.

## CHAPTER 2

### COMMANDS AND THE COMMAND VOICE

---

#### Section I. COMMANDS

##### 7. General

a. A drill command is an oral order of a commander. The commander gives all commands to his unit, except in the few cases mentioned in this manual.

b. The commander faces his troops when giving commands except as outlined in paragraph 10c.

c. The commander gives AS YOU WERE to revoke a *preparatory command* that he has given. He may give AS YOU WERE to cancel a *command of execution* given at the halt, or movements in the manual of arms that are being improperly executed. In this case, the movement stops and the men resume their former position. If an improperly given command is not revoked, the men execute the movement in the best manner possible.

##### 8. Two-Part Commands

a. Most drill commands have two parts, known as the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution*. Neither of these parts is actually a command by itself, but they are termed commands to simplify instruction.

(1) The *preparatory command* states the movement of formation to be carried out and mentally prepares the individual for its execution. In the command FORWARD, MARCH, the *preparatory command* is FORWARD.

(2) The *command of execution* tells when the movement is to be carried out. In FORWARD, MARCH, the *command of execution* is MARCH.

b. When marching, the *preparatory command* and *command of execution* for each movement are given so they end on the foot in the direction of the turn; COLUMN RIGHT, MARCH and COLUMN HALF RIGHT, MARCH, are given as the right foot strikes the ground

and COLUMN LEFT, MARCH, and COLUMN HALF LEFT, MARCH, as the left foot strikes the ground. The interval between the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* is one step. At the command MARCH the leading man executes a face-in-marching from the march by taking one more step, pivoting on the leading foot, and takes a full step off of the pivot in the indicated direction. All other men execute the same movement in succession on approximately the same point.

##### 9. Combined Commands

In some commands, the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* are combined (*combined command*); for example FALL IN, AT EASE, and REST. These commands are given *without inflection* and at a uniformly high pitch and loudness comparable to that for a normal *command of execution*.

##### 10. Supplementary Commands

a. When a command requires an element of a unit to execute a movement different from the other elements, or the same movement at a different time, the subordinate commander gives a *supplementary command* over his shoulder. A supplementary command may be a preparatory command, a portion of a preparatory command, or a two-part command. When no direction is given it is understood to be *forward*; when no rate of march is given it is *quick time*. Normally when a direction and/or a rate of march is included in a *preparatory command*, only the direction and/or rate of march is given as a *supplementary command*.

b. Generally, *supplementary commands* are given between the *preparatory command* and *command of execution* of the unit commander.



In some cases *supplementary commands* follow the *command of execution*.

c. When a subordinate leader gives a *supplementary command* he turns his head toward the majority of his element and gives the command over his shoulder. He does not face about.

d. Except for movements in mass formation, platoon leaders repeat all *preparatory commands* of the company commander, including the manual of arms, except when the command is COMPANY. In this case they come to attention and command PLATOON prior to the company commander's *command of execution*. The company commander allows enough time for the *supplementary commands* before giving the *command of execution*.

e. To change the direction of a column, the leading platoon leader repeats the company commander's *preparatory command*, the other platoon leaders command CONTINUE THE

MARCH, or STAND FAST, whichever is appropriate.

f. No *supplementary commands* are given for mass drill. They are given, however, when forming a mass or when forming a column from a mass. No *supplementary commands* are given for the company commander's commands AT EASE, REST, FALL OUT, or other *combined commands*.

## 11. Directives

A *directive* is always given by a commander. A *directive* causes action to be taken by immediate subordinate leaders. The commander giving a *directive* (e.g., OPEN RANKS) does not relinquish his command; however, when the commander gives a *combined command* he may relinquish his command. For example, the command TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR PLATOONS would relinquish command to immediate subordinate leaders.

## Section II. THE COMMAND VOICE

### 12. General

The precision with which a movement is executed is affected by the manner in which the command is given. A correctly delivered command is loud and distinct and will be understood clearly by everyone in the unit. Correct commands have a tone, cadence, and snap that demand willing, correct, and immediate response.

### 13. Voice Control

a. The loudness of a command is adjusted to the number of men in the unit. Normally, the commander places himself to the front and center of his unit and speaks facing his unit so that his voice reaches all the men.

b. It is necessary for the voice to have carrying power, but excessive exertion is unnecessary and harmful. A typical result of "trying too hard" is the almost unconscious tightening of the neck muscles to force sound out. This will produce strain, hoarseness, sore throat, and, worst of all, indistinct and jumbled sounds instead of clear commands. Ease is achieved through good posture, proper breathing, correct adjustment of throat and mouth muscles, and confidence.

c. The best posture for giving commands is at the position of attention (fig. 6). Soldiers in formation notice the posture of their leader. If his posture is unmilitary (relaxed, slouched, stiff, or uneasy) the men will imitate it.

d. The most important muscle used in breathing is the diaphragm, the large muscle that separates the chest cavity from the abdominal cavity. The diaphragm automatically controls normal breathing and is used to control the breath in giving commands.

e. The cavities of the throat, mouth, and nose act as amplifiers and help to give fullness (resonance) and projection to the voice.

### 14. Distinctness

a. Distinctness depends on the correct use of your tongue, lips, and teeth, which form the separate sounds of a word and group of sounds into syllables. Distinct commands are effective; indistinct commands cause confusion. All commands can be pronounced correctly without loss of effect. Place emphasis on correct enunciation (distinctness). To enunciate clearly, make full use of your lips, tongue, and lower jaw.

b. To develop the ability to give clear, distinct commands, practice giving commands slowly and carefully, prolonging the syllables. Then gradually increase your rate of delivery until you develop the proper cadence, still enunciating each syllable distinctly.

## 15. Inflection

Inflection is the rise and fall in pitch and the tone changes of the voice.

a. The *preparatory command* is the command which indicates the movement. Pronounce each *preparatory command* with a generally rising inflection. The most desirable pitch when beginning a *preparatory command* is near the level of your natural speaking voice. A common fault with beginners is to start the *preparatory command* in a pitch so high that, after employing a rising inflection for the *preparatory command*, it is impossible to give the *command of execution* with clarity or without strain. A good rule to remember is to begin a command near the natural pitch of your voice.

b. The *command of execution* is the command which indicates when a movement is to be executed. Give it in a sharper tone and in a slightly higher pitch than the last syllable of the *preparatory command*. It must have plenty of snap. The best way to develop a command voice is to practice commands like PLATOON, HALT. Figures 1 through 5 show graphically how commands should sound and how they should be given.

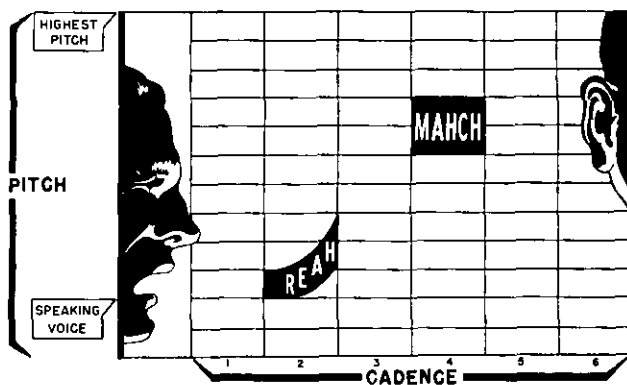


Figure 2. Diagram of the command, REAR, MARCH.

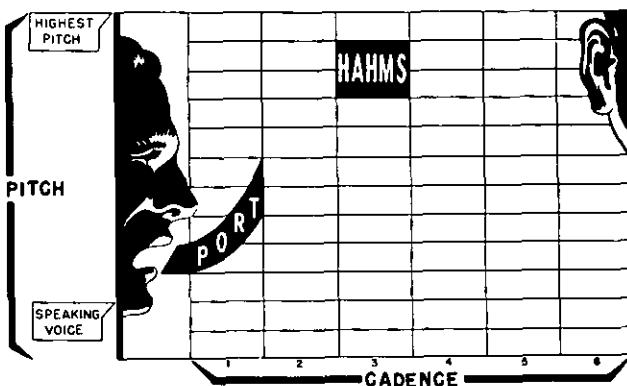


Figure 3. Diagram of the command, PORT, ARMS.

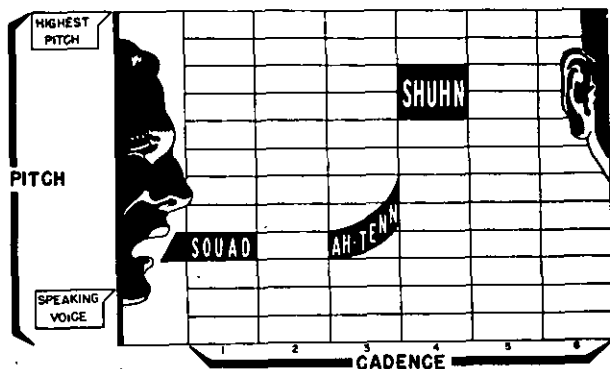


Figure 1. Diagram of the command, SQUAD, ATTENTION.

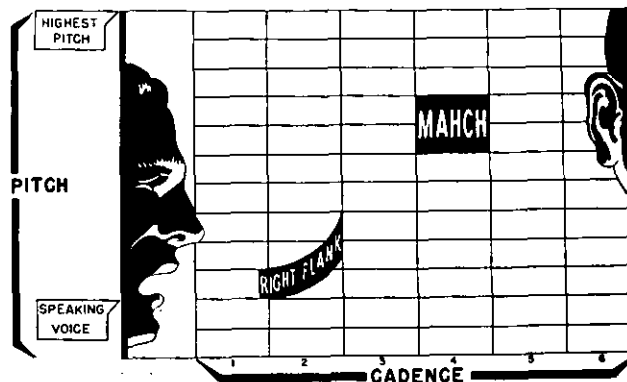


Figure 4. Diagram of the command, RIGHT FLANK, MARCH.

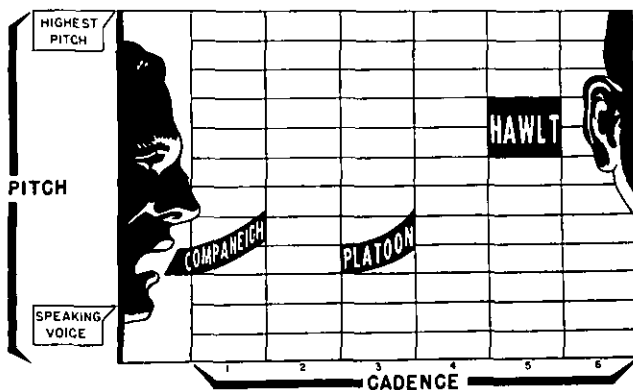


Figure 5. Diagram of the command, COMPANY, (PLATOON), HALT.

c. In some commands, such as FALL IN and FALL OUT, the *preparatory command* and *command of execution* are combined. Give these commands *without inflection* and at a uniformly high pitch and loudness comparable to that for a normal command of execution.

## 16. Cadence

a. Cadence in commands means a uniform and rhythmic flow of words. The interval between commands is generally of uniform length for any given troop unit. This is necessary so that everyone in the unit will be able to understand the *preparatory command* and will know when to expect the *command of execution*. For the squad or platoon in march, except when *supplementary commands* need to be given, the best interval of time is that which allows one step (or count) between the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution*.

For example:

|         |     |       |
|---------|-----|-------|
| One     | Two | Three |
| PLATOON |     | HALT  |

The same interval is best for commands given at the halt. To develop the proper cadence, count the cadence ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR, in quick time; then give commands such as RIGHT, FACE, without interrupting the cadence:

|       |     |       |      |
|-------|-----|-------|------|
| One   | Two | Three | Four |
| RIGHT |     | FACE  |      |

Longer commands, such as RIGHT FLANK, MARCH, must be started so that the *preparatory command* will end on the proper foot, and leave a full count between the *preparatory command* and *command of execution*—

|             |       |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------|
| Left        | Right | Left  | Right |
| RIGHT FLANK |       | MARCH |       |

Pronounce each word distinctly.

b. For a platoon, company, or larger unit, when *supplementary commands* are necessary, the interval must be long enough to let the other leaders give the *supplementary command* for their particular unit. The following example shows proper cadence for giving the command RIGHT, FACE, to a company in line or a column of platoons.

|            |          |            |      |          |     |
|------------|----------|------------|------|----------|-----|
| One        | Two      | Three      | Four | One      | Two |
| RIGHT      |          | RIGHT      |      | FACE     |     |
| (Company   | (Platoon | (Company   |      | (Company |     |
| Commander) | Leaders) | Commander) |      |          |     |

## 17. Snap

*Snap* is the extra quality in a command that demands immediate response. It expresses confidence, alertness, decisiveness and complete control of yourself and the situation. Get as much snap into the commands as possible, but never neglect distinctness. Know the commands and be able to voice them effectively.

## CHAPTER 3

### SCHOOLING OF THE SOLDIER WITHOUT ARMS

---

#### 18. General

a. This chapter contains most of the individual positions and movements required in drill. These positions and the correct execution of the movements in every detail should be learned before proceeding to unit drill. Measurements of distance in this manual are approximated; however, precision is required in drill.

b. The explanation of a movement that may be executed toward either flank is given in this chapter for only one flank. To execute the movements toward the opposite flank, substitute the word "left" for "right," or "right" for "left" in the explanation.

c. Any marching movement may be executed in double time unless stated otherwise. When a movement is to be executed in double time from a halt or from quick time, the command **DOUBLE TIME** immediately precedes the *command of execution*. (When the unit is in double time, **DOUBLE TIME** is not given preceding the *command of execution* for the movement.)

d. For short distances only, the commander may have his unit move a designated number of steps forward or backward by giving the appropriate command; e.g., **FOUR STEPS FORWARD, (BACKWARD), MARCH**. Troops then step off on the command of execution and halt automatically on the fourth step. This movement may not be executed in any direction except forward and backward.

#### 19. Drill Terms

To help understand the meaning of drill terms used in this chapter, the following explanations are included:

a. *Element* is an individual, squad, section,

platoon, company, or larger unit forming a part of the next larger unit.

b. *Step* is the prescribed distance measured from heel to heel of a marching man.

c. *Cadence* is the uniform rhythm in which a movement is executed, or the number of steps or counts per minute at which the movement is executed.

(1) *Quick time* is the cadence of 120 counts or steps per minute. It is also the name of the marching movement in which 120 30-inch steps per minute are taken.

(2) *Double time* is the cadence of 180 counts or steps per minute. It is also the name of the marching movement in which 180 36-inch steps per minute are taken.

#### 20. Position of Attention

a. Assume the position of attention (fig. 6) on the command **FALL IN** or **SQUAD (PLATOON), ATTENTION**.

b. To come to attention, bring your heels together smartly on the same line.

c. Turn your feet out equally, forming an angle of 45°.

d. Keep your legs straight without stiffening or locking your knees.

e. Hold your body erect with your hips level, chest lifted and arched, and your shoulders square and even.

f. Let your arms hang straight without stiffness along your sides with the backs of your hands outward, your fingers curled so that the tips of the thumbs are alongside and touching the first joint of your forefingers. Keep your thumbs straight and along the seams of your trousers with all fingers touching the legs.

g. Keep your head erect and hold it squarely to the front with your chin drawn in so that the axis of your head and neck is vertical. Look straight to the front.

h. Rest the weight of your body equally on the heels and balls of your feet.

## 21. Rests at the Halt

a. The following rests are executed at the halt: *parade rest*, *stand at ease*, *at ease*, *rest*, and *fall out*.

b. At the command REST, of PARADE, REST (given at attention only), move your left foot 10 inches to the left of your right foot. Keep your legs straight so that the weight of your body rests equally on the heels and the balls of

your feet. At the same time, place your hands behind your back just below the belt line. Keep the fingers of both hands extended and joined, interlocking your thumbs so that the palm of your right hand is outward (fig. 7). Hold your head and eyes as at the position of attention. Remain silent and do not move.

c. At the command EASE, of STAND AT, EASE (given from the position of attention), execute parade rest as described above, but turn your head and eyes directly toward the commander. This command is given to gain the individual attention of the unit when it is in a rest position, without sacrificing a uniform appearance.

d. At the command AT EASE, keep your

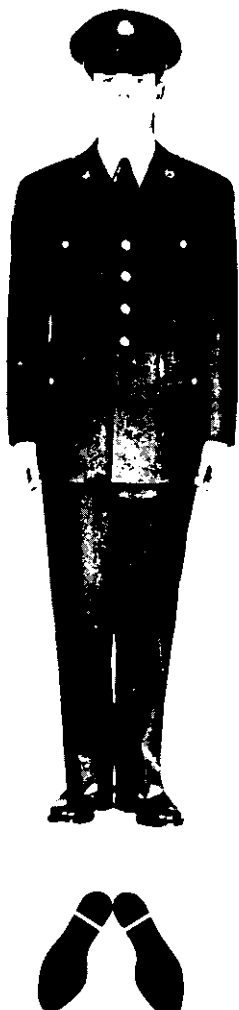


Figure 6. Position of attention.

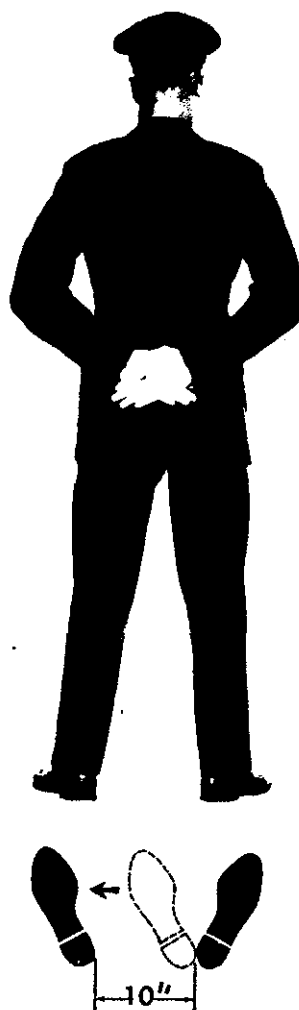


Figure 7. Parade rest (rear view).

right foot in place. You may move, but must remain silent.

e. At the command **REST**, keep your right foot in place. You may talk and move.

f. **AT EASE** and **REST** may be commanded from the position of attention, from each other, from parade rest, or stand at ease.

g. In resuming the position of attention from at ease, stand at ease, or rest, take the position of parade rest at the preparatory command. At the command **ATTENTION**, assume that position. (If a subordinate unit is already at *attention*, remain in that position.)

h. At the command **FALL OUT**, given only to troops in a line formation at the position of attention, you may leave your position in the formation, but remain in the immediate area. Resume your former place in the formation at the position of attention at the command **FALL IN**.

i. On the command **AT EASE** or **REST** you must remain standing. Permission is required to smoke or to drink.

## 22. Facings at the Halt

Facings at the halt are executed in quick time.

a. *Face to the Flank.* The command is **RIGHT**, (**LEFT**), **FACE**. This is a two-count movement. At the command **FACE**, slightly raise your left heel and right toe, and turn 90° to the right on your right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of your left foot, in one count. Hold your left leg straight without stiffness (1, fig. 8). On the second count, place your left foot beside your right foot, as at attention (2, fig. 8). Hold your arms as at attention when executing this movement.

b. *Face to the Rear.* The command is **ABOUT**, **FACE**. This is a two-count movement. At the command **FACE**, move the toe of your right foot to a position touching the ground one-half the length of your foot to the rear and slightly to the left of your left heel. This is the first count of the movement (1, fig. 9). Do not change the position of your left foot and keep your right leg straight without stiffness, resting most of the weight of your body on the heel of the left foot. On the second count, face to the rear, turning 180° to the right on your left heel and the ball of your right foot so that

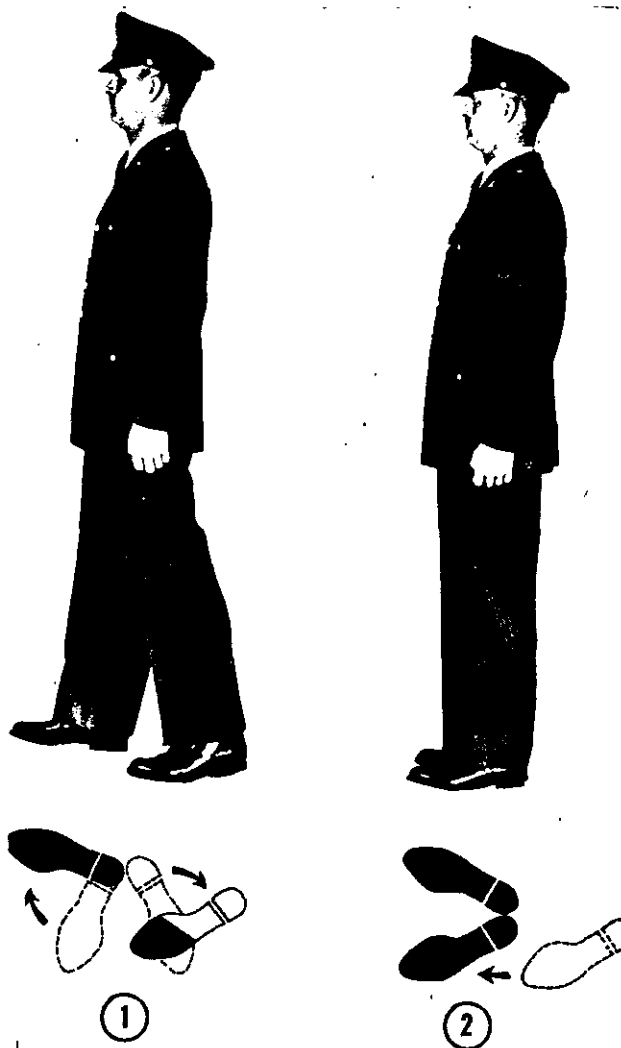


Figure 8. Right face.

your feet are as at attention when you complete the turn (2, fig. 9). Hold your arms as at attention when executing this movement.

## 23. Hand Salute and Eyes Right

a. For instructional purposes, the command is **HAND, SALUTE**. This is a two-count movement and should be taught by the numbers. On the first count raise the right hand until the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress or forehead just above and slightly to the right of the right eye, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm down, upper arm horizontal with the elbow inclined slightly forward, with the hand and

wrist straight (fig. 10). On the second count (READY, TWO) drop your hand and arm in the most direct manner to your side as in the position of attention.

b. EYES, RIGHT is a one-count movement. On the command RIGHT, turn your head and eyes to the right at an angle of 45°, keeping your shoulders parallel to the front. On the command FRONT of READY, FRONT, turn your head and eyes to the front. When executed while marching, the command EYES, RIGHT is given as the right foot strikes the ground, and READY, FRONT as the left foot strikes the ground, and READY, FRONT as the left foot strikes the ground.

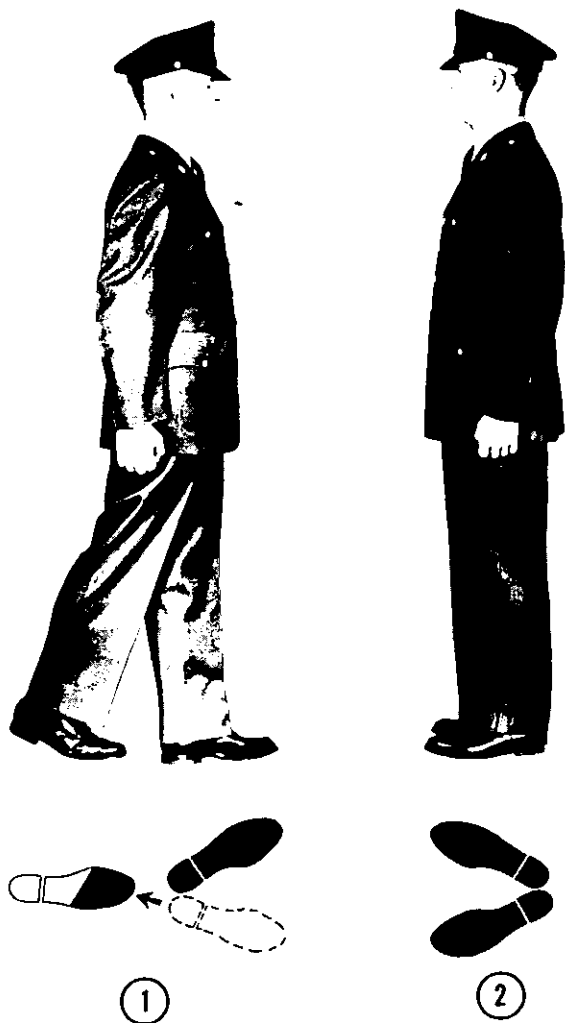


Figure 9. About face.

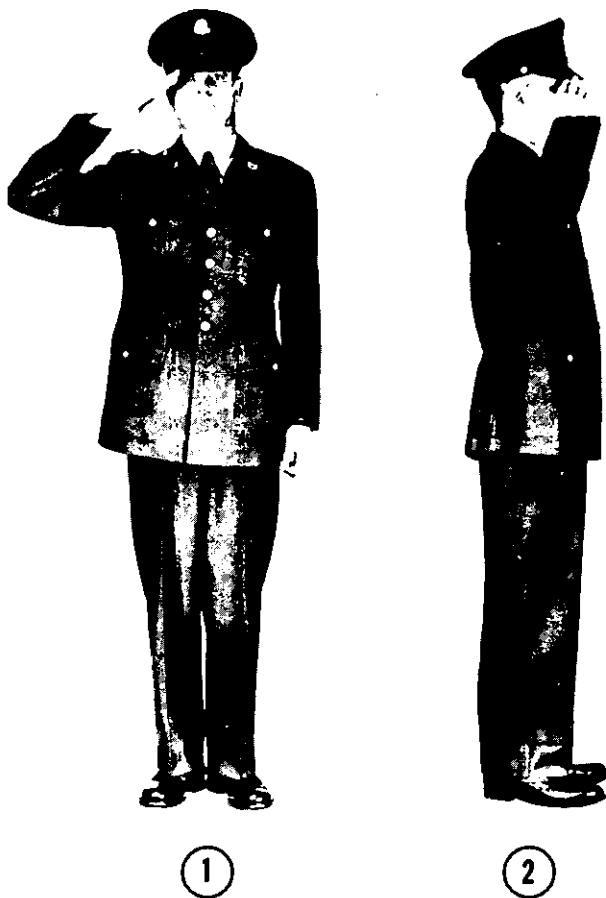


Figure 10. Hand salute.

c. When marching at double time, quick time must be assumed before executing the hand salute. When marching a formation at double time, only the individual in charge assumes quick time and executes the hand salute.

d. The hand salute and eyes right *should not* be executed together except when a *report* is rendered.

e. When a unit in formation is at present arms and the command, ORDER ARMS is given, subordinate commanders will execute order arms and *then* give the supplementary command over the right shoulder.

## 24. Steps and Marching

a. When executed from a halt, all steps and marching except right step, begin with the left foot.

b. For movements involving a turn while marching, both the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* are completed on the foot in the direction of the turn. For units no larger than a squad or platoon, the commands are given so that there is one step between the end of the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution*. For units larger than a platoon, time is allowed for the unit leaders to repeat the *preparatory command* or give their *supplementary command*.

c. When instructing in marching, it is often helpful to have soldiers count in cadence. The instructor should count cadence as little as possible. The command COUNT CADENCE, COUNT, is given as the left foot strikes the ground while marching at quick time or double time. The soldiers take one more step and then count aloud for eight steps: *ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR, ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR*. The count should be vigorous. After the unit is further along in its training, it may be halted when out of step and then marched forward again to get proper cadence. The soldiers should develop a sense of rhythm rather than depend upon counting cadence.

## 25. To March with a 30-Inch Step

a. To march with a 30-inch step in the cadence of quick time from the halt position, the command is FORWARD, MARCH. At the command FORWARD, shift the weight of your body to your right leg without noticeable movement. At the command MARCH, step off with your left foot and march forward with 30-inch steps without stiffness or exaggerating your movements. Swing your arms 9 inches straight to the front and 6 inches to the rear of the seams of your trousers. Do not allow your arms to bend at the elbow; keep your fingers curled as in the position of attention and just clearing your trousers when swinging.

b. To halt from quick time, the command is SQUAD (PLATOON), HALT, given as either foot strikes the ground. At the *command of execution*, take one more step and then bring your trailing foot alongside the stationary foot, as at the position of attention, halting in two counts.

## 26. To March with a 15-Inch Step (Half Step)

a. To march with a 15-inch step, the com-

mand HALF STEP, MARCH is given on either foot, and only while marching at quick time.

b. At the command MARCH, take one more 30-inch step, then take 15-inch steps in the cadence of quick time. Allow your arms to swing as described in paragraph 25a.

c. To resume the 30-inch step, the command FORWARD, MARCH is given as either foot strikes the ground. At the command of execution, take one more 15-inch step and then step off with a full 30-inch step.

d. The halt from the half step is similar to the halt from quick time.

e. While marching at the half step, *mark time march*, *forward march*, and *halt* are the only commands that may be given.

## 27. To March in Place

a. To march in place at quick time, the command MARK TIME, MARCH is given as either foot strikes the ground while marching at quick time or at half-step.

b. When marching at quick time or half-step and the command MARK TIME, MARCH is given, take one more step after the *command of execution*, place the trailing foot alongside your stationary foot and march in place. Raise each foot alternately 2 inches off the ground, executing the movement in quick time. Allow your arms to swing naturally.

c. The command FORWARD, MARCH is given to resume marching with the 30-inch step. Take one more step in place and then step off with a full step. This command is given as either foot strikes the ground.

d. The halt from mark time is executed similarly to the halt from quick time.

## 28. To March with a 10-Inch Step

a. The command RIGHT (LEFT) STEP, MARCH is given only from the halt.

b. On the command MARCH, bend your *right* knee slightly and raise your *right* leg only high enough to allow freedom of movement. Place your *right* foot 10 inches to the *right* of the *left* foot, and then move the *left* foot, keeping your *left* leg straight, to a position alongside the *right* foot as in the position of attention. Continue this movement in the



cadence of quick time, keeping your arms by your sides.

c. To halt from the right (left) step, the *preparatory command* is given when the heels are together, and the *command of execution* (HALT) is given when the heels are together the next time. The halt from the right (left) step is executed in two counts. On the command HALT, take one more step with your right foot and place your left foot alongside the right, in the position of attention.

## **29. To March Backward with a 15-Inch Step**

a. The command BACKWARD, MARCH is given from the halt, and for short distances only.

b. At the command MARCH, take a 15-inch step backward with your left foot and continue marching backward with 15-inch steps in the cadence of quick time only, allowing your arms to swing naturally.

c. HALT from backward march is executed in two counts, similarly to the halt from quick time, and may be given as either foot strikes the ground.

## **30. To March in the Opposite Direction**

a. The command REAR, MARCH is given as the right foot strikes the ground and only while marching in quick time.

b. At the *command of execution*, take one more step with your left foot, pivot on the balls of both feet, turning 180° to the right, and step off in the new direction. The pivot takes a full count. Hold your arms at your sides while executing the movement.

## **31. To Change Step**

a. The command CHANGE STEP, MARCH is given as the right foot strikes the ground while marching at quick time.

b. At the *command of execution*, take one more step with your left foot, then in one count, place your right toe near the heel of your left foot and step off again with your left foot.

## **32. To Face in Marching from a Halt**

a. Facings in marching from a halt are important parts of the following movements:

alignments, column left, inspecting men in ranks, close and extend while in line, take interval, and assemble. For *instructional purposes only*, the command FACE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) IN MARCHING, MARCH may be used to *teach the individual to execute the movement properly*. To execute the movement, pivot to the right or left on the ball of your *right* foot, and step off in the indicated direction, with your *left* foot. Execute the pivot and step in one count and continue marching in the new direction.

b. To face to the half-right (half-left) in marching from a halt will be executed in the same manner as face to the right or left in marching from a halt, except the facing movement will be only a 45° angle to the right or left.

## **33. To March with a 36-Inch Step (Double Time)**

a. The command DOUBLE TIME, MARCH is given from a halt, or as either foot strikes the ground while marching at quick time.

b. When double time is given from a halt, shift the weight of your body to your right leg without noticeable movement. At the command MARCH, raise your forearms to a horizontal position, with your fingers and thumbs closed, knuckles out, and step off with your left foot. Continue to march with 36-inch steps in an easy jog at the cadence of double time. Let your arms swing naturally, straight to the front and rear, but keep your forearms horizontal.

c. When marching at quick time, and the command DOUBLE TIME, MARCH is given, take one more 30-inch step and step off with your trailing foot, and double time as described in *b* above.

d. To resume quick time from double time, the command is QUICK TIME, MARCH, given as either foot strikes the ground. At the *command of execution*, take two more double time steps, then resume quick time, dropping your arms to your sides.

e. To halt from marching at double time: at the command of execution, HALT, take two more double time steps, then drop your arms

and halt in two counts in the cadence of quick time.

### **34. To March at Double Time in Place**

a. To march at double time in place, the command *IN PLACE DOUBLE TIME, MARCH* is given only from a halt.

b. On the *preparatory command* *IN PLACE DOUBLE TIME*, shift the weight of your body to your right leg without noticeable movement. On the command *MARCH*, raise your forearms to a horizontal position with your fingers and thumbs closed, knuckles out, and (at the same time) starting with your left foot, raise your feet alternately approximately 6 inches off the ground in the cadence of double time.

c. To halt, from double time in place, the *command of execution* is given as either foot strikes the ground. Take two more steps in double time, drop your arms, and then halt in two counts.

### **35. Rest Movements While Marching**

a. The commands *AT EASE, MARCH* or *ROUTE*

*STEP, MARCH*, are given on either foot when marching at quick time.

b. At the command *MARCH* of *AT EASE, MARCH*, take one more step and assume *AT EASE, MARCH*. Cadence is not required, but silence is maintained, as is the prescribed interval and distance.

c. At the command *MARCH* of *ROUTE STEP, MARCH*, take one more step and assume *ROUTE STEP, MARCH*. Neither silence nor cadence is required, but the prescribed interval and distance are maintained.

d. The commands *AT EASE* and *ROUTE STEP, MARCH* are given from quick time or from each other. The direction of march may be changed by the commander. He gives *directives* in an informal manner. The unit must be called to attention before precision movements may be executed. The commander counts cadence for eight steps after calling the unit to attention.

## CHAPTER 4

### SCHOOLING OF THE SOLDIER WITH ARMS

#### Section I. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M14 RIFLE

##### 36. General

a. Execute FALL IN with the rifle at order arms.

b. Facings, alinements, and short distance marching movements are executed from order arms, sling arms, or unsling arms. Side step, backward march, open and close ranks, and close and extend are short-distance movements. Forward march may be given from order arms or unsling arms to march units forward for a short distance. When these movements are commanded while at order arms, it is necessary to come automatically to trail arms on the command of execution for the movement. The rifle is returned to order or unsling arms upon halting.

c. Before a command for any marching movement (other than the exceptions stated in b above) is given to armed troops, if not at sling arms, they are faced in the direction of march and their weapons brought to right shoulder or port arms by the appropriate command. After a marching movement has been

completed and troops are at a position other than sling arms, the command order arms is given, followed by the command for the facing movement.

d. When at a position other than sling arms, the troops must come to port arms for double time. When the troops are in formation, the commander gives the appropriate commands.

e. Custom has established that the pistol belt will be worn when an individual is armed with a rifle. A soldier is considered to be under arms while wearing the pistol belt, *if* he is participating in drill or guard duty.

##### 37. Rules for the Rifle Manual of Arms

a. The term "at the balance" refers to a point on the rifle (fig. 11) just forward of the magazine well. While this is not the true balance of the rifle, it is used as a reference point for instructional purposes and to facilitate the manipulation of the weapon while performing the manual of arms.

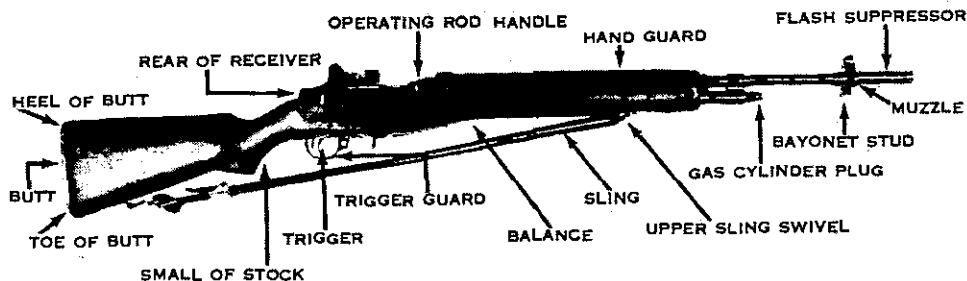


Figure 11. Drill nomenclature of the U.S. Rifle, 7.62-mm, M14.

b. The position of the rifle known as "diagonally across the body" (fig. 12) is as follows:

(1) The left hand is at the balance, with the thumb and fingers grasping the rifle and sling. To do this, extend and join the fingers so as to form a U with the thumb.

(2) The barrel is up and at such an angle that it bisects the juncture of the neck and shoulder. The heel of the butt is on line with the right hip (fig. 12).

(3) The rifle is held at a height which allows the right forearm to be horizontal when the small of the stock is grasped with the right hand.

(4) The distance of the rifle from the body depends upon the conformation of the body, but it should be about 4 inches from the belt.

c. The cadence for rifle movements is quick time, but in early stages of instruction the movements are done more slowly until the troops can execute them with precision. They are then practiced until the proper cadence is acquired.

d. The manual for the rifle is executed while standing at the position of attention. To add interest to drill and to lessen fatigue on long marches, movements between right and left shoulder and port arms may be commanded in quick time when marching at attention.

(1) To move the rifle from the right shoulder to the left shoulder, **LEFT SHOULDER, ARMS** is commanded as the left foot strikes the ground. The first count of this movement is executed as the right foot strikes the ground and the left arm is swinging forward in its natural arc.

(2) To move the rifle from the left shoulder to the right shoulder, **RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS** is commanded as the right foot strikes the ground. The first count of this movement is executed as the left foot strikes the ground and the right arm is swinging forward in its natural arc.

e. The following positions are commanded from order arms only: *inspection arms*, *trail arms*, *fix* and *unfix bayonets*, and the rest position at order arms. *Port arms* is the only command that may be given from inspection arms.



Figure 12. Rifle held diagonally across the body.

f. With the magazine in the rifle, present arms and right and left shoulder arms *should not* be executed.

g. For drill purposes, the magazine is *not* carried in the M14 rifle.

### 38. Order Arms

a. *Order arms* is the position of the soldier at attention with the rifle. It is assumed on the command **SQUAD (PLATOON), ATTENTION** from any of the rest positions except fall out. *Order arms* is assumed on the command **FALL IN** and on the command **ORDER, ARMS** from any position in the manual except inspection arms and sling arms.

b. At order arms, the position of attention

is maintained except for the right arm and rifle. The rifle butt is placed on the ground with the barrel to the rear and the side of the butt against the right shoe. The toe of the butt and the toe of the right shoe are on line. The upper part of the handguard is grasped with the right hand in a V formed by the fingers and the thumb. The fingers are placed diagonally so the tips of the index finger and the thumb are grasping the sides of the stock; the right arm is kept behind the rifle so the thumb is along the trousers' seam (fig. 13).

### 39. Rest Positions with the Rifle

Rest positions with the rifle are commanded and executed as without arms (para 21) with the following exceptions and additions.

a. On the command PARADE, REST the left foot is placed 10 inches from and on line with the right foot. The rifle butt is against the right foot, the toe of the butt on line with the toe of the shoe. The barrel of the rifle rests against the hip along the seam of the trousers as in the position of order arms (1, fig. 14). The grasp of the rifle is unchanged. The left hand is placed behind the back just below the belt line with the fingers and thumb extended and joined and the palm to the rear (2, fig. 14).

b. To execute STAND AT, EASE, the parade rest position is assumed and the head and eyes are turned toward the commander.

c. On the command AT EASE, or REST,

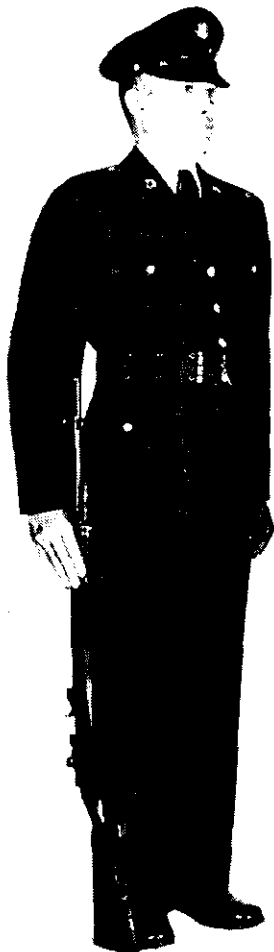


Figure 13. Order arms.



Figure 14. Parade rest.



Figure 14—Continued.

the right foot remains in place and the rifle is held as in parade rest with the right arm relaxed slightly.

d. When at sling arms, rest positions are commanded and executed as described in paragraph 47e.

e. Armed troops must be at attention in a line formation at order arms, port arms, stack arms, or unsling arms before FALL OUT may be given.

#### 40. Trail Arms

a. For instructional purposes, the command TRAIL, ARMS may be used to teach the position at a halt. At the command ARMS, the rifle is raised vertically 3 inches off the ground with the wrist straight and the thumb along

the seam of the trousers; the grasp of the rifle does not change (fig. 15). This movement is executed in one count.

b. At the command ORDER, ARMS the rifle is lowered vertically to the position of order arms. For instructional purposes when TRAIL, ARMS is commanded, the rifle is held at the trail until ORDER, ARMS is given.

#### 41. Port Arms

a. The command is PORT, ARMS.

b. This is a two-count movement from orders arms. At the command ARMS, the rifle is raised diagonally across the body with the right hand; the left hand grasps the rifle at the balance and holds it so that it is 4 inches from the belt. The right elbow is held down



Figure 15. Trail arms.

without strain (1, fig. 16). On the second count, the rifle is regrasped with the right hand at the small of the stock, fingers and thumb closed around the stock (2, fig. 16). The right forearm is horizontal and the elbows are against the sides.

c. From port arms to order arms is a three-count movement. At the command ARMS, the right hand is moved to regrasp the upper part of the handguard without moving the rifle (1, fig. 16). On the second count, the left hand is removed from the balance, and the rifle is lowered to the right side with the right hand until the butt is 3 inches from the ground. The left hand is placed immediately below the bayonet stud, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm to the rear, to steady the rifle and hold the barrel vertical (fig. 17). On the third

count, the left hand is cut sharply to the side while the rifle is lowered gently to the ground.

## 42. Right Shoulder Arms

a. The command is RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS.

b. When executed from order arms, right shoulder arms is a four-count movement. At the command ARMS, the first count of port arms is executed as described in paragraph 41 (1, fig. 18). The right elbow is held down without strain. On the second count, the rifle is regrasped at the butt with the right hand, the heel of the butt between the first two fingers, and the thumb and fingers closed around the heel with the thumb and forefinger touching (2, fig. 18). On the third count, the rifle is placed on the right shoulder with the grasp of the right hand unchanged. At the



Figure 16. Port arms.



Figure 16—Continued.



*Figure 17. Next to last count of order arms.*

same time, the left hand is moved from the balance to the small of the stock where it is used to guide the rifle to the shoulder (3, fig. 18). The thumb and fingers are extended and joined with palm turned toward the body. The first joint of the left forefinger touches the rear of the receiver. The left elbow is kept down. On the fourth count, the left hand is drawn back to its position by the side, as at attention. The right forearm is horizontal with the right elbow against the side and on line with the back (4, fig. 18).

c. The return to order arms is a four-count movement. On the command ARMS, the rifle butt is pressed down quickly and the rifle is

guided diagonally across the body. At the same time, the butt is turned to keep the barrel up. The rifle is grasped at the balance with the left hand and the grasp of the right hand is retained on the butt (count one). On the second count, the right hand is moved up and across the body to grasp the upper part of the handguard. The third and fourth counts are the same as the second and third counts, used in executing order arms from port arms (para 41).

d. Right shoulder arms from port arms is a three-count movement. On the first count, the rifle is grasped at the butt with the right hand as in coming to right shoulder from order arms. The last two counts are the same as the last two counts in moving from order to right shoulder arms.



*Figure 18. Right shoulder arms.*





Figure 18—Continued.



Figure 18—Continued.

e. Port arms from right shoulder arms is a two-count movement. The first count is the same as the first count from right shoulder to order arms. On the second count, the rifle is regrasped with the right hand at the small of the stock in the position of port arms.

#### 43. Left Shoulder Arms

a. The command is LEFT SHOULDER, ARMS.

b. To move the rifle to left shoulder arms from the order, the rifle is brought to port arms in the first two counts (fig. 16). On the third count, the rifle is placed on the left shoulder with the right hand and the right arm is pressed against the body. The butt is grasped with the left hand as shown in 1, figure 19. On the fourth count, the right hand

is drawn to the side in returning to the position of attention (2, fig. 19).

c. Port arms from left shoulder arms is a two-count movement. On the first count, the right hand moves up and across the body and grasps the small of the stock and the right arm is pressed against the body (1, fig. 19). On the second count, the rifle is brought diagonally across the body with the right hand and regrasped at the balance with the left hand as in the position of port arms (2, fig. 16).

d. Order arms or right shoulder arms from left shoulder arms is a five-count movement. On the first two counts the rifle is brought to port arms. On the last three counts it is possible to go to order arms or right shoulder arms as described in paragraphs 38 and 42.



Figure 18—Continued.

#### 44. Present Arms

a. The command is PRESENT, ARMS. This movement is used only in formations at ceremonies and as specified on *guard duty*.

b. Order arms to present arms is a two-count movement. On the first count, the rifle is raised and carried to the center of the body. It is held vertical, 4 inches from the body with the barrel to the rear. The right elbow is down. The rifle and sling are grasped at the balance with the left hand. The left forearm is horizontal and the left elbow is against the side (1, fig. 20). On the second count, the right hand regrips the rifle at the small of the stock (2, fig. 20).

c. Order arms from present arms is a three-

count movement. On the first count, the rifle is grasped at the upper part of the handguard with the right hand (1, fig. 20) with the right elbow kept down and against the side. The rifle is lowered to the ground with the right hand on counts two and three as in port arms to order arms (fig. 17).

d. Port arms from present arms is executed in one count. The rifle is raised and twisted with the right hand, the muzzle moves to the left, and the rifle is regripped at the balance with the left hand (2, fig. 16).

e. Present arms from port arms is executed in one count. The rifle is lowered and twisted with the right hand while being moved into



Figure 19. Count Three of left shoulder arms from order arms.



Figure 19—Continued.



Figure 20. Present arms.

a vertical position where it is regrasped at the balance with the left hand.

#### 45. Inspection Arms

a. The command is INSPECTION, ARMS. It is a four-count movement, executed only from order arms.

b. At the command ARMS, the rifle is raised diagonally across the body with the right hand and is grasped with the left hand at the balance as in the first count of port arms (para 41b). On the second count, the right hand grasp is released and the right hand slides down the rifle with the fingers extended and joined, until the knife edge of the hand comes in contact with the operating rod handle. Now the thumb is on the opposite side of

the receiver (1, fig. 21). On the third count, the operating rod handle is pressed sharply to the rear and the bolt lock is depressed with the thumb so that the bolt is locked in the rearmost position. At the same time, the head and eyes are lowered to check the receiver (2, fig. 21). On the fourth count, having found the receiver empty or having emptied it, the head and eyes are raised to the front and the rifle is regrasped at the small of the stock as in port arms.

c. PORT, ARMS is the only command that is given from inspection arms. On the preparatory command, the grip on the small of the stock is relaxed to permit the index finger to hook around the operating rod handle, pulling it slightly to the rear so that the bolt lock will

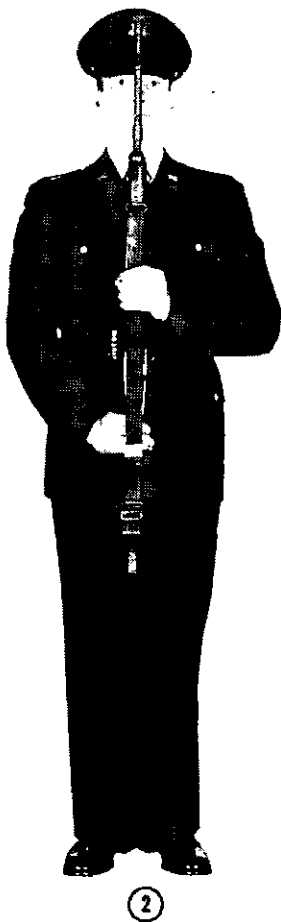


Figure 20—Continued.

be released (fig. 22). At the command ARMS, the operating rod handle is released, the trigger pulled, and the small of the stock regripped in the position of port arms.

#### 46. Rifle Salute

*a.* This movement may be executed from order arms, trail arms, right shoulder arms, or left shoulder arms. For instructional purposes, the command RIFLE, SALUTE may be used. The rifle salute is a two-count movement and should be taught by the numbers.

*b.* When at order arms, the left arm moves across the body on the first count, with the forearm and wrist straight, fingers and thumb



Figure 21. Inspection arms without magazine.

extended and joined, and palm down. The first joint of the forefinger touches the rifle at a point below the bayonet stud (1, fig. 23). If not in ranks, the head and eyes turn toward the person or color saluted. On the second count, the left hand is moved to the side and the head and eyes are turned to the front.

*c.* When saluting at trail arms, the movements are identical with those for saluting at order arms, except that the rifle is held in the trail arms position.

*d.* At right shoulder arms, the movement is executed by moving the left arm across the chest and touching the first joint of the forefinger to the rear of the receiver. The left elbow is held so that the left forearm is hori-



Figure 21—Continued.

zontal. Fingers, thumb, and wrist are held as described in *b* above. The palm is down (2, fig. 23). The second count of the rifle salute at right shoulder arms is similar to the return from the rifle salute at order arms.

*e.* At left shoulder arms, the salute is executed by moving the right arm across the chest and touching the first joint of the forefinger to the rear of the receiver. The right elbow is held so that the forearm is horizontal. The fingers, thumb, and wrist are as described in *b* above. The palm is down. The second count is similar to the return from the rifle salute at right shoulder arms.

#### 47. Sling and Unsling Arms

*a.* The command SLING, ARMS is given only



Figure 22. Port arms from inspection arms.

from order arms and unsling arms. This movement is not executed in cadence. If the sling is not adjusted, the butt of the rifle is placed on the right hip and the rifle is cradled in the crook of the right arm at the *command of execution*. The sling is adjusted with both hands and the rifle is then slung over the right shoulder in the most convenient manner. When at sling arms, the sling is grasped with the right hand, keeping the right forearm horizontal and holding the barrel of the rifle vertical (fig. 24). If the sling is already adjusted, the rifle is slung in the most convenient manner at the *command of execution*.

*b.* The command UNSLING, ARMS is given only from the position of sling arms. At the *command of execution*, the rifle is unslung and

brought to the position of unsling arms by steadying the rifle with the left hand. The positions of order arms and unsling arms are the same except that at unsling arms the sling is loose.

c. So that precise movements of the manual can be executed, the command ADJUST, SLINGS is given. At the command SLINGS, the sling is tightened as described in *a* above.

d. To salute while at sling arms, on the command ARMS of PRESENT, ARMS, the sling is grasped with left hand to steady the rifle. The palm of the left hand is to the rear and the forearm is horizontal. At the same time, the sling is released with the right hand and the first count of the hand salute is executed as

described in paragraph 23. At the command ARMS of ORDER, ARMS, the right hand and arm are moved to the side as in the position of attention and then the original position of sling arms is resumed.

e. When at sling arms, parade rest, rest, at ease, and stand at ease are executed as form order arms except that the rifle is held slung with the right hand. When the command REST is given, the rifle may be unslung. When calling a squad or platoon to attention, the position of parade rest at sling arms is assumed on the *preparatory command*.

#### 48. Fix and Unfix Bayonets

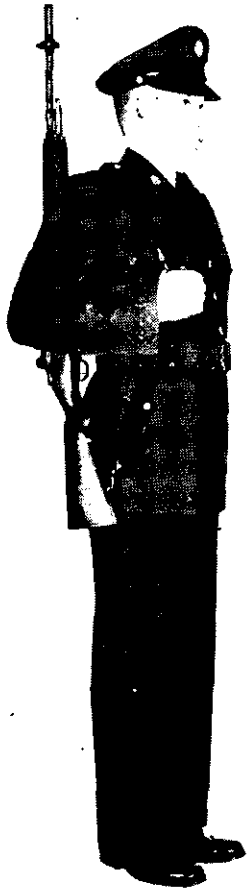
a. These movements are not executed in cadence.



Figure 23. Rifle salute.



Figure 23—Continued.



*Figure 24. Sling arms.*



*Figure 25. Fix and unfix bayonets.*

b. On the command **FIX, BAYONETS** (when the bayonet scabbard is on the belt), the muzzle of the rifle is moved across the body and regrasped with the left hand below the gas cylinder plug. The snap on the scabbard is unfastened and the bayonet is grasped with the right hand, as shown in figure 25. The bayonet is drawn from the scabbard. The point of the bayonet is turned skyward and the bayonet is fixed on the muzzle with a downward movement. After the bayonet is fixed, the position of attention is assumed.

c. The command **UNFIX, BAYONETS** is given at order arms only.

d. At the command **BAYONETS**, when the bayonet scabbard is on the belt, the rifle is moved to the left hand as when fixing bayonets. The rifleman glances down and grasps the

handle of the bayonet with the right hand, the palm toward the body. The bayonet catch spring is pressed with the inside of the forefinger. The bayonet is raised vertically until the handle is approximately a foot above the muzzle of the rifle. Then, keeping his eyes on the point of the bayonet, the rifleman returns the bayonet to the scabbard, reversing the movements of its withdrawal. The snap on the bayonet scabbard is fastened with the left hand after the position of order arms has been assumed.

e. When the bayonet is carried other than on the belt, it is fixed and unfixed in the most convenient manner possible upon receiving the commands.

#### **49. Bayonet Safety**

Safety precautions should be observed when

fixing bayonets while the rifle is held diagonally across the body with the left hand. Tap the base of the bayonet handle with the heel of the right hand to make sure that the bayonet is secure. If resistance is met when unfixing the

bayonet, thrust the bayonet into the ground, blade facing the right toe. Then press the bayonet release with the toe of the right boot and remove the rifle from the bayonet. The blade of the bayonet is not touched with bare hands.

## Section II. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M16A1 RIFLE

### 50. General

a. Carry the M16A1 rifle slung over your right shoulder in a position similar to sling arms for the rifle. Inspection arms with the rifle is not a precision movement and is only executed as part of the manuals of arms for the rifle, when the unit is formed and dismissed, or for an inspecting officer.

b. When parade rest, stand at ease, or rest is commanded, keep the rifle slung unless otherwise ordered.

c. When armed with the rifle, execute the hand salute as described in paragraph 47d.

d. The nomenclature of the rifle is shown in figure 26.

### 51. Inspection Arms

a. The command is INSPECTION, ARMS, and it is executed only from sling arms.

b. Inspection arms, without the magazine, is executed as described below. At the command of execution grasp the sling with the left hand at a point near the shoulder (1, fig. 27). Lift the rifle from the shoulder, withdrawing the right arm from between the rifle and sling. Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand and bring the weapon diagonally across the body (2, fig. 27). Grasp the pistol grip with the left hand (3, fig. 27), thumb over the lower portion of the bolt catch (4, fig. 27). Release the grasp of the right hand, unlock the charging handle with the thumb, and pull it to the rear. At the same time apply pressure on the bolt catch, locking the bolt to the rear (4, fig. 27). Push the charging handle until it is locked in its foremost position and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. Release the grasp of the left hand and regrasp the lower portion of the handguard (5, fig. 27). Elevate the rifle up and to

the left, at the same time rotating it 90° so the handgrip is pointing away from the body. At this time visually inspect the chamber to see that it is clear and then return to port arms. The rifle should be held diagonally across and approximately 4 inches from the body.

c. PORT, ARMS is the only command given from inspection arms. On the preparatory command, place the fingers of the right hand on the back of the pistol grip with the thumb (without pressure) on the upper part of the bolt catch (1, fig. 28). On the command of execution, press the bolt catch allowing the bolt to go forward and pull the trigger with the right thumb (2, fig. 28). Regrasp the pistol grip with the right hand to support the rifle. Release the grasp of the left hand and place it over the magazine feed well, with the thumb and fingers forming a U (3, fig. 28). With the fingertips, close the dust cover (4, fig. 28). Grasp the upper part of the sling with the left hand (5, fig. 28) and return to sling arms.

d. When inspection arms is executed with the magazine in the rifle, grasp the sling with the left hand at a point near the shoulder (1, fig. 27). Lift the rifle from the shoulder, withdrawing the right arm from between the rifle and sling. Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand and bring the weapon diagonally across the body (2, fig. 27). Grasp the base of the magazine with the left hand, fingers and thumb forming a U and the tip of the middle finger on the magazine release button (1, fig. 29). Depress the magazine release button, withdraw the magazine and insert it behind the belt, in front of the left hip, with the open end down and front to the right (2, fig. 29). Grasp the pistol grip with the left hand (3, fig. 27) and complete the movement as described in b above.

e. Execute port arms as described in c above



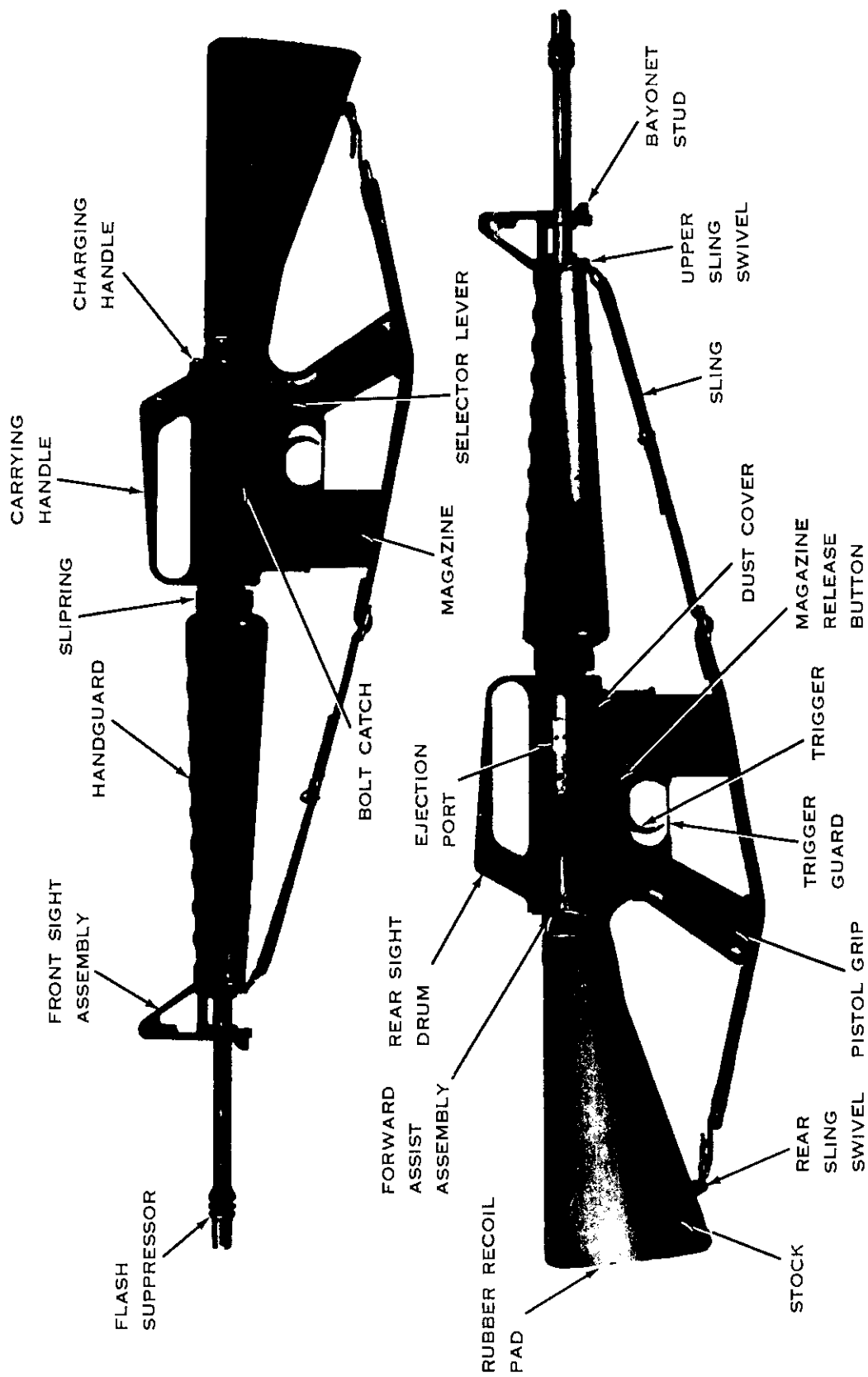


Figure 92 The M16A1 rifle.



Step 1

*Figure 27. Inspection arms without the magazine.*



Step 2

*Figure 27—Continued.*

except, after the dust cover is closed replace the magazine with the left hand and resume sling arms.

## 52. Stack Arms

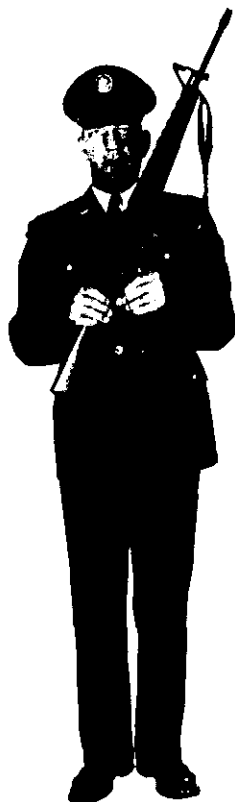
a. The M16A1 is stacked in line and the designation of stackmen remains the same as described in paragraph 73a, except the command of PREPARE SLINGS is not given.

b. On the command STACK ARMS, the stackman and the men to his right and left perform the following movement simultaneously:

(1) The stackman unslings his weapon and cradles it in the crook of his right arm with the butt of the weapon on his hip. He tightens the sling and adjusts the keeper to form a 4-inch loop next to the upper sling swivel (a palm's width within the loop; 1, fig. 30). When tight, the sling should lay along the right side of the pistol grip. After the loop has been

formed, the stackman places his rifle directly in front of and centered on his body with the barrel to the rear. The heel of the rifle butt is on the ground on line with the toes of his shoes. The stackman grasps the rifle by the upper portion of the handguard with his left hand. The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. He reaches across the front of the rifle with the right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop, and holds it open for the insertion of the other rifles. He holds the rifle vertically at all times (2, fig. 30).

(2) The man on the stackman's left reaches across his body with the left hand and grasps the sling at a point near the right shoulder and unslings the weapon. With the right hand, he grasps the handguard midway between the carrying handle and the front sight. Holding the weapon in a vertical position, he regrips the small of the stock with



Step 3

*Figure 27—Continued.*

the left hand and lets both arms hang naturally, the weapon in a horizontal position, muzzle to the right, and carrying handle to the rear (2, fig. 30).

(3) The man to the stackman's right unslings his weapon in the same manner as the man on the left. He then grasps it at the small of the stock with the right hand. Holding the rifle in a vertical position, he rotates the carrying handle to the rear and regrasps the handguard with the left hand midway between the carrying handle and the front sight. He then lowers the weapon to the horizontal with the muzzle to the left, carrying handle to the rear and arms hanging naturally (2, fig. 30).

(4) When the stackman has placed his rifle in position, both men move the foot nearest the stackman 18 inches to the oblique and toward the stackman. The man on the stackman's left inserts the muzzle of his rifle into the loop (held by the stackman) to a point



Step 4

*Figure 27—Continued.*

approximately halfway between the flash suppressor and the front sight. He holds his weapon in this position until the man on the stackman's right inserts the muzzle of his rifle in a similar manner and above the rifle of the left man (3, fig. 30).

c. The butts of both rifles are swung outward and down to the ground until the stack is tight with the rifle butts on line and approximately 2 feet from the baseline. The long axis of the butts is placed on the ground to prevent damage to the front sight assemblies (4, and 5, fig. 30). After the stack is completed, extra rifles are unslung and passed to the nearest stack on the right. To pass the rifles, grasp the handguard near the front sight assembly with the right hand. Then, with the rifle held vertical, it is passed with fully extended arm to the right front. The man on the right grasps the handguard of the rifle with his left hand near the slinging, brings



Step 5

*Figure 27—Continued.*

the rifle to the center of his body, and regrips the handguard near the front sight assembly with his right hand. This action continues until the stackman receives the rifle and places it on the stack with his right hand. Rifles are placed on the stack in a manner to prevent damage to the front sight assemblies.

### **53. Take Arms**

To take arms with the M16A1 the movements remain the same as described in paragraph 77,



Step 1

*Figure 28. Port arms.*

except all men return to sling arms after receiving their weapons.



Step 2

*Figure 28—Continued.*



Step 3

*Figure 28—Continued.*



Step 4

*Figure 28—Continued.*



Step 5

*Figure 28—Continued.*



Step 1

*Figure 29. Inspection arms with magazine.*



Step 2

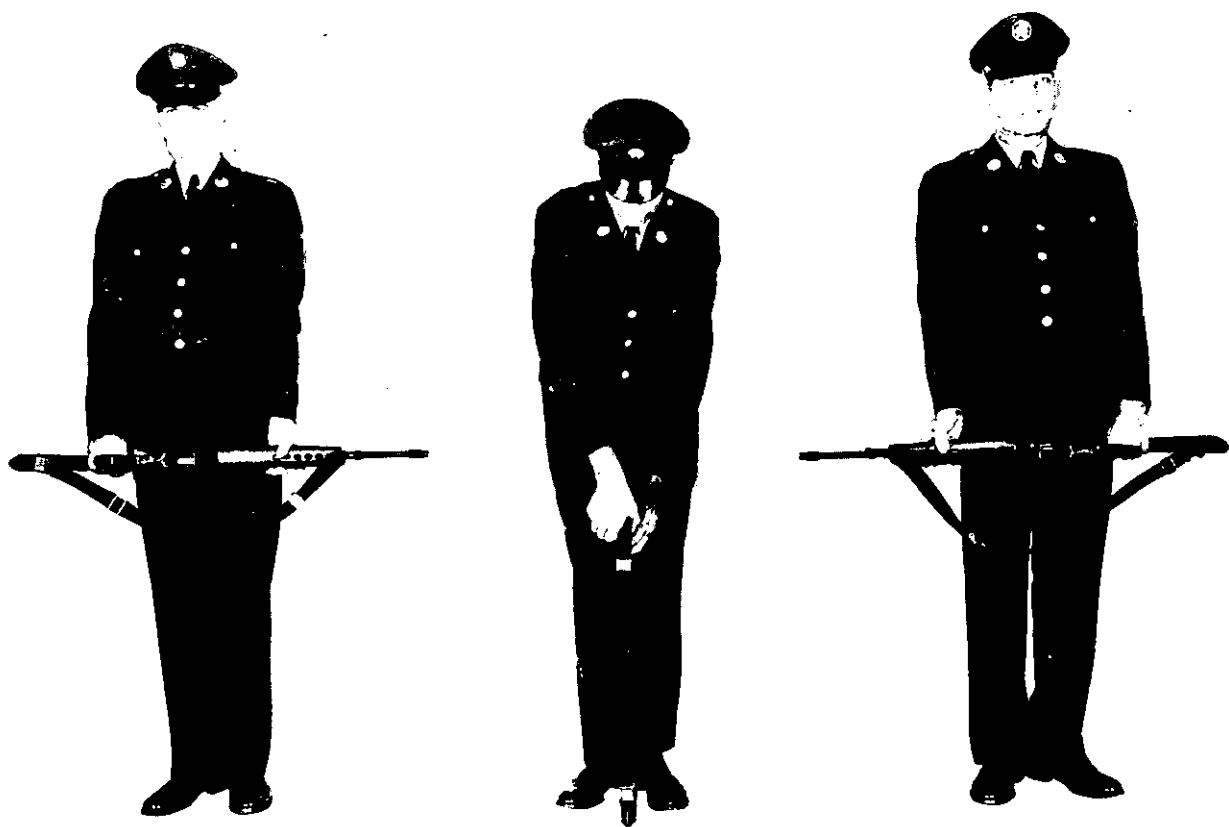
*Figure 29—Continued.*



Step 1

*Figure 30. Stack arms with the M16A1 rifle.*





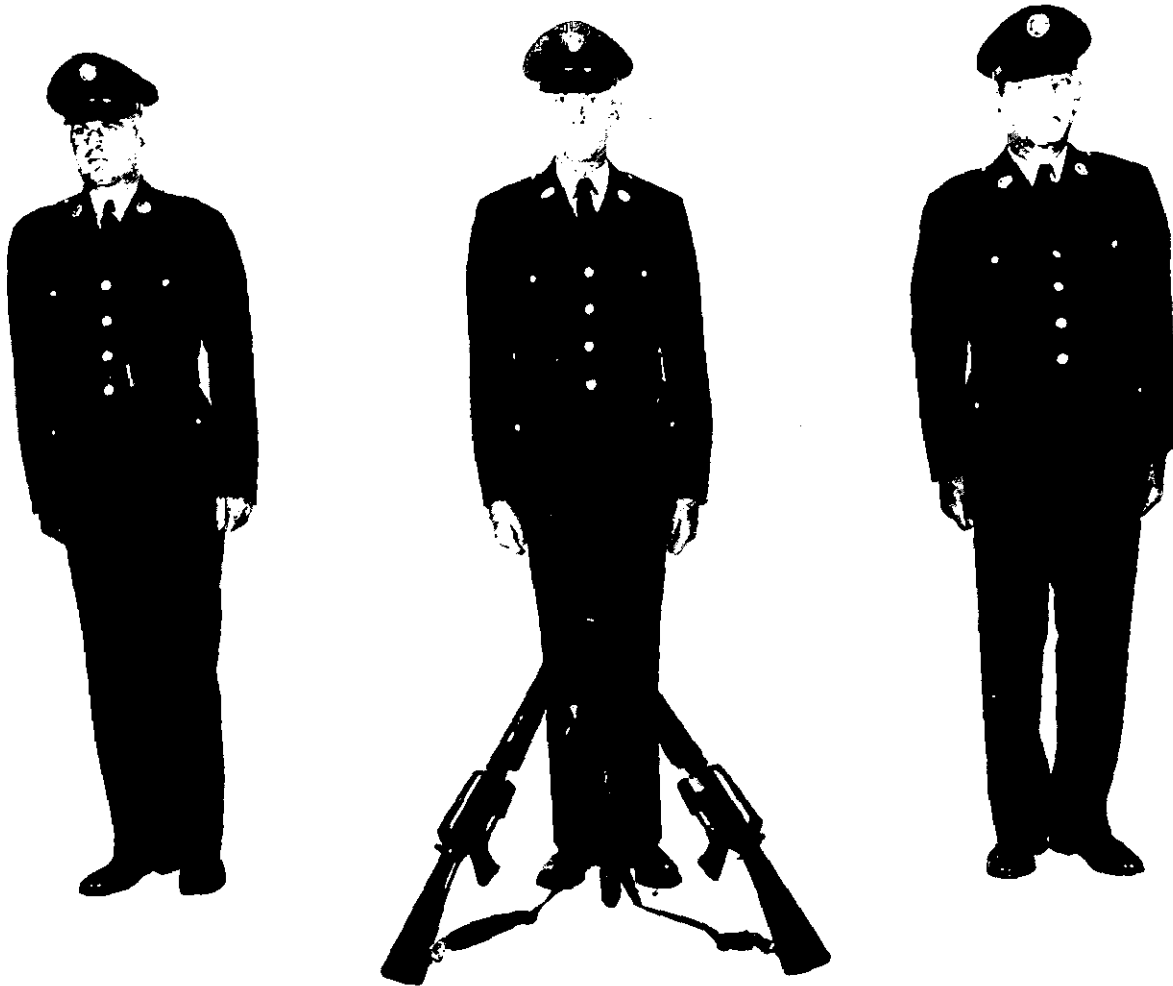
Step 2

*Figure 30—Continued.*



Step 3

*Figure 30—Continued.*



Step 4  
*Figure 30—Continued.*



Step 5

Figure 30—Continued.

### Section III. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE .45 CALIBER PISTOL

#### 54. General

a. Pistol movements are not executed in cadence.

b. When armed with the pistol, remain at attention during the manual of arms for the rifle.

c. Execute all movements and positions, except inspection arms, as without arms.

#### 55. Inspection Arms

When armed with the pistol, for instructional purposes only, execute the following movements separately on the indicated commands, or in sequence when INSPECTION, ARMS is given (4, fig. 31).

a. *Raise Pistol.* At the command RAISE, PISTOL, unbutton the flap of the holster with your right hand and grasp the pistol grip with the back of your hand outward. Draw

the pistol from the holster. Bring your elbow to your side and hold your upper arm vertical and forearm at an angle from the vertical so that your hand is as high as, and approximately 6 inches in front of, your right shoulder. Hold the pistol grip with your thumb and last three fingers and extend your forefinger outside and along the trigger guard. Point the muzzle outward and up at approximately a 30° angle from the vertical (1, fig. 31). If you are wearing a shoulder holster, at the command RAISE, PISTOL, unbutton the flap or snap fastener, draw the pistol from the shoulder holster, and assume the position of raise pistol.

b. *Withdraw Magazine.* At the command WITHDRAW, MAGAZINE, without lowering your right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the right, press the magazine catch with your right thumb and remove the magazine with your left hand (2, fig. 31). Place the magazine

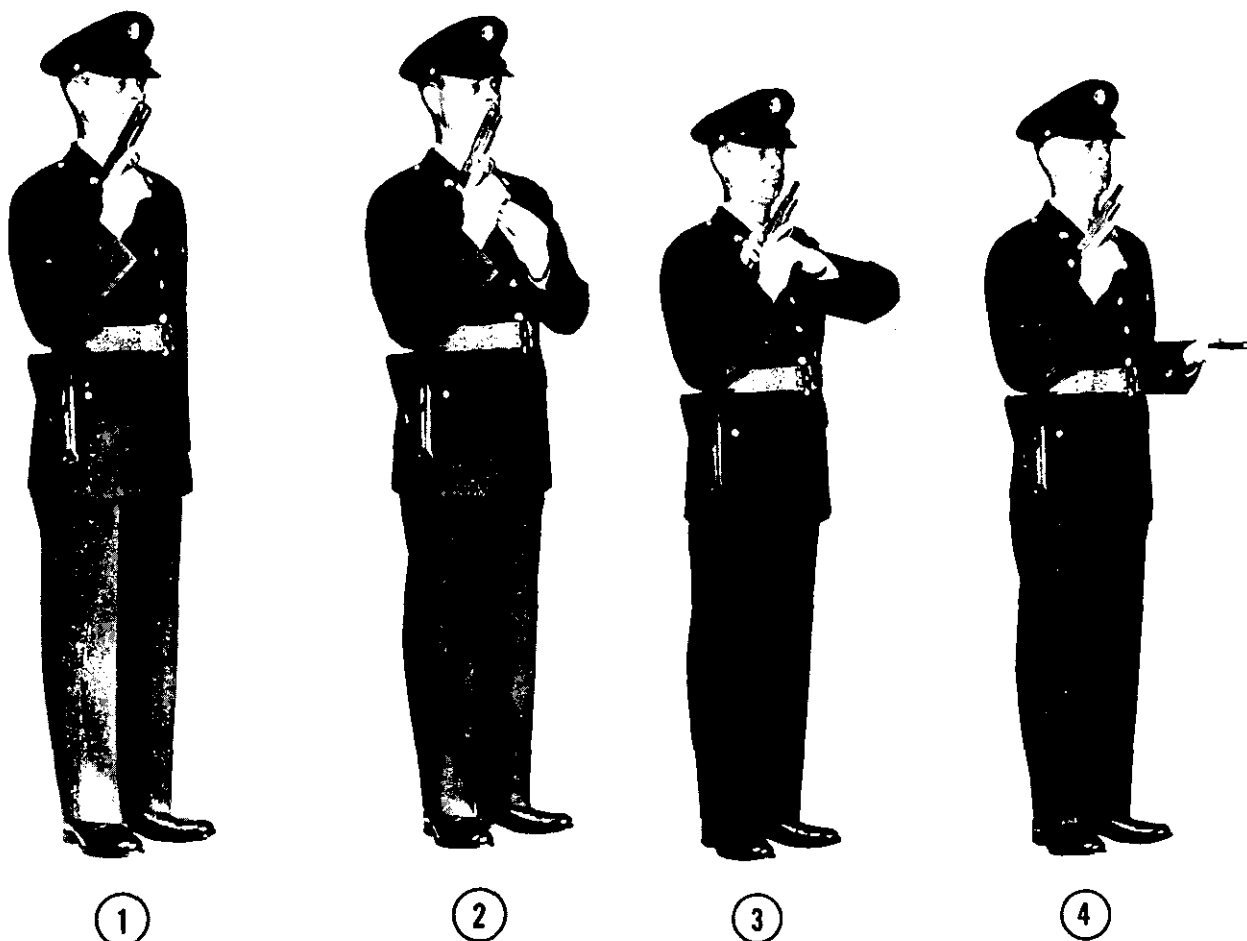


Figure 31. Inspection arms with pistol.

Figure 31—Continued.

between your belt and outer garment, on your left side, with the open end down, front to the right.

*c. Open Chamber.* At the command, OPEN, CHAMBER, without lowering your right hand, grasp the slide with your left thumb and first two fingers so that your thumb is on the left side of the slide and pointing downward. Keeping the muzzle elevated, shift the grip of your right hand so that your right thumb engages the slide stop; push the slide fully to the rear, and engage the stop in its notch with your right thumb (3, fig. 31). Resume the position of raise pistol, with the slide to the rear. Take the magazine out of your belt and hold it in your open hand at the height of your belt with the open end of the magazine to the front and the front of the magazine to the left. If

the inspecting officer takes your pistol for inspection, lower your right arm and hand to your side as in the position of attention. Raise your right arm and hand to the raise pistol position when the inspecting officer is ready to return the pistol.

*d. Close Chamber.* After your pistol has been inspected, or at the preparatory command of CLOSE, CHAMBER or PORT, ARMS, press the slide stop down with your right thumb and let the slide go forward. Pull the trigger and remain at raise pistol.

*e. Insert Magazine.* At the preparatory command of INSERT, MAGAZINE, without lowering your right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the right. Grasp the magazine with the first two fingers and thumb of your left hand and insert it in the pistol (2, fig. 31). At the

*command of execution*, press the magazine fully home and resume raise pistol (1, fig. 31).

#### 56. Return Pistol

a. Execute this movement on the command, RETURN, PISTOL or on the command ORDER (RIGHT SHOULDER), ARMS after INSPECTION, ARMS and PORT, ARMS have been given.

b. On the command of execution, lower

your pistol to the holster. muzzle down, with the back of your hand to the right. Then raise the flap of the holster with your right thumb, insert the muzzle of the pistol into the holster, and thrust it home. Button the flap of the holster with your right hand. When wearing a shoulder holster, at the command RETURN, PISTOL, return the pistol directly from the position of raise pistol to the holster and button the flap or snap fastener.

### Section IV. MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE REVOLVER

#### 57. General

a. Revolver movements are not executed in cadence.

b. When armed with the revolver remain at attention during the manual of arms for the rifle.

c. Execute all movements and positions, except inspection arms, as without arms.

#### 58. Raise Revolver

At the command RAISE, REVOLVER, unbutton the strap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the pistol grip. Draw the revolver from the holster with the thumb and last three fingers of the right hand, holding the pistol grip with the forefinger extended outside the trigger guard. Incline the barrel of the revolver upward at an angle of 30° from the vertical, and raise the hand as high as, and approximately 6 inches in front of, the point of the right shoulder (1, fig. 32).

#### 59. Inspection Arms

At the command INSPECTION, ARMS, assume the position of *raise, revolver* if not already in that position. Open the cylinder by operating the thumb latch with the forefinger of the left hand and pushing the cylinder to the left with the right forefinger. Return the left hand to the side (2, fig. 32). Raise the revolver to a point where the cylinder and chambers can be visually inspected and checked for clearance (3, fig. 32). After this inspection, return to the position *raise revolver*. If the revolver is inspected in ranks and the inspecting officer takes the revolver for inspection, lower the right arm and hand smartly to the

side as in the position of *attention*. When the inspecting officer is ready to return the revolver, raise the right arm and hand to the *raise revolver* position. After the revolver is



Figure 32. Inspection arms with the revolver.

returned by the inspecting officer, take the position of *raise revolver* and without command, execute, RETURN, REVOLVER.

#### 60. Return Revolver

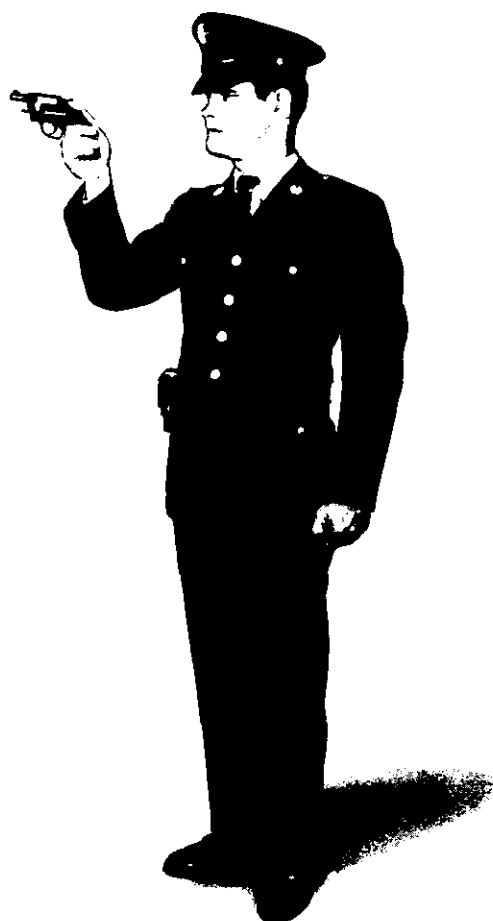
At the command RETURN, close the cylinder with the forefinger of the left hand (4 fig. 32).

At the command REVOLVER, lower the revolver, muzzle down, to the holster; raise the holster strap with the right thumb; insert the revolver in the holster; button the holster strap with the right hand; and assume the position of *attention*.



②

Figure 32—Continued.



③

Figure 32—Continued.



④

Figure 32—Continued.

## Section V. MANUAL OF THE GUIDON

### 61. General

a. The guidon is a company (troop or battery) identification flag. It is carried at ceremonies and when otherwise prescribed by the commander.

b. The guidon bearer is specially selected by the company commander and receives special instruction in his duties. When armed with a rifle (or carbine) the bearer slings the weapon behind his back, with the sling diagonally across his chest and the muzzle up and to the left, unless otherwise ordered.

c. To face with the guidon, raise the ferrule 3 inches off the ground by bending your right

arm slightly. Execute this movement in a manner similar to facing with a rifle at order arms, but keep the staff in a vertical position throughout the movement.

d. Execute PRESENT, ARMS; PARADE, REST; AT EASE; and REST with the unit.

e. When marching at route step or at ease, you may hold the guidon in either hand at the carry position.

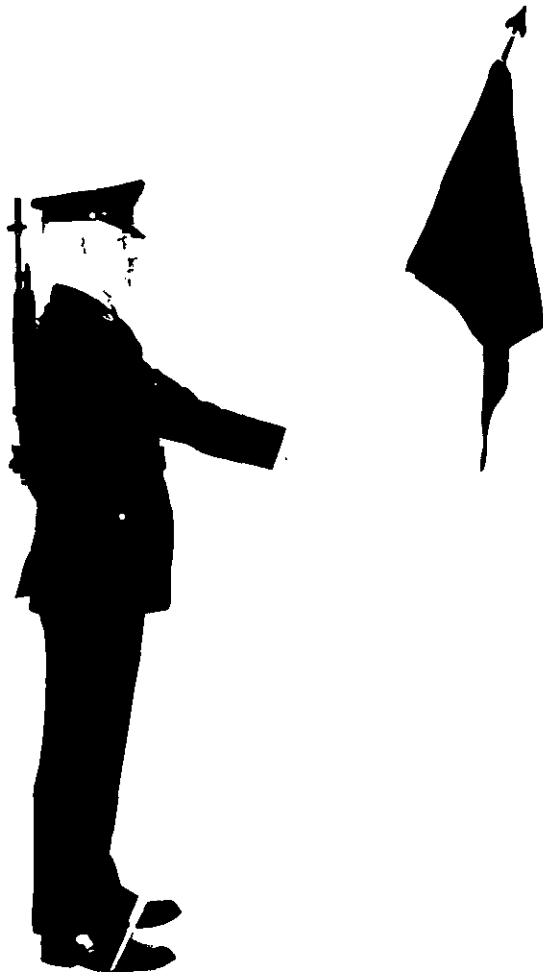
f. To execute PARADE, REST, on the *preparatory command* let your right hand slide up the staff until the forearm is horizontal with the ground. On the *command of execution* incline the staff forward until your arm is





①

*Figure 33. Parade rest with guidon.*



②

*Figure 33—Continued.*

fully extended (1 and 2, fig. 33). At the same time place your left foot and hand in position as in parade rest with the rifle (fig. 14).

*g.* Execute AT EASE similar to parade rest, except that you may slightly relax your right arm.

*h.* When given REST, hold the guidon in either hand.

*i.* When not in formation, render the salute as described in paragraph 46 (1 and 2, fig. 34).

## **62. Order Guidon**

When the troops are armed, execute order guidon on the command ORDER, ARMS from the

company commander. With unarmed troops, execute order guidon automatically on halting. At order guidon, keep the ferrule on the ground and touching the outside of your right shoe, opposite the ball of your right foot. Hold the staff in your right hand in the U formed by your fingers extended and joined, and your thumb. Keep your right hand and arm behind the staff with your arm bent naturally. Rest the staff against the hollow of your shoulder (fig. 35). The remainder of the position of order guidon is the same as the position of attention.

## **63. Raise Guidon**

On the preparatory portion of all commands



1 Order guidon  
Figure 34. Salute.



2 Carry guidon  
Figure 34—Continued.

that begin, change, and discontinue marching movements, and on the *preparatory commands* for COMPANY or GROUP, ATTENTION, PRESENT, ARMS, and EYES, RIGHT, raise the guidon to the raise guidon position by grasping the staff with your left hand, palm to the rear, at a point opposite your right elbow. Raise the staff with your left hand to a position 6 inches off the ground. Keep your right hand in its original position and allow the staff to slide through it. Regrasp the staff in its new position with your right hand and, at the same time, raise the staff with both hands until your right hand is as high as, and in front of, your right shoulder. Retain your

grasp with both hands and keep your right elbow into your side. Keep the staff vertical (fig. 36). Hold the guidon in this position until the *command of execution* is given.

#### 64. Carry Guidon

a. To return to carry guidon from raise guidon, lower the staff, keeping it vertical, until your right arm is fully extended. Return your left hand to your left side. The ferrule is now 6 inches off the ground and the staff is resting in the hollow of your right shoulder. The right hand grasps the staff in the most convenient manner, as depicted in 2, figure 34. Return



Figure 35. Order guidon.

to carry guidon at all *commands of execution* while in the march.

*b.* To return to order guidon, follow the procedure as in *a* above on the *command of execution*, but let the staff slide through your right hand until the ferrule touches the ground.

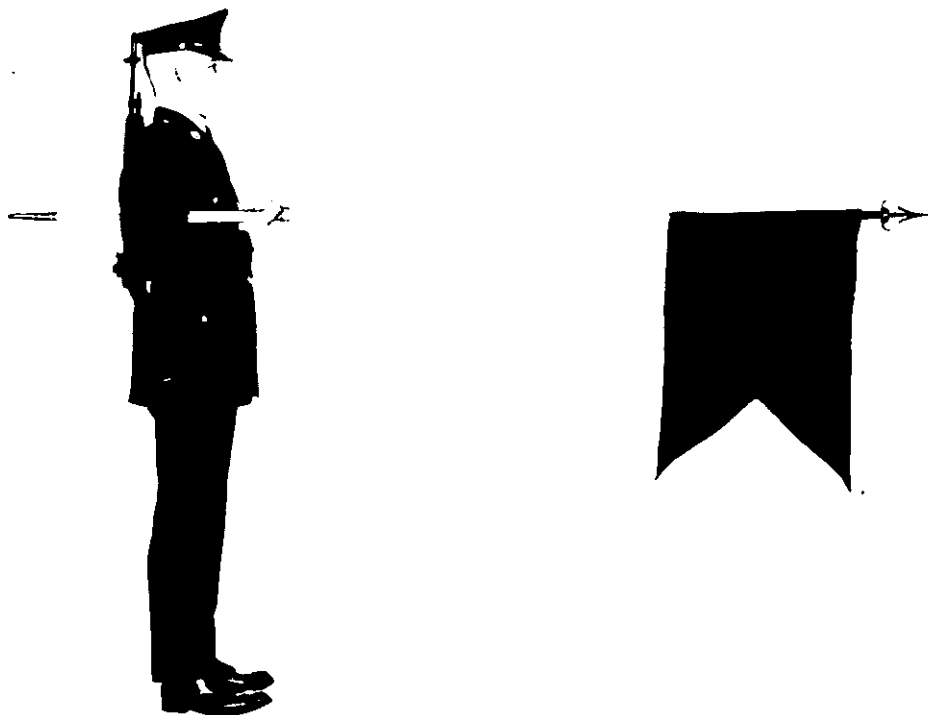
*c.* At double time, hold the guidon diagonally across your body. Grasp the staff with your right hand at the position used at the carry, with your right forearm horizontal and your elbow near your body. Grasp the staff in your left hand opposite the junction of your neck and left shoulder.



Figure 36. Raise guidon.

## 65. Present Guidon

*a.* AT ARMS of PRESENT, ARMS or RIGHT of EYES, RIGHT, lower the guidon to the front from the raise guidon position by lowering your left arm to a diagonal position in front of your body. Rest the staff in your armpit



*Figure 37. Present guidon.*

and hold it horizontal. Keep your right forearm along the right side of the staff, upper arm vertical and into your body. The point of the ferrule slightly protrudes behind your back. At the same time, move your left hand away to your side (fig. 37).

*b.* When passing in review, EXECUTE EYES, RIGHT as you present the guidon, and READY, FRONT as you bring the guidon back to carry. On the command READY, of READY, FRONT. regrasp the staff with your left hand and execute raise guidon, then on FRONT, return to carry guidon.

## CHAPTER 5

### THE SQUAD

---

#### Section I. GENERAL

##### 66. General

a. Training in individual movements and the manual of arms is followed by dismounted drill. This training is progressive and includes three phases: squad, platoon, and company drill. In the first phase you begin to play your part on a team, the squad. In squad drill, you learn to do all the individual movements together with other men.

b. When the squad leader is absent, the second in command takes over his duties and assumes his normal position.

c. Individual members of a squad are numbered from right to left when in line, and from front to rear when in column.

##### 67. Drill Terms

To help understand the meaning of drill terms in this chapter, the following definitions are included:

a. *Formation* is the arrangement of the elements of a command in any prescribed manner.

b. *Line* is a formation in which the elements of a command (other than a platoon) are side by side, or abreast of each other. Two or more elements constitute a line.

c. *Rank* is a line which is only one element in depth.

d. *Interval* (fig. 38) is the lateral space between elements. *Normal interval* is the lateral space between men, measured from right to left by the man on the right holding his left arm and hand shoulder high, fingers and thumb extended and joined, with the tip of

his middle finger touching the right shoulder of the man on his left. *Close interval* between men is measured from right to left by the man on the right placing the heel of his left hand on his left hip just below the belt line, fingers and thumb joined and extended downward, and his elbow in line with his body and touching the arm of the man on his left. *Double arms interval* between men is measured from right to left by the man on the right holding his left arm and hand shoulder high, fully extended. The man to his left obtains double arms interval by holding his right arm and hand shoulder high, fully extended, so that their fingertips touch.

e. *Column* is a formation in which the elements of a command (other than a platoon) are one behind the other, except when the squad is in a column of twos or part of the next larger unit.

f. *File* is a column which has a front of only one element.

g. *Distance* (fig. 38) is the space between elements in column. *Normal distance* for men is the space from the back of a man to the chest of the man immediately to his rear (when they have formed in line, obtained normal interval, and faced to the right or left).

h. *Head* is the leading element of a column.

i. *Cover* is alining yourself directly behind the man to your immediate front while maintaining proper distance.

j. *Flank* is the right or left side of any formation as sensed from an element of that formation.

k. *Front* is the space from side to side of a

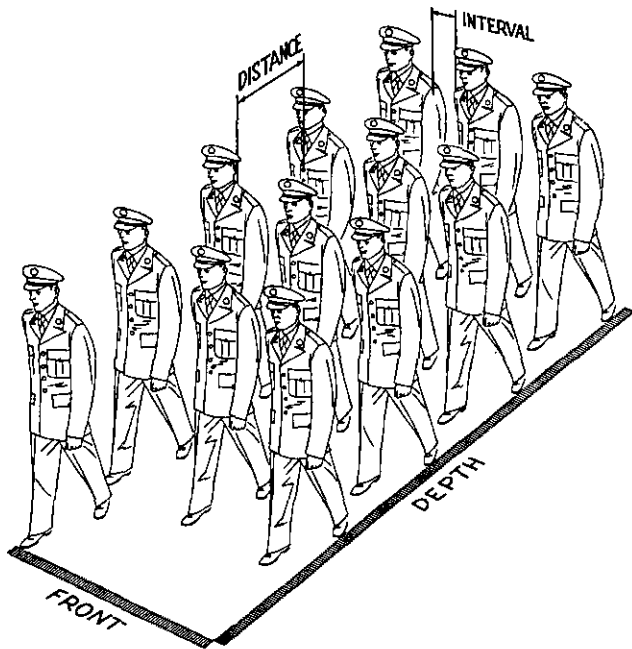


Figure 38. Distance, interval, front, and depth.

formation, including the right and left elements (fig. 38).

*l. Measurements* of an individual normally are 12 inches in depth and 22 inches in width.

*m. Depth* is the space from front to rear of a formation, including the front and rear elements (fig. 38).

*n. Base* is the element on which a movement is planned or regulated.

## 68. Formations

The squad has three prescribed formations—a line (1, fig. 39), a column (file) (2, fig. 39), and a column of twos (3, fig. 39).

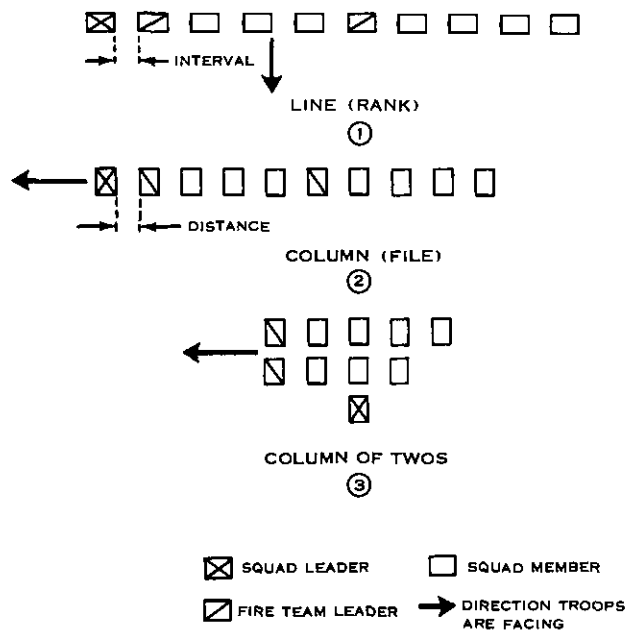


Figure 39. Squad formations.

*a.* The squad forms in line with the squad leader on the right.

*b.* The squad normally marches in column (2 and 3, fig. 39), but it may march in line for short distances only. When it is part of a larger unit, the squad normally marches in column (file) as shown in 2, figure 39.

*c.* When the squad drills as a separate unit, the squad leader takes a post three steps in front of and centered on the squad when it is in line; and three steps to the left and centered on the squad when it is in column (file) or in column of twos.

## Section II. SQUAD DRILL

### 69. To Form the Squad

*a.* To form at normal interval (fig. 40) the squad leader assumes the position of attention and commands FALL IN.

*b.* When the squad forms as a separate unit, the next senior member assumes the number one position which is the right flank man. At the command FALL IN, the number one man

positions himself so that the squad, when formed, will be three steps in front of and centered on the squad leader. The number one man immediately raises his left arm laterally at shoulder level, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm down, with head and eyes to the front. The number two man takes his position immediately to the left of number one and on line, his right shoulder touching number

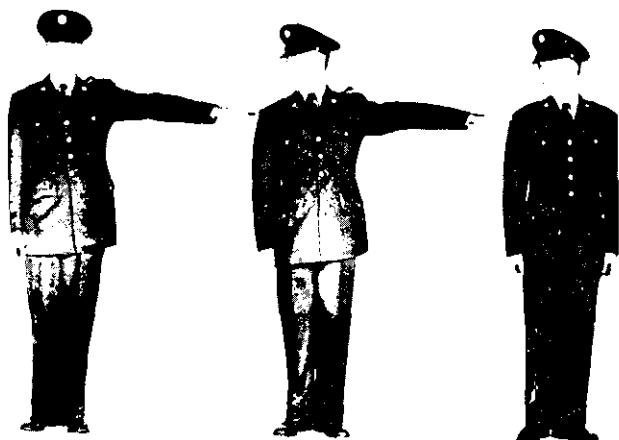


Figure 40. Normal interval.

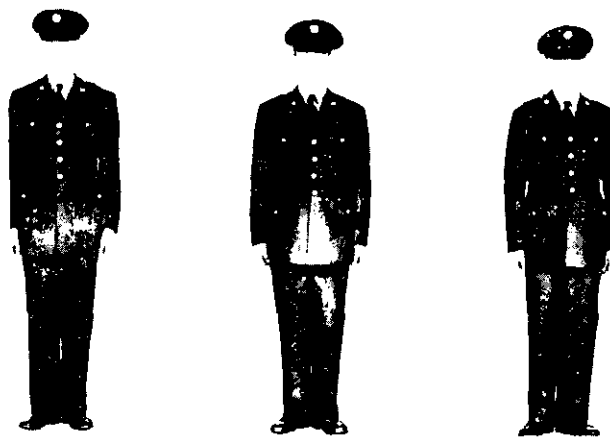


Figure 40—Continued.

one's fingertips; he turns his head and eyes to the right for alinement and raises his left arm. As soon as proper interval has been obtained, the number one man drops his left arm to his side. The number two man turns his head and eyes to the front when he is alined. Other members of the squad form in the same manner as the number two man. The left flank man does not raise his left arm.

c. When the squad is part of a larger unit, the squad leader is the right flank man.

d. To form at close interval (fig. 41) the command is AT CLOSE INTERVAL, FALL IN. The formation is completed like normal interval, except that close interval is obtained as described in paragraph 67d.

e. When armed, the men fall in at the order. Weapons are inspected after falling in by the commands INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; and ORDER, ARMS.

## 70. To Dismiss the Squad

a. The squad is dismissed only from a line formation with the men at attention.

b. With armed troops, the commands are INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; DISMISSED.

c. With unarmed troops, the command is DISMISSED.

## 71. To Change Interval While in Line

a. To obtain close interval from normal in-

terval, the command is CLOSE, MARCH. On the command of execution, the right flank man stands fast. All men to his left face to the right in marching from the halt, march forward until they have obtained the approximate close interval, halt, and face to the left. The squad then forms at close interval without command, as explained in paragraph 69d.

b. To obtain normal interval, the command is EXTEND, MARCH. At the command MARCH, all men except the right flank man face to the left in marching from the halt, march forward until approximately normal interval is obtained, halt, and face to the right. The squad then forms at normal interval without command, as explained in paragraph 69b.

c. To obtain double-arm interval from normal interval, the command is TAKE INTERVAL, MARCH. This movement is executed as when extending, except that the double-arm interval is obtained by each man raising both arms and touching the fingertips of the man on his right. Drop your right arm when the interval has been obtained; drop your left arm when the man on the left drops his right arm. Turn your head and eyes to the front as you drop your right arm. In executing this movement, the right flank man does not raise his right arm and the left flank man does not raise his left arm. With armed troops, sling arms is given before commanding this movement.

d. To obtain normal interval from double-arm interval, the command is ASSEMBLE,



Figure 41. Close interval.

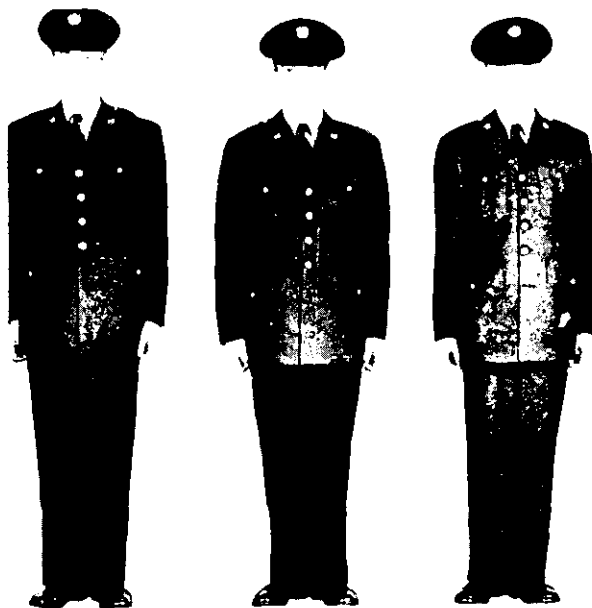


Figure 41—Continued.

**MARCH.** Execute this movement like **CLOSE, MARCH**, but form at normal interval.

## 72. To Aline the Squad

a. To aline the squad at normal interval, the commands are **DRESS RIGHT, DRESS; READY, FRONT**. These commands are given only when the men are at order arms or sling arms. At the command **DRESS**, each man except the *right* flank man turns his head and eyes to the right and alines himself on the *right* flank man. Each man except the *left* flank man extends his *left* arm, and each man positions himself by short right or left steps until his *right* shoulder touches the fingertips of the man on his *right*.

b. At the command **DRESS**, the squad leader marches by the most direct route to a position on line with the squad, one step from the right flank man, halts on line, and faces down the line. From this position he verifies the alinement of the squad, ordering men to move forward or backward as necessary, calling them by name or number; e.g., Private Jones, forward 2 inches; number eight man, back 4 inches. The squad leader remains at attention, taking short steps to the right or left as necessary to see down the squad. He

does not use his arms or twist his body. Having checked the alinement, he faces to the right in marching, halts three steps in advance of the squad, executes left face, and commands **READY, FRONT**. At the command **FRONT**, the men drop their arms to their sides and turn their heads and eyes to the front. The squad leader then marches to his front until he is centered on the squad where he halts and faces the squad.

c. To aline the squad at close interval, the commands are **AT CLOSE INTERVAL DRESS RIGHT, DRESS; READY, FRONT**. The movement is executed as described in *a* and *b* above, except that close interval is obtained as described in paragraph 67*d*. This command is given only when there is approximate close interval between elements.

d. To dress the squad in column, the command is **COVER**. At this command, each man covers the man in front of him and obtains the approximate distance.

## 73. To March in Column from Squad in Line at the Halt

a. The commands are **RIGHT (LEFT), FACE; FORWARD, MARCH**. These movements are executed as explained in chapter 3.



b. When at close interval, the squad is extended to normal interval before being faced and marched off.

#### 74. To Change the Direction of a Column

a. The command is COLUMN RIGHT (COLUMN LEFT), COLUMN HALF RIGHT, (COLUMN HALF LEFT), MARCH.

b. From a halt, at the command COLUMN RIGHT or COLUMN HALF RIGHT, MARCH, the leading man takes a 30-inch step to the front with his left foot (which will allow men following to pivot on approximately the same point on the ground), turns to the right on the ball of his left foot, and steps off in the indicated direction, taking a full step with his right foot. All other men march forward and turn in the same manner as the leading man, following in column until another command is given. On the command COLUMN LEFT (COLUMN HALF LEFT), MARCH from a halt, the leading man faces to the left in marching, as prescribed in paragraph 32. All other men march forward and pivot on approximately the same point on the ground.

c. When marching the *preparatory command* and *command of execution* for each movement are given so they end on the foot in the direction of the turn; COLUMN RIGHT, MARCH and COLUMN HALF RIGHT, MARCH are given as the right foot strikes the ground and COLUMN LEFT, MARCH and COLUMN HALF LEFT, MARCH as the left foot strikes the ground. The interval between the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* is one step. At the command MARCH, the leading man executes a face-in-marching from the march by taking one more step, pivoting in the indicated direction. All other men execute the same movement in succession on approximately the same point.

d. While marching, the command INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) is given for changes of direction where a column movement is not applicable. The leading man changes direction as commanded. All other men turn in the same way as they come to the point on which the leading man turned and continue marching in the new direction. This is not a precision movement.

#### 75. March to the Flank

When it is desired to move a unit to the flank for a short distance while marching at quick time, the commands are RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK, MARCH. The *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* end when the foot in the indicated direction of march strikes the ground. The interval between the *preparatory command* and the *command of execution* is one step or count. At the command MARCH, each man takes one more step, turns in the indicated direction of march on the ball of his leading foot, and steps off in the new direction with his trailing foot. This movement is used to march a unit to the right or left for a short distance and is not executed from the halt.

#### 76. To Count Off in Line

a. For drill purposes, counting off is executed only from right to left in line. The command is COUNT, OFF.

b. When in line, at the command of execution, each man (except the man on the right flank) turns his head and eyes to the right and the right flank man counts off ONE. Af-

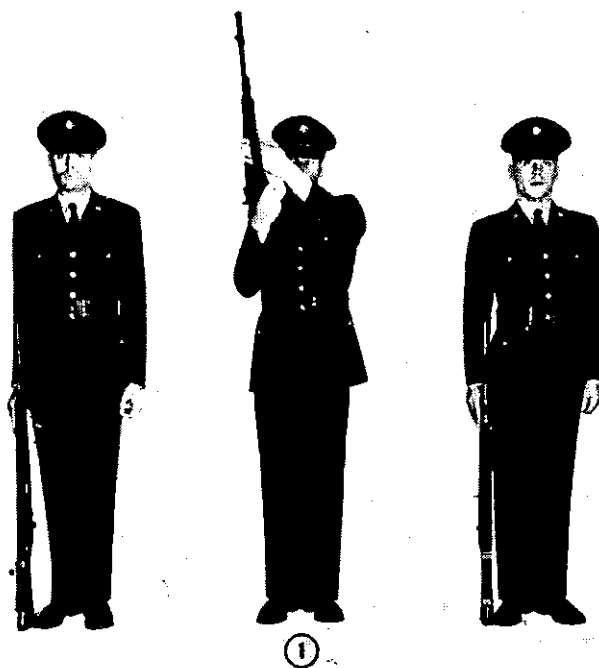


Figure 42. Preparing sling to stack arms.



Figure 42—Continued.

ter the man on the right counts off his number, the man to his left counts off the next higher number, at the same time turning his head and eyes to the front. The numbers are counted in the cadence of quick time from man to man. All movements are made in a precise manner.

## 77. To Stack Arms and Take Arms

a. The members of the squad stack arms from their positions in line at normal interval on the command of **STACK, ARMS**. After the squad counts off, the leader designates the stackmen by numbers then gives the command **PREPARE, SLINGS**.

(1) At the command **SLINGS**, the stackman places the butt of his rifle on his right hip and cradles it in the crook of his right

arm (1, fig. 42). He then adjusts the sling keeper to form a 4-inch loop (approx) next to the upper sling swivel (2, fig. 42). As soon as he has prepared the loop, the stackman returns to order arms. After all stackmen are at order arms, the command, **STACK, ARMS**, is given.

(2) At the command **ARMS**, the stackman places his rifle directly in front of and centered on his body with the sling facing to the front (1, fig. 43). The heel of the rifle butt is on the ground on line with the toes of his shoes. The stackman grasps the rifle by the handguard with his left hand. The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. He reaches across the front of the rifle with the right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop, and holds it open for the insertion of the other rifles (2, fig. 43). He holds the rifle vertical at all times.

(3) At the command **ARMS**, the men to the left and right of the stackman perform the following movements simultaneously:

(a) The man on the stackman's left raises and centers his rifle in front of his body so that his right hand is shoulder high and the weapon is approximately 4 inches from his chest, with the sling to the left. He then grasps the rifle with his left hand, palm over the sling, at the small of the stock, and lowers both arms, holding the weapon in a horizontal position (3, fig. 43).

(b) The man on the stackman's right raises and centers his weapon, wrist shoulder high, rotating the weapon so the sling faces the body. He then grasps the rifle directly below his right hand, with the left thumb over the sling, and in the most convenient manner, grasps the weapon with the right hand, palm over the sling at the small of the stock. He then lowers both arms, holding the weapon in a horizontal position (3, fig. 43).

(c) As soon as both men have completed these movements each moves his foot, that is nearest the stackman, 18 inches to the oblique and toward the stackman. In a continuing motion, the man on the stackman's left inserts the muzzle of his rifle into the loop held by the stackman until the bayonet stud protrudes past the far end of the loop (4, fig. 43). He holds his weapon in this position until

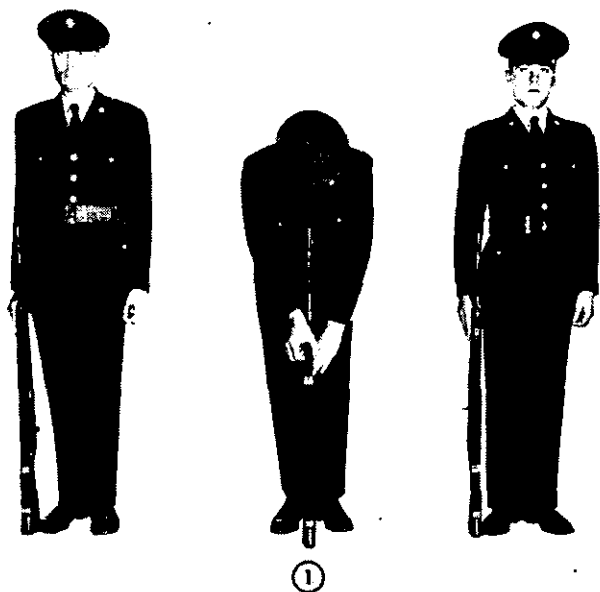


Figure 43. Stack arms.

the man on the stackman's right inserts the muzzle of his rifle through the loop in the same manner and above the muzzle of the rifle of the left man (4, fig. 43).

(4) When both rifles have been inserted into the loop, the men on each side of the stackman swing the butts of their rifles outward and down to the ground until the stack is tight with the rifle butts on line and approximately 2 feet from the baseline (5, fig. 43).

(5) After necessary adjustments have been made, all three men come back to the position of attention (5 and 6, fig. 43).

(6) Extra rifles are passed to the nearest stack on the right. As each rifle is passed, it is grasped at the upper part of the handguard with the right hand. Then, with the rifle held vertical, it is passed with fully extended arm to the right front. The man on the right grasps the rifle at the balance with his left hand, brings the rifle to the center of his body, and regrips it at the upper part of the handguard with his right hand. This action continues until the stackman receives the rifle and places it on the stack with his right hand as nearly vertical as possible. He places the rifles on the stack with the slings away from the stack.



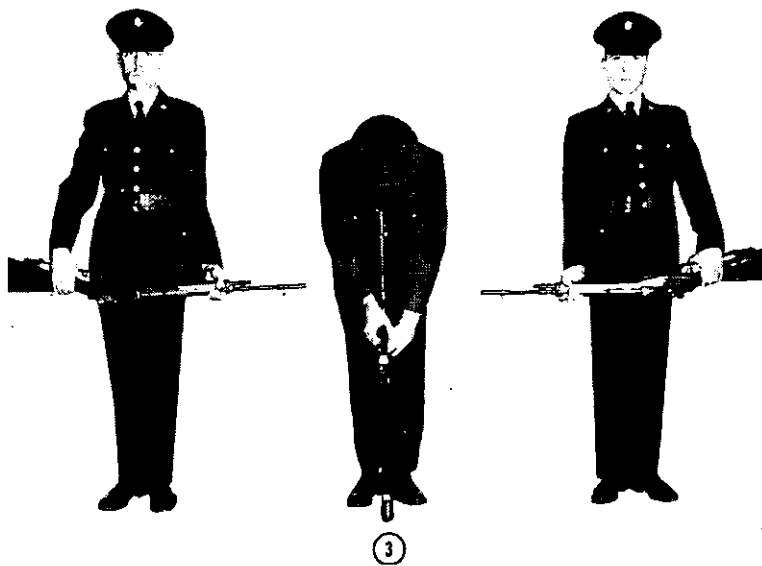
Closeup of loop in sling

Figure 43—Continued.

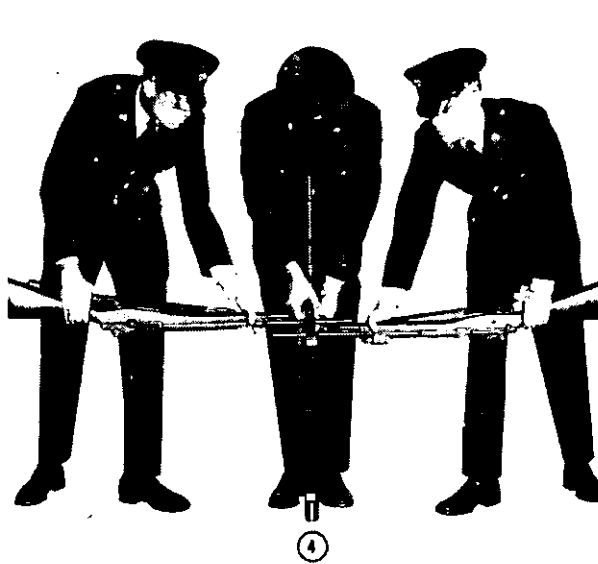
b. The squad in position, on line behind the stacks, takes arms at the command TAKE, ARMS.

(1) At the command ARMS, the stackman passes each extra rifle towards its bearer. The rifles are handled in the manner described for passing them to the stack (left hand at the balance, right hand at the upper part of the handguard). As the men receive their weapons, they resume the position of order arms.

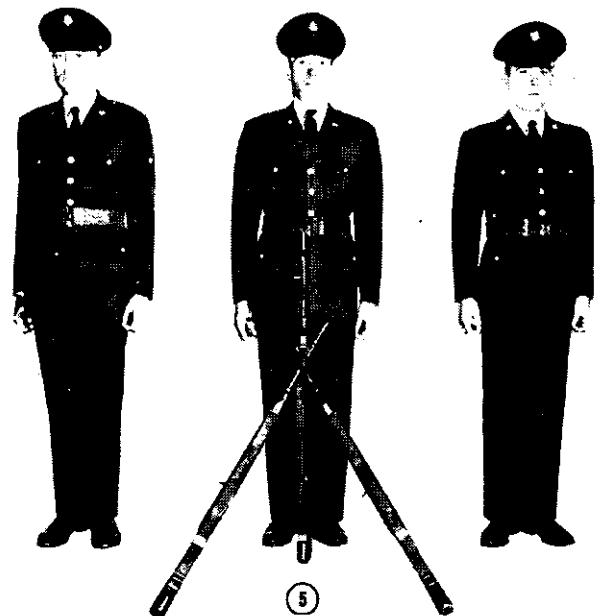
(2) After all extra rifles have been returned, the stackman grasps the base rifle, holding the loop open as in stack arms.



*Figure 43—Continued.*



*Figure 43—Continued.*



*Figure 43—Continued.*

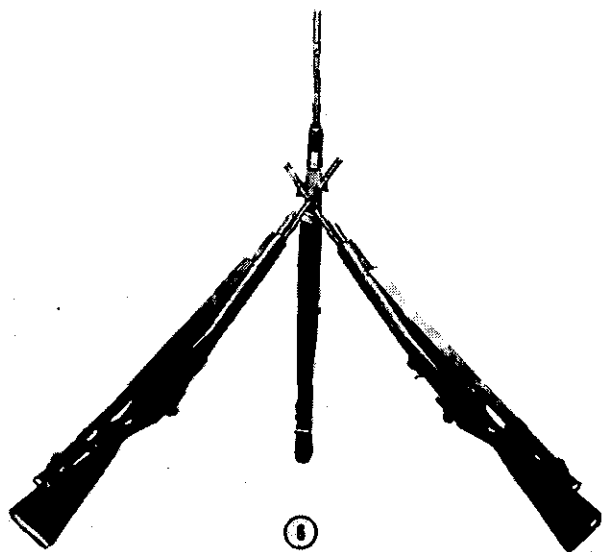


Figure 48—Continued.

(3) The men to the right and left of the stackman take one step to their left and right fronts, respectively. They reach down and grasp their rifles, bringing them to a horizontal position. They grasp the rifles as shown in 4, figure 43. The man to the right of the stackman frees his rifle from the stack first. Each man returns to order arms after retrieving his rifle. He does this by guiding and steadying the rifle with his left hand as in the next to the last count of order arms (fig. 17).

(4) The stackman adjusts the sling of his rifle before returning to order arms.

## 78. To Form a Column of Twos from a File and Re-Form

a. When at a halt and in file, the command is **COLUMN OF TWOS TO THE LEFT (RIGHT) MARCH.**

b. On the *preparatory command*, the number one team leader commands **STAND FAST.** The number two team leader commands **COLUMN HALF LEFT (HALF RIGHT).** On the command **MARCH**, the number two team leader executes a column half left (right), then inclines right (left), halting abreast of the number one team leader at normal interval on his command **TEAM, HALT.**

c. When in a column of twos at the halt, the command to re-form is **FILE FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH.**

d. On the *preparatory command*, the number one team leader commands **FORWARD.** The number two team leader commands **STAND FAST.** Upon the *command of execution* **MARCH**, the number one team marches forward. The number two team leader commands **COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH**, and then inclines right (left) to follow the number one team at normal distance.

## CHAPTER 6

### THE PLATOON

#### Section I. GENERAL

#### 79. General

a. Upon completion of the first phase of dismounted drill, your squad is merged with other squads into a platoon where you learn other movements.

b. The platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and two or more sections or squads. The platoon headquarters consists of a platoon leader and one or more assistants.

c. The elements (squads) of a platoon are numbered from front to rear when in line, and from left to right when the platoon is in column.

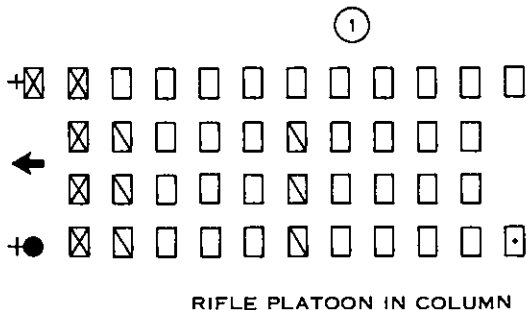
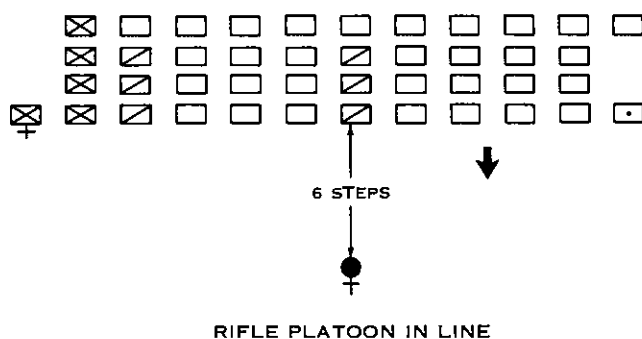


Figure 44. Platoon formations.

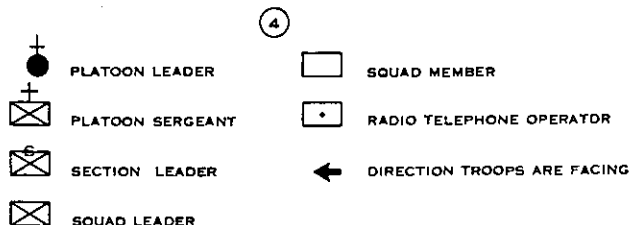
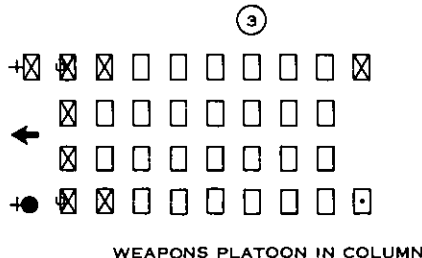
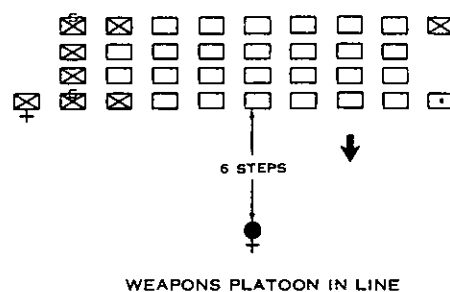


Figure 44—Continued.

#### 80. Drill Terms

To help understand the meaning of certain drill terms in this chapter, the following definitions are given:

a. *Platoon base* for a platoon in column is the squad behind the platoon guide.

b. The *guide* is the man responsible for maintaining the prescribed direction and rate of march for the platoon. The platoon sergeant is the guide. When the platoon is in line at the

halt, the guide's position is always on the right flank of the platoon and at normal interval to the right of the first squad leader. The guide does not change his position when the platoon is marched for short distances in a line formation. When the platoon is in a column formation, the guide's position is in front of the right squad leader, at normal distance.

c. *Platoon line* is a formation in which the elements (squads) of a platoon are in line and one behind the other. When the platoon forms in line, the distance between squad leaders is approximately 40 inches (1, fig. 44).

d. *Platoon column* is a formation in which the elements (squads) of a platoon are in column and abreast of each other (2, fig. 44). A suggested column formation for the weapons platoon is depicted in 4, figure 44.

e. *Post* is the correct place for an officer or noncommissioned officer to stand in a prescribed formation.

## 81. Rules for the Guide

a. The guide of a unit is always on the right front.

b. When a platoon in line is given the command **RIGHT, FACE**, the guide executes right face with the platoon. Then he immediately faces to the right in marching, marches forward, halting in front of the right squad leader, and executes left face.

c. When a platoon in column is given the command **FILE FROM THE LEFT, MARCH**, on the *preparatory command* the guide takes his position in front of the left file so that he is at the head of the column.

d. When a platoon in column is given the command **COLUMN OF TWOS FROM THE LEFT, MARCH**, on the *preparatory command* the guide takes his position in front of the second file from the left so that he is at the head of the right file of the column that is to move out. When moving from one position to the other he faces to the left or right in marching.

e. When re-forming in a column of fours from a file or column of twos, the guide posts

himself in his normal position when the movement is completed.

f. The guide is responsible for setting the direction of march by inclining to the right or left when necessary, and for setting the proper cadence. The leading man of each file is responsible for the interval.

g. When a platoon is marching in column and the command to march by a flank or to the rear is given, the guide executes the movement with the platoon but does not change his position within the platoon.

## 82. Squad Drill Applicable to Platoon Drill

The following movements are executed as in squad drill, with the exceptions and additions noted.

a. The platoon is dismissed by the platoon sergeant in the same manner as the squad.

b. The platoon changes interval while in line and counts off in the same manner as the squad with the squad leaders as bases for these movements. When there are two or more ranks, the men in rear of the first rank cover the corresponding man to their front in executing these movements. When there is only one rank, the first (or right) squad leader is base. The guide moves to the right when interval is taken to the left, and does not count off.

c. The platoon marches from a line in the same manner as a squad, the guide taking his post as described in rules for the guide (para 81).

d. The platoon executes flank movements in a manner similar to that described for the squad except when the platoon is at close interval between files. In this case, it must first be extended to normal interval.

e. To align the platoon while in column, the command is **COVER**. The base squad leader obtains normal distance from the guide. All other squad leaders obtain normal interval as prescribed in paragraph 72a. All other men in the base squad execute the movement as in squad drill (para 72d). At the same time the remaining men of the platoon align on the base squad and cover their squad leaders without raising their arms.

### 83. Formations

The platoon has two prescribed formations: a column and a line.<sup>9</sup>

a. The platoon forms in line with the squad leaders on the right of their squads (1, fig. 44). In line, with the platoon leader in command, the platoon sergeant's post is to the right of the right flank man of the front rank at normal interval. The platoon leader's post is six steps to the front of and centered on the platoon. When marching in line, the guide and squad leaders are on the right. The platoon marches in line for short distances only.

b. When the platoon sergeant is performing the duties of the platoon leader, the senior squad leader assumes the duties and post of the platoon sergeant.

c. In the column formation the platoon leader is in front of the left file and the platoon sergeant in front of the right file, all at normal distances when part of a larger unit. When the platoon is drilling as a separate unit, the platoon leader is six steps to the left and centered on the left flank of the platoon. The platoon normally marches in column with the guide and squad leaders at the head.

## Section II. PLATOON DRILL

### 84. To Form the Platoon and Dismiss the Platoon

a. The platoon is usually formed at normal interval by the platoon sergeant with the command FALL IN.

(1) At this command, the squad leader of the first squad posts himself so that the first squad, when formed, will be centered on and be three 30-inch steps from the platoon sergeant. Other squad leaders cover the first squad leader at normal distance. The members of the squads fall in on their squad leaders as prescribed in squad drill. Exact interval is taken only by the first squad. Men in the rear squads raise their left arms, take approximate interval only, and cover the corresponding man in the front rank. Radiotelephone operators and attached personnel fall in at the left of the platoon to even the length of the ranks without disrupting the organization of the squads.

(2) When the platoon is formed, the platoon sergeant commands INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; ORDER, ARMS. On his next command, REPORT, the squad leaders in succession from front to rear, salute and report in one of the following manners: "All present," or "Private Jones and Corporal Smith absent." Each squad leader executes the rifle salute (looking to the front) at order arms and holds the salute until the platoon sergeant returns it at the completion of the report. If armed, the platoon sergeant returns each squad leader's salute by executing the hand salute while

at sling arms. He looks toward the squad leaders. The platoon sergeant then faces about and reports to the platoon leader, "Sir, all present; Sir, all present or accounted for; or, Sir, (so many) men absent." The platoon leader and platoon sergeant exchange salutes, the platoon leader executing the hand salute. The platoon sergeant then faces about, faces to the half left in marching and takes his post to the right of the right flank man in the first squad, and faces about. He marches to his post in the most direct manner.

(3) To form at close interval, the command is AT CLOSE INTERVAL, FALL IN. The formation is executed as described in (1) above, except that close interval is obtained as described in paragraph 72c.

b. When the platoon is in line and at the position of attention it is normally dismissed in the following manner.

(1) The platoon leader commands "PLATOON SERGEANT." On this command the platoon sergeant positions himself three steps in front of the platoon leader and executes the hand salute. The platoon leader returns the salute, then commands DISMISS THE PLATOON. Salutes are again exchanged and the platoon leader falls out.

(2) If the troops are unarmed, the platoon sergeant dismisses the platoon by giving the command of, DISMISSED.

(3) If the troops are armed, the platoon



sergeant gives the commands, INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; DISMISSED.

## 85. To Aline the Platoon

a. When in line, the platoon is alined similarly to the squad (para 72). The platoon leader verifies the alinement.

b. To aline the platoon, the command is DRESS, RIGHT, DRESS, or AT CLOSE INTERVAL, DRESS RIGHT, DRESS, given by the platoon leader. On the *command of execution* DRESS, the squad leader of the first squad momentarily glances to the right to aline himself on the guide then turns his head and eyes back to the front. The guide raises his left arm during alinement. Other squad leaders obtain normal distance by estimation. They do not raise their arms to the front.

c. All men except the left flank men raise their left arms when alining. Only the first squad obtains the exact interval. All other squads get approximate interval; each man covers the man to his front and, at the same time, alines himself on his squad leader in the same manner as described in paragraph 72a.

d. At the command DRESS, the platoon leader marches by the most direct route to the right flank of the platoon, halts on line and one step from the guide, and executes right face. He then alines the first squad as described in paragraph 72. After alining the first squad, the platoon leader faces to the left in marching, taking two short steps to the next squad, halts, executes right face, and alines the squad in the same manner as the first squad. He does not incline behind the guide. He alines all other squads in the same manner.

e. After alining the last squad, the platoon leader faces in marching from the halt and moves to a position three steps in advance of the platoon flank, halts, faces to the left, and commands, READY, FRONT. He then moves, by the most direct route, to his post six steps in front of and centered on the platoon. The right platoon leader assumes his position by halting with his left foot forward. He then pivots to his front on the ball of his left foot, and brings his right foot alongside his left foot.

## 86. To Open and Close Ranks

a. When in line at normal interval, the platoon opens ranks for stacking arms or other purposes at the command OPEN RANKS, MARCH. At the command MARCH the front rank takes two steps forward, the second rank takes one step, and the third rank stands fast. Each rank executes dress right on halting. If there are more than three ranks, the fourth rank takes two steps backward, the fifth rank takes four steps backward, and the sixth rank takes six steps backward. The platoon leader verifies the alinement as described in paragraph 85, except he takes three steps between ranks.

b. To close ranks, the command is CLOSE RANKS, MARCH. At the command MARCH, the front rank stands fast. The second, third and succeeding ranks take one, two, three or more steps forward respectively, maintaining cover and alinement.

## 87. To Change Interval While in Column

a. When in column at normal interval, at a halt, or in march at quick time, to obtain close interval between files the command is CLOSE, MARCH.

b. At the halt, on the command MARCH, the base squad stands fast. The other squads obtain close interval by taking two, four, and six right steps respectively, and cover their squad leaders.

c. When marching, the command CLOSE, MARCH is given on the right foot. At the command MARCH, the right squad takes up the half step. Other men face to the half right in marching and march until close interval is obtained. Then they face to the half left in marching and take up the half step when abreast of the corresponding number of the base squad. At the command FORWARD, MARCH, all squads resume the 30-inch step. MARK TIME, MARCH or PLATOON HALT may be given also.

d. To obtain normal interval between files, when the platoon is in column at close interval, at a halt, or in march at quick time, the command is EXTEND, MARCH. This movement is executed like close march, but in the opposite direction.

## 88. To Change the Direction of a Column

a. To change the direction of a column, the command is COLUMN RIGHT (COLUMN LEFT, COLUMN HALF RIGHT, or COLUMN HALF LEFT), MARCH, given at the halt or while marching at quick time or double time in column. The base element during the turn is the squad on the flank in the direction of the turn. The pivot man for this movement is the first man in the base squad, exclusive of the platoon leader or the platoon guide. When COLUMN RIGHT (HALF RIGHT), MARCH is commanded from a halt, the guide faces to the right (half right) in marching at the command of execution.

b. The base squad executes this movement as in squad drill, except that each man takes up the half step after executing the face-in-marching until the corresponding men in the other squads come abreast. All other squads execute two column half rights (lefts); the first half column movement is made at the line where the first rank executes the turn; the second, upon reaching a line running through the base squad's pivot, and parallel with the new front. Men in squads other than the base take up the half step as they come abreast of the corresponding men in the base squad. When all the men in a rank are abreast, they step off with the 30-inch step without command.

c. When executing a column movement at double time, elements will adjust the length of their step so interval and distance will be maintained, through and beyond the pivot point.

d. The command INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) is given for changes in direction where a column movement is not applicable. This is not a precise movement. After completing the turn, the base squad leader covers the guide and the platoon dresses on the base squad. The base is normal and not changed by the direction of turn.

## 89. To Form a File and Re-Form from a Halt

a. When the platoon is in a column of two or more files at a halt, it forms a single file at the command FILE FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH.

b. The squad leader of the designated lead file gives the *supplementary command* FORWARD, and the other squad leaders command STAND FAST. (When forming a file from the left, the guide positions himself in front of the left file on the *preparatory command*, FILE FROM THE LEFT.)

c. On the command of execution, the leading squad marches forward. The squad leader immediately to the left (right) of the base squad commands COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH and, after starting the movement, inclines to the left (right) without command, following the line of march of the preceding squad. The remaining squad leaders command COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH, and COLUMN HALF LEFT (RIGHT), MARCH so as to follow the preceding squad's normal distance. The squad leaders give their *commands of execution* to set their squads in march when the right foot of the marching squad strikes the ground. The squad leaders glance over their shoulders to see when the first half column movement should be given.

d. A column movement may be executed and a file formed from a column formation by the command FILE FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH. The squad leader of the squad leading the movement gives COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT) instead of FORWARD after the *preparatory command*, and the other squad leaders give STAND FAST. The remaining squad leaders command COLUMN RIGHT (COLUMN LEFT), MARCH as the last man in the preceding squad reaches the pivot point.

e. When in file at a halt, to re-form in the original column, the command is COLUMN OF TWOS (FOURS) TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), MARCH.

f. On the *preparatory command*, the squad leader of the base (leading) squad commands STAND FAST. All other squad leaders command, COLUMN HALF LEFT (RIGHT).

g. At the command MARCH, the base (leading) squad stands fast. All other squads execute the column half left (right) simultaneously. The squad leader immediately in rear of the base squad then inclines to the right (left) without command. The other squad leaders command COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH. Squad leaders of the moving squad

command SQUAD, HALT, so as to bring their squads abreast of the base (leading) squad.

## **90. To Form a Column of Twos from a Column of Fours and Re-Form from a Halt**

a. When in a column of fours at a halt, to form a column of twos, the command is COLUMN OF TWOS FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH.

b. On the *preparatory command*, the squad leaders of the two squads which are to move out first command FORWARD. The other two squad leaders command STAND FAST. The guide positions himself in front of the right squad of the two squads which are to move out.

c. On the *command of execution*, the two right squads march forward. The other two squads move into the column of twos at normal distance at the commands COLUMN HALF RIGHT (COLUMN HALF LEFT), MARCH, COLUMN HALF LEFT (COLUMN HALF RIGHT), MARCH, given by the squad leader next to the two moving squads.

d. A column movement may be executed while forming the column of twos from a column of fours in the same manner as described in paragraph 88.

e. When in a column of twos at a halt, to re-form in the original column of fours, the command is COLUMN OF FOURS TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), MARCH.

f. On the *preparatory command*, the two leading squad leaders command STAND FAST. The two rear squad leaders command COLUMN HALF LEFT (RIGHT). On the command MARCH the two leading squads stand fast and the two rear squads execute column half left (right). The squad leader nearest the stationary squads commands COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH, and SQUADS, HALT, causing the moving squads to halt at normal interval abreast of the stationary squads.

g. When re-forming a column of fours to the right the two rear squad leaders face to the half-right in marching from a halt on the command of execution MARCH. All other members of the squads execute column half-right at the appropriate time.

## CHAPTER 7

### THE COMPANY

#### 91. Organization

a. The training received in the first (squad) and second (platoon) drill phases is combined into the third phase—company drill.

b. A company consists of a company headquarters and two or more platoons. For dismounted drill and ceremonies, the company headquarters personnel are attached to the platoons to equalize platoon strength without interfering with the permanent squad organization.

c. Posts for key personnel in company formations are as follows:

(1) *Company in line* (1, fig. 45).

(a) *Company commander*. Twelve steps to the front and center of the company.

(b) *Guidon bearer*. One step to the rear and two steps to the left of the company commander.

(c) *Platoon leaders*. Six steps to the front and center of their platoons.

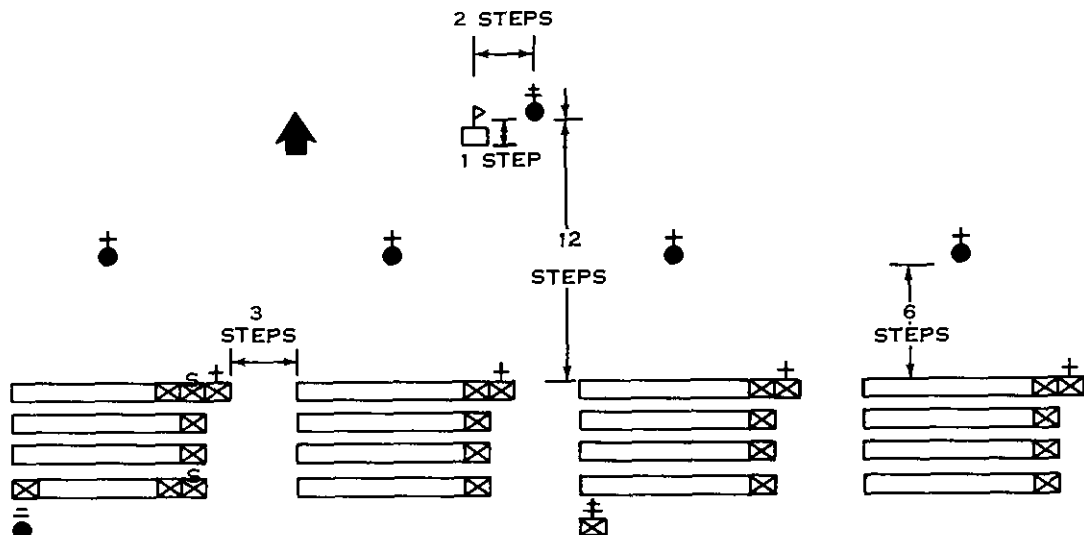
(d) *Platoon sergeant (platoon guide)*. Normal interval to the right of the front rank squad leader.

(e) *Executive officer*. Normal distance to the rear of the left flank man, rear rank of the left platoon.

(f) *First sergeant*. Normal distance to the rear of the left flank man, rear rank of the second platoon.

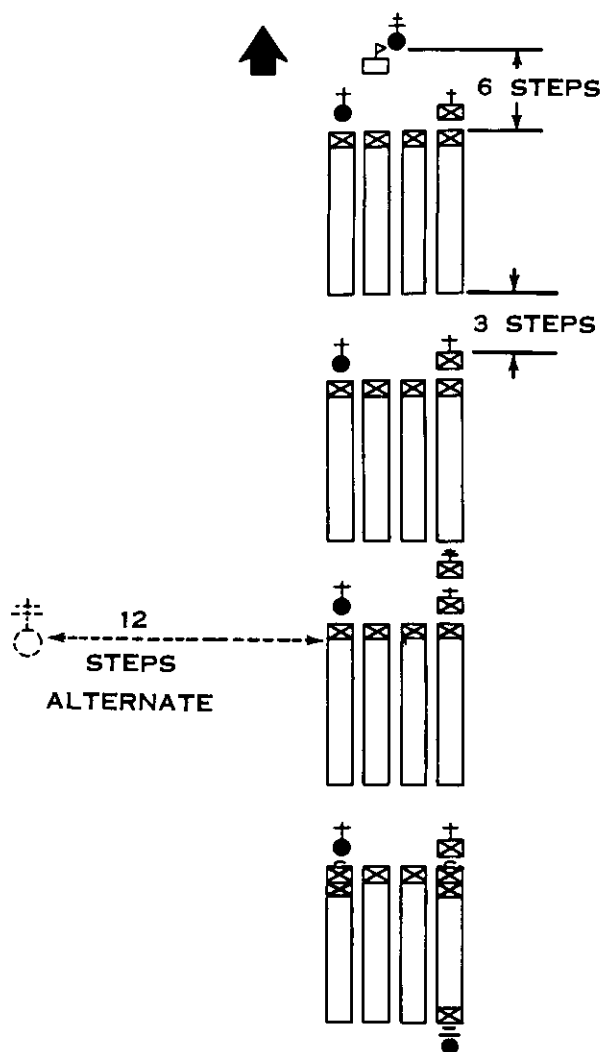
(2) *Company in column with platoons in column for drill purposes* (2, fig. 45).

(a) *Company commander*. Six steps in front of and centered on the leading platoon, or centered on the left flank of the company in a position to best control his unit. His distance from the flank should not exceed 12 steps (2, fig. 45). If the company commander moves to the left of the unit, the guidon bearer remains at the head of the column.



1 Company in line with platoons in line.

Figure 45. Company formations.



2 Company in column with platoons in column

Figure 45—Continued.

(b) *Guidon bearer*. One step to the rear and two steps to the left of the company commander.

(c) *Platoon leaders*. Normal distance in front of the squad leader of the left file squad of their platoons.

(d) *Platoon sergeant (platoon guide)*. Normal distance in front of the squad leader of the right file squad.

(e) *Executive officer*. Normal distance to the rear of the last man in the right file of the rear platoon.

(f) *First sergeant*. Normal distance to the rear of the last man in the right file of the second platoon, or as the company commander directs.

(3) *Company in column with platoons in line* (3, fig. 45).

(a) *Company commander*. Twelve steps front and center of the first platoon.

(b) *Guidon bearer*. One 30-inch step to the rear and two 30-inch steps to the left of the company commander.

(c) *Platoon leaders*. Six steps front and center of their platoons.

(d) *Platoon sergeants (platoon guides)*. Normal intervals to the right of the right flank man of the first squad.

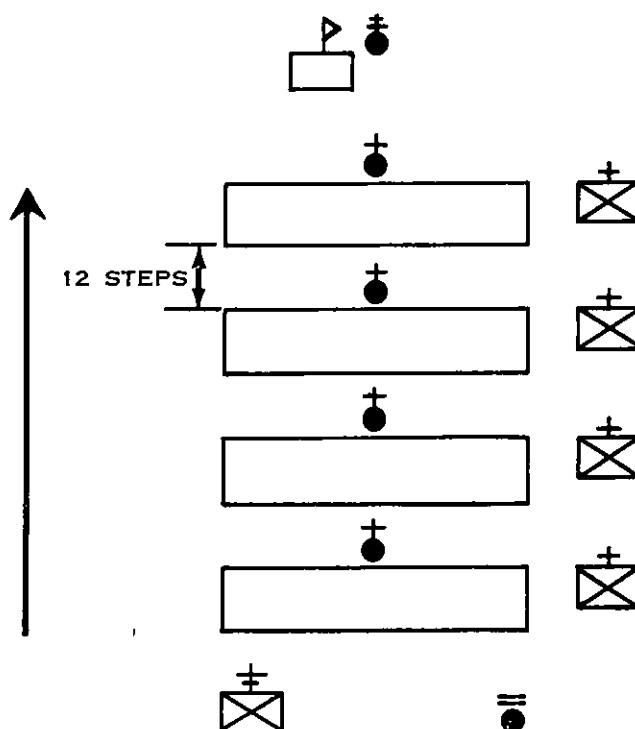
(e) *Executive officer*. At normal distance to the rear of the squad leader of the rear platoon.

(f) *First sergeant*. At normal distance to the rear of the left flank man of the rear platoon.

(4) *Company in mass* (4, fig. 45).

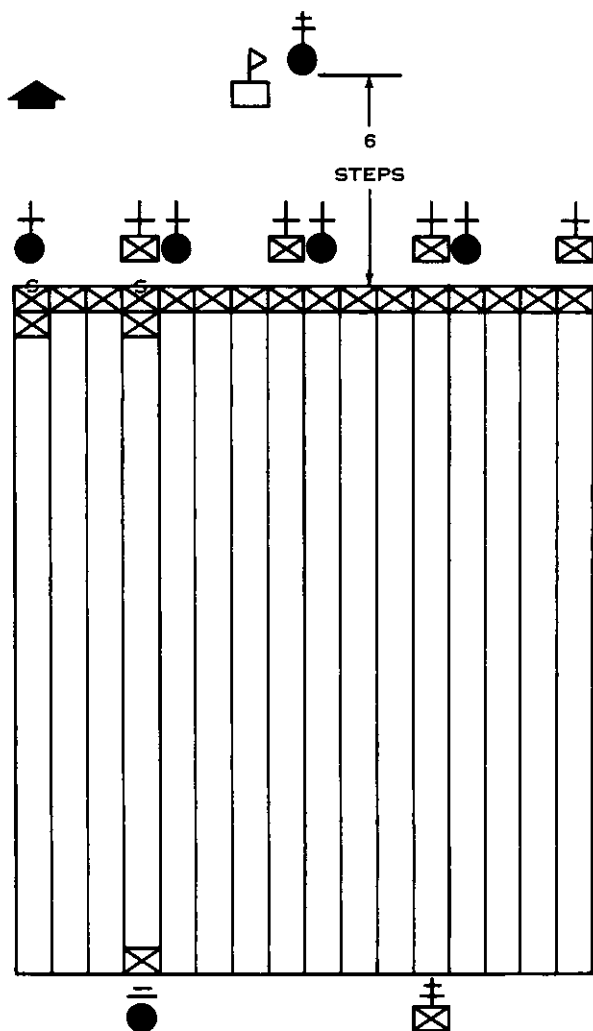
(a) *Company commander*. Six steps to the front and center of the company.

(b) *Guidon bearer*. One step to the rear and two steps to the left of the company commander.



3 Company in column with platoons in line

Figure 45—Continued.



4 Company in mass formation

Figure 45—Continued.

(c) *Platoon leaders*. Normal distance in front of the left file of their platoons.

(d) *Platoon sergeants (platoon guides)*. Normal distance in front of the right file of their platoons.

(e) *Executive officer*. Normal distance in rear of the last man of the right file of the left platoon.

(f) *First sergeant*. Normal distance in rear of the last man of the right file of the second platoon.

d. When the company commander *directs* that the company open and close ranks, aline, stack and take arms, close on the leading platoon, and prepare for inspection, the move-

ments are executed on the command of the platoon leaders, not on the *directives* of the company commander. The commander's *directive* describes the movement to be commanded by the platoon leaders.

e. The right platoon is base platoon for drill purposes.

f. In all company formations, if there are no officers present, the position of the first sergeant becomes that of the company commander, as prescribed in (c) above.

## 92. To Form the Company

a. At the command FALL IN, the company is formed in line of platoons in line with three-step intervals between platoons (1, fig. 45).

b. The company may be formed by the company commander or the first sergeant. When the company is formed by the company commander, platoon leaders insure that their platoons are formed as shown in 1, figure 45. Inspection arms, port arms, order arms, or a report is not required. When the first sergeant forms the company he posts himself nine 30-inch steps in front of the center and facing the line where the front rank of the company is to form, and commands FALL IN.

c. The platoon sergeants take their posts so that the company will be centered on and at the proper distance from the first sergeant. They face their platoons and allow for five 30-inch steps between platoons.

d. The first squad leaders take their posts relative to the platoon sergeant and the platoons form in two or more ranks with normal interval as described in paragraph 83.

e. With armed troops, the first sergeant and platoon sergeants are at sling arms.

f. The platoons are formed and the platoon sergeants receive the report from the squad leaders as described in paragraph 84. Each platoon sergeant faces about after receiving the reports. If necessary the first sergeant repositions himself before taking the report from the platoon sergeants.

g. When all platoon sergeants are facing to the front, the first sergeant commands REPORT. The platoon sergeants report in suc-

cession from right to left, "All present"; or, "All present or accounted for". or, "(so many) men absent." The first sergeant and platoon sergeant turn their heads toward each other when salutes are exchanged.

*h.* All platoons having reported, the first sergeant commands POSTS. The platoon sergeants face about, face to the half left in marching, move to their posts by the most direct route, halt, and face about.

*i.* The first sergeant then faces about, salutes and reports to the company commander, "Sir, all present"; or, "Sir, all present or accounted for"; or, "Sir, (so many) men absent." When his salute is returned, he faces about without command and moves directly to his post, halts facing the rear and faces about. The company commander is three steps from the first sergeant when the report is made, or 12 steps from the first rank of the company.

*j.* As the first sergeant faces about and moves to his post, the executive officer and platoon leaders take their posts. The platoon leaders move around the left flank of their respective platoons.

*k.* Men required to make a report salute, then report and hold the salute until it is returned. The person receiving the report does not return the salute until the report is completed.

*l.* On the command AT CLOSE INTERVAL, FALL IN, the company forms with close interval between men, but the interval between platoons remains at three steps.

*m.* When the platoons are not organized into squads, the platoon sergeant commands INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS immediately after falling in, and calls the roll. Each man answers "Here" as his name is called, and comes to order arms.

### **93. To Dismiss the Company**

When the company is in line with platoons in line (1, fig. 45) at attention, it is dismissed in either of the following ways:

*a.* The company commander commands FIRST SERGEANT. At the command FIRST SERGEANT, the first sergeant moves by the

most direct route to a position three steps in front of the company commander, halts, and salutes. The company commander returns his salute and commands DISMISS THE COMPANY. Salutes are again exchanged. The company commander, executive officer, platoon leaders, and guidon bearer fall out at this time. As the platoon leaders fall out, the platoon sergeants post themselves in front of their platoons. The first sergeant faces about and commands DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS. The platoon sergeants salute. When the first sergeant returns the salute, they face about and dismiss their platoons by the commands INSPECTION, ARMS; PORT, ARMS; DISMISSED.

*b.* The company commander commands DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS. The platoon leaders salute. The company commander returns their salute and he, the executive officer, the first sergeant, and guidon bearer fall out. The platoon leaders then face about and command PLATOON SERGEANT. On the command PLATOON SERGEANT, he posts himself three steps in front of his platoon leader and salutes. The platoon leader returns the salute and gives the command DISMISS THE PLATOON. Salutes are again exchanged and the platoon leader falls out. The platoon sergeant then faces about and dismisses the platoon as described in *a* above.

### **94. To Aline the Company**

*a.* The company is alined on the *directive* DRESS RIGHT from the company commander. When he gives this *directive*, all platoon leaders face about. The right platoon leader commands DRESS RIGHT, DRESS, and alines his platoon as described in paragraph 85*b* and *d.* When the alinement of the first rank of the right platoon has been verified, and the right platoon leader steps off to aline the second rank, the platoon leader to the left of the first platoon commands DRESS RIGHT, DRESS and moves by the most direct route to a position on line with and one step to the left of the left flank man of the first rank; he halts facing the opposite direction from the troops and faces to the left. He then alines the first rank in a manner similar to that of the right platoon leader. He moves from rank to rank by facing to the right in marching and takes

two short steps, halts and faces to the left. He then alines all other ranks in the same manner as the first rank. After alinement of the rear rank, the platoon leader to the left of the first platoon fades to the left in marching, marches to a position three steps in advance of the left flank of his platoon, halts and faces to the right. He then commands **READY, FRONT**, and marches to his original position. He assumes this position by halting with his right foot forward, pivoting to the front on the ball of the right foot and brings the left foot along side the right. All platoon leaders to the left of the base platoon take the same action. Platoon leaders move on their own command of execution.

b. When necessary, platoon guides step off the three-step interval at the command **GUIDE, VERIFY INTERVAL**, given before the command **DRESS RIGHT, DRESS**.

c. The company may be alined while in column on the company commander's command, **COVER**. On this command the first platoon will cover as prescribed in paragraph 82(f). All succeeding platoons will cover on the platoon to their immediate front.

## **95. To Open and Close Ranks**

a. To open ranks, the company commander directs **OPEN RANKS**. All platoon leaders face about on this *directive*. The right platoon leader commands **OPEN RANKS, MARCH**. At the command **MARCH**, the platoon opens ranks as described in paragraph 80. When the alinement of the first rank of the right platoon has been verified, the platoon leader to the left of the right platoon commands **OPEN RANKS, MARCH**, and alines his platoon on the first rank of the right platoon as outlined in paragraph 94. The commands and movements for succeeding platoons are identical to those for the second platoon, but are not executed until the first rank of the platoon to their immediate right has been alined.

b. To close ranks, the company commander directs **CLOSE RANKS**. All platoon leaders face about and command **CLOSE RANKS, MARCH**. The commands are given and executed beginning with the right platoon and proceeding in order to the left until all platoons

have closed ranks, as described in paragraph 86.

c. To stack arms or ground equipment, the company commander directs, **OPEN RANKS AND GROUND EQUIPMENT**, or **OPEN RANKS AND STACK ARMS**.

## **96. To Form a Company in Column from Company in Line, and to Re-Form in Line**

a. With the company in line with platoons in line at the halt, the command to form in column is **RIGHT, FACE**. The platoon leaders repeat the *preparatory command* **RIGHT** and on the *command of execution* **FACE**, face to the right with the unit, then march by the most direct route to their posts at the head of their platoons.

b. The first sergeant takes his post behind the right file man of the second platoon at normal distance. The executive officer takes his post behind the last man in the right file rear platoon. The guidon bearer faces with the unit, then comes to port guidon, and double times to his post at the head of the column.

c. To form in line with the company at the halt in column, the company commander commands, **LEFT, FACE**. The platoon leaders repeat the *preparatory command* and, on the *command of execution*, they face with the unit and, without command, march by the most direct route to their post six steps in front of and centered on their platoons. At the same time the executive officer, first sergeant, and guidon bearer resume their original posts as shown in 1, figure 45.

## **97. Company in Column to Change Direction of March**

a. The commands are **COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT), COLUMN HALF RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH**.

b. When halted, the leading platoon leader repeats the company commander's *preparatory command*. Succeeding platoon leaders give the *supplementary command*, **FORWARD**. On the *command of execution*, **MARCH**, the leading platoon executes the movement as prescribed in paragraph 86, and succeeding platoons exe-



cute the movement on approximately the same ground as the leading platoon on command of the platoon leader.

c. While marching, the movement is executed as described in *b* above, except that succeeding platoon leaders command CONTINUE THE MARCH.

## 98. To Change Interval

a. When in column, the company commander commands CLOSE (EXTEND), MARCH. All platoons execute the movement simultaneously as described in platoon drill (para 87).

b. If executed while marching, the company commander commands FORWARD, MARCH, MARK TIME, MARCH, or, COMPANY HALT, after the prescribed interval has been obtained.

## 99. To Form a Column of Twos and Re-Form

a. To form a column of twos when the company is in column with platoons in column (2, figure 45), the company commander gives the commands noted in paragraph 90 and allows time for the *supplementary commands*. These movements are commanded only from the halt.

b. The leading platoon leader repeats the *preparatory command*. Other platoon leaders command STAND FAST. The leading platoon executes the movement as in platoon drill on the company commander's *command of execution*. Other platoons execute the movement on their platoon leader's commands, given so as to follow with the normal three-step distance between platoons. Platoon leaders take position as described in paragraph 83c.

c. Re-forming is executed simultaneously by all platoons on the company commander's *command of execution* as described in paragraph 90. Platoon leaders then march their platoons to the normal three-step distance without a command from the company commander.

## 100. To Form a Company Mass when in Column

a. With the company in column at the halt, or while marching with close interval between

files, the command is COMPANY MASS LEFT, MARCH.

b. At the *preparatory command* COMPANY MASS LEFT, when the company is at the halt, the leading platoon leader gives the command STAND FAST; the platoon leaders of succeeding platoons command COLUMN HALF LEFT. At the command MARCH, the leading platoon stands fast. The other platoons execute column half left then column half right on command of the platoon leaders, and move to the new position at close interval alongside the leading platoon. Each platoon is halted by its platoon leader so that its leading rank is abreast of the leading rank of the platoons already on line. These movements form the company in mass with close interval between files (4, fig. 45).

c. When the *preparatory command* COMPANY MASS LEFT is given during a march, the leading platoon leader commands CONTINUE THE MARCH. Platoon leaders of succeeding platoons give *supplementary commands* as noted in *b* above. Immediately after the company commander commands MARCH, the leader of the leading platoon commands PLATOON, HALT, and other platoon leaders complete the movement as described in *b* above.

## 101. To Aline a Mass Formation

a. The company commander gives the command AT CLOSE INTERVAL, DRESS RIGHT, DRESS.

b. At the command of execution, DRESS, the platoon leader of the right platoon moves by the most direct route to the right flank and verifies the alinement of as many ranks as necessary to assure proper alinement in a manner similar to verifying the alinement for the platoon (para 85). When he has completed the verification, he returns to his position in the front rank. The company commander then commands READY, FRONT.

## 102. When in Mass Formation, to Change Direction of March

a. The commands are RIGHT (LEFT) TURN, MARCH; FORWARD, MARCH. The right (left) flank man of the rank of guides and platoon leaders is the pivot for this move-

ment. The movement is executed similar to a platoon column movement except that the half step is continued until FORWARD, MARCH is given. This command is given after the entire company has changed direction and has arrived on line.

b. When at a halt, the company commander does not face the company to command RIGHT (LEFT) TURN, MARCH, but gives the command over his right shoulder. When marching, he turns and marches backward to give the command, then turns and marches at the half step in the new direction of march. He turns again and marches backward to command FORWARD, MARCH, then turns and marches forward.

c. In turning to the left, the left file is the base until FORWARD, MARCH is given. Then the dress is right.

### 103. To Form a Column from a Company Mass

a. When at a halt, the command is COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT PLATOON, FORWARD, (COLUMN RIGHT, COLUMN HALF RIGHT) MARCH. The right platoon leader gives a *supplementary command* of FORWARD (COLUMN RIGHT, COLUMN HALF RIGHT) and the other platoon leaders command STAND FAST. At the command MARCH, the right platoon marches in the direction indicated. All other platoons follow in column, executing column half right and column half left on the commands of the platoon leaders.

b. When in march, the command is COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT PLATOON, DOUBLE TIME, MARCH. After the *preparatory command*, the right platoon leader gives a *supplementary command* of DOUBLE TIME and the other platoon leaders command CONTINUE THE MARCH. On the command MARCH, the right platoon marches out in double time. Other platoon leaders command COLUMN HALF RIGHT, DOUBLE TIME, MARCH and COLUMN HALF LEFT, MARCH to bring the succeeding platoons into a column. With armed troops, the company commander commands PORT, ARMS before commanding this movement, unless at sling arms.

### 104. To Form a Column of Platoons in Line and Re-Form

a. When at the halt with the company in column with platoons in column at normal interval, the company commander commands COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE, MARCH. The platoon leader of the leading platoon commands STAND FAST. All other platoon leaders command COLUMN RIGHT. Upon the *command of execution*, all platoons except the first platoon execute a column right and a column left so as to obtain a 12-step interval from the platoon on the left when halted on line with the left platoon.

b. When marching, the leading platoon leader commands CONTINUE THE MARCH after the *preparatory command* and PLATOON, HALT immediately after the *command of execution* MARCH by the company commander. All other platoons execute the commands and movements described in *a* above.

c. After all platoons are in position, the company commander commands LEFT, FACE. Platoon leaders face to the left with their platoons, then take their posts six steps in front of and centered on their platoons. The executive officer and first sergeant move to their positions (3, fig. 45).

d. To re-form the company, the company commander commands RIGHT, FACE; COLUMN OF PLATOONS, LEFT PLATOON, FORWARD, MARCH. On the *preparatory command*, the left platoon leader commands FORWARD and the other platoon leaders command STAND FAST. At the command MARCH, the left platoon marches forward. The remaining platoons follow in column, executing column left and column right on command of the platoon leaders.

### 105. To Correct Distance Between Platoons

a. When the company is marching in column or at the halt, and it is desired to obtain the correct distance between platoons, the commanding officer directs CLOSE ON LEADING PLATOON.

b. On this *directive* the leader of the leading platoon commands his platoon to HALF STEP, MARCH, if in march, or STAND FAST if at the halt.

c. Platoon leaders of succeeding platoons, if in march, command CONTINUE THE MARCH, and then command HALF STEP, MARCH as soon as the correct distance has been obtained. At the halt, succeeding platoon leaders march their platoons forward and halt them at the correct distance.

d. In march, the company commander commands FORWARD, MARCH, or HALT, as soon as all platoons have obtained the correct distance and have taken up the half step. All platoon leaders repeat the *preparatory command*.

## CHAPTER 8

### INSPECTIONS

---

#### 106. General

The company is the basic unit for inspection. Battalion and higher commanders or inspecting officers inspect each company in its own area, or have it march to a designated place at a specified time for inspection. Under special conditions, an entire battalion is formed and inspected in one large formation.

#### 107. Company Inspection—Formation

The company forms either in line of platoons in line (1, fig. 45) or in column of platoons in line (3, fig. 45). It forms in line of platoons in line for inspection of weapons and personal appearance, and in column of platoons in line for inspection of personal field equipment, including weapons, and personal appearance. When transportation is included in the formation, it forms a line 5 yards to the rear or as directed. The drivers remain with their vehicles. Transportation is inspected separately from the foot elements, or as directed.

#### 108. Procedures for Inspecting Weapons and Personal Appearance

a. With a company in line of platoons in line, the company commander *directs*, **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION**. On this *directive*, platoon leaders face about and command **OPEN RANKS, MARCH**, as described in paragraph 89. After verification of the alinement, the platoon leaders march three steps in advance of the right (left) flank of their platoons, halt, face to the left (right), and command **READY, FRONT**. After this movement has been completed, the right platoon leader takes one step forward, halts, faces to the right, and awaits the company commander. All other platoon leaders march forward, halt in front of the guide of their platoon, and execute a left

face, positioning themselves three steps in front of the guide and facing the front; and await the company commander.

b. Ranks having been opened, the company commander commands **AT EASE**. He then inspects the company. During the inspection, officers, noncommissioned officers, and guidon bearers not in ranks come to attention as the company commander approaches. As soon as they have been inspected, they resume the position of at ease. The company commander may direct the executive officer or the first sergeant to join him and take notes during the inspection. When so directed, the executive officer or first sergeant places himself to the left rear of the company commander and accompanies him throughout the inspection. The company commander, beginning at the right of the line, makes a thorough inspection of the arms, equipment, dress, and appearance of the men. As he approaches each platoon, the platoon leader commands **PLATOON, ATTENTION** over his left shoulder and then salutes. The company commander returns the salute, inspects the platoon leader, moves around the left of the platoon leader, and halts in front of the first man to be inspected. At this time, the platoon leader executes about face and places himself at normal interval to the right and one step to the rear of the company commander and accompanies him throughout the inspection of the platoon. The individual at the inspecting officer's left rear is in the same relative position.

c. During the inspection, the inspecting officer inspects the platoon sergeant without taking his weapon. Squads not being inspected are given at ease by the platoon leader when directed by the company commander. The platoon leader calls the next squad to be inspected to attention at the appropriate time.

d. The inspection is made from right to left in front of and from left to right in rear of each rank.

e. The company commander moves from man to man by facing to the right in marching from a halt, taking two short steps so as to position himself in front of the next man to be inspected. He then executes a left face, facing the man.

f. Each man individually executes inspection arms when the company commander is directly in front of and facing him. This enables the company commander to observe the manual of the person being inspected. As the company commander moves to the rear of the rank being inspected, each man, as he is approached, unfastens the snap on his bayonet scabbard, grasps his bayonet scabbard with his left hand, and moves the point of the scabbard slightly forward, extending the elbow to the left so that the company commander may remove the bayonet for inspection. The scabbard is held in this position until the bayonet has been replaced or, if the bayonet is not removed, until the company commander has moved to the position of the next man to be inspected.

g. To inspect a rifle, the company commander takes the rifle with his right hand by grasping it at the forward portion of the stock. As soon as the rifle has been grasped, the individual being inspected releases the rifle and lowers his arms and hands to his sides as in the position of attention. A suggested method of inspection, for the inspecting officer, follows: lower the rifle with your right hand, keeping the barrel to your left, and place the thumb of your left hand in the receiver and glance into the barrel. The thumbnail will reflect enough light for the barrel and chamber inspection. After completing the barrel inspection, grasp the small of the stock with your left hand and raise the rifle to a position in front of your body, forearms horizontal, barrel up and muzzle to your right. Move the rifle to your left, keeping the barrel horizontal, and inspect the upper portion of the rifle, beginning with the front sight and working to the heel of the butt (moving the rifle to the right). To inspect the lower portion

of the rifle, release your left hand from the small of the stock, and regrasp the rifle with your left hand just forward of the receiver on the lower portion of the handguard. Immediately rotate the rifle to the left, grasping it at the small of the stock with your right hand, palm up. The barrel is down and horizontal. Start this portion of the inspection at the toe of the butt and work left to the flash suppressor. As you complete the inspection, release your right hand from the small of the stock and apply downward pressure with your right hand on the sling at the small of the stock. Regrasp the rifle with your right hand at the front portion of the handguard in the original manner. Return the rifle to the individual in the same position from which it was taken. The soldier takes the rifle with his left hand at the balance, immediately closes the bolt, pulls the trigger, and executes order arms.

h. When the company commander inspects the rifle without handling it, each man remains at inspection arms until the officer has moved to a position in front of the next man in line. He then closes the bolt, pulls the trigger, and executes order arms. The left flank man comes to order arms after the inspecting officer moves to his left.

i. Men armed with weapons other than the M14 will execute the appropriate manual of arms. The inspecting officer takes a pistol with his right hand and inspects it in the most convenient manner. He then returns it to the individual being inspected. The inspecting officer grasps the grenade launcher in the most convenient manner. The men resume their original positions after their weapons have been inspected, as outlined above.

j. On completion of the inspection, the platoon leader calls the platoon to attention, takes his post three steps in front of the guide, and exchanges salutes with the company commander. The platoon leader then executes left face and commands, CLOSE RANKS, MARCH. When the ranks have been closed, he marches to a position six steps in front and to the center of his platoon, halts facing in the same direction as the platoon, then faces about, and commands AT EASE. He then executes about face and assumes the at ease position.

k. When the company is inspected by an officer of higher command, the company commander, on the approach of the inspecting officer, commands COMPANY, ATTENTION. He then faces to the front, salutes the inspecting officer, and reports by saying, "Sir, 'A' Company prepared for inspection." The same procedure as outlined above is followed, substituting the words inspecting officer for company commander and company commander for company executive officer and first sergeant.

## **109. Procedure for Inspection of Personnel, Weapons, and Equipment with Shelter Tents**

a. *Formation.* The company forms in column of platoons in line (3, fig. 45).

b. *Directive.* The company commander directs PREPARE FOR INSPECTION OF SHELTER TENTS AND EQUIPMENT. On this *directive* all platoon leaders face about and command, FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS, MARCH.

### *c. To Form for Shelter Tents.*

(1) Shelter tents are pitched in line and in formation only for purposes of instruction and for formal field inspections or the display of equipment. Normally, in bivouac, full use is made of available cover and concealment, and straight lines are avoided.

(2) The platoon is formed in one line for pitching shelter tents. Squad lines may be used when only a small space is available.

(3) When the men are armed with rifles, the rifles are slung before forming for shelter tents.

(4) When the platoon is in line, form it in one rank for pitching shelter tents by commanding FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS, MARCH.

(5) At the command FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS, the radiotelephone operator moves at double time behind the platoon to a position to the right of the platoon guide.

(6) At the command march, the first squad takes two steps forward and halts. All other squads face to the left in marching and continue marching in quick time. Squad leaders move their squads into line, abreast of the

squad or squads already on the line, by giving the commands RIGHT FLANK, MARCH; SQUAD, HALT. Squad leaders may use their squad number preceding the preparatory commands.

(7) At the commands TAKE INTERVAL, MARCH, the men take interval as described in paragraph 72c, except they turn their head and eyes to the right momentarily and align on the first squad leader and then turn them back to the front.

(8) The radiotelephone operator and guide take interval to the right and turn their head and eyes to the left and align on the first squad leader.

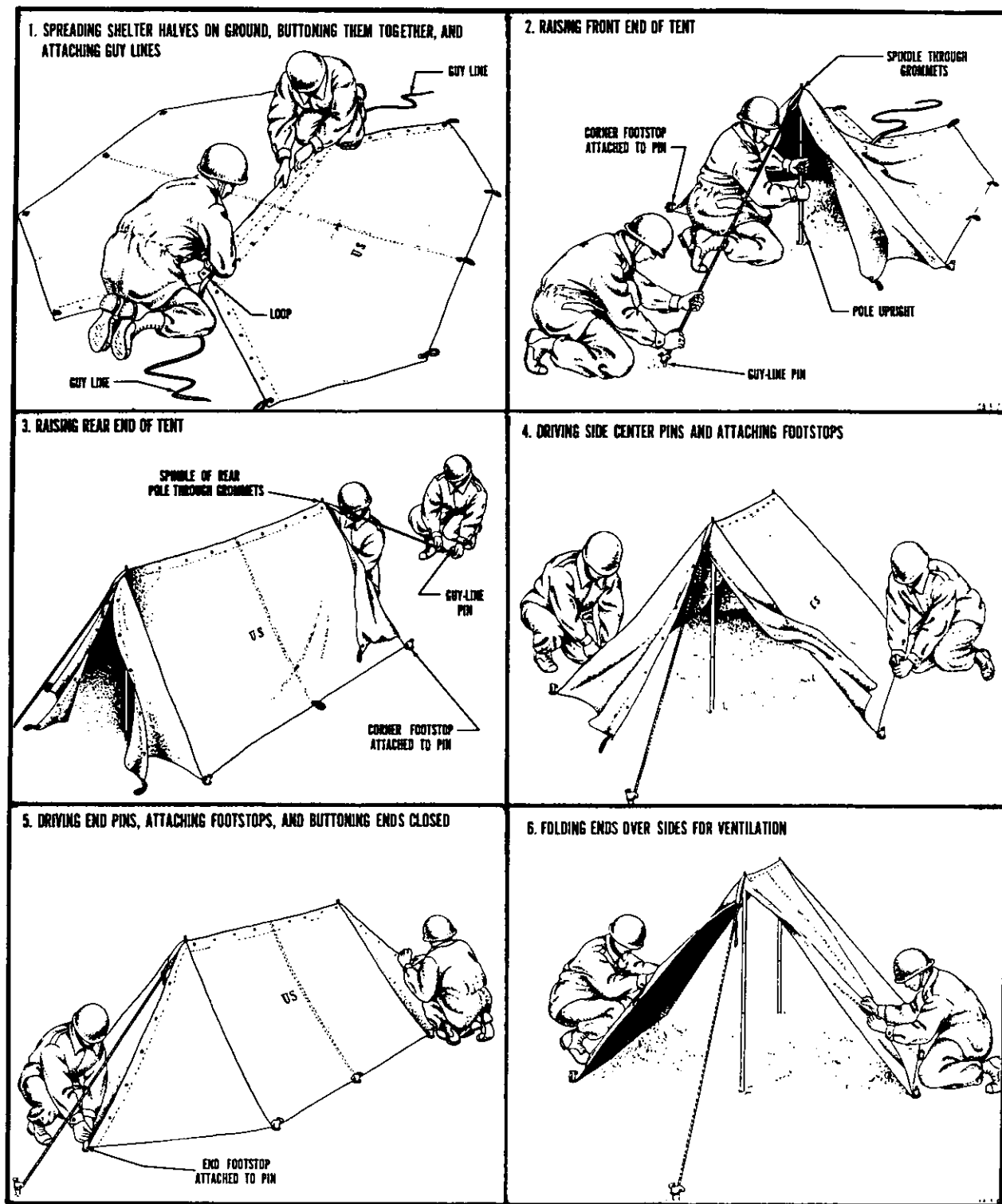
(9) The platoon leader aligns the platoon by facing to the half left in marching from a halt. He marches to a position one step to the right of the radiotelephone operator, halts facing the rear, then executes a right face and aligns the platoon by calling the men by name and having them move forward or back so many inches (Jones forward 3 inches, Smith back 5 inches). When the platoon is aligned he then faces to the right in marching from a halt and marches three steps in advance of the right flank of the platoon, halts and executes a left face and commands COUNT, OFF.

(10) At the command COUNT, OFF, given by the platoon leader, the entire rank executes this movement as described in paragraph 76b. The base for this movement is the squad leader of the first (right) squad. The radiotelephone operator and guide do not count. The radiotelephone operator is regarded as an odd numbered man, the guide as an even numbered man.

(11) The platoon leader commands, MARK FRONT TENT POLE, the odd numbers draw their bayonets with their left hands and thrust them into the ground, beside the outside of their left heel at the instep. The bayonet marks the left edge of the tent pole. Men not equipped with bayonets mark the place with the left edge of their left heel. Odd numbered men pitch tents with the even numbered men to their left (Nos. 1 and 2, Nos. 3 and 4).

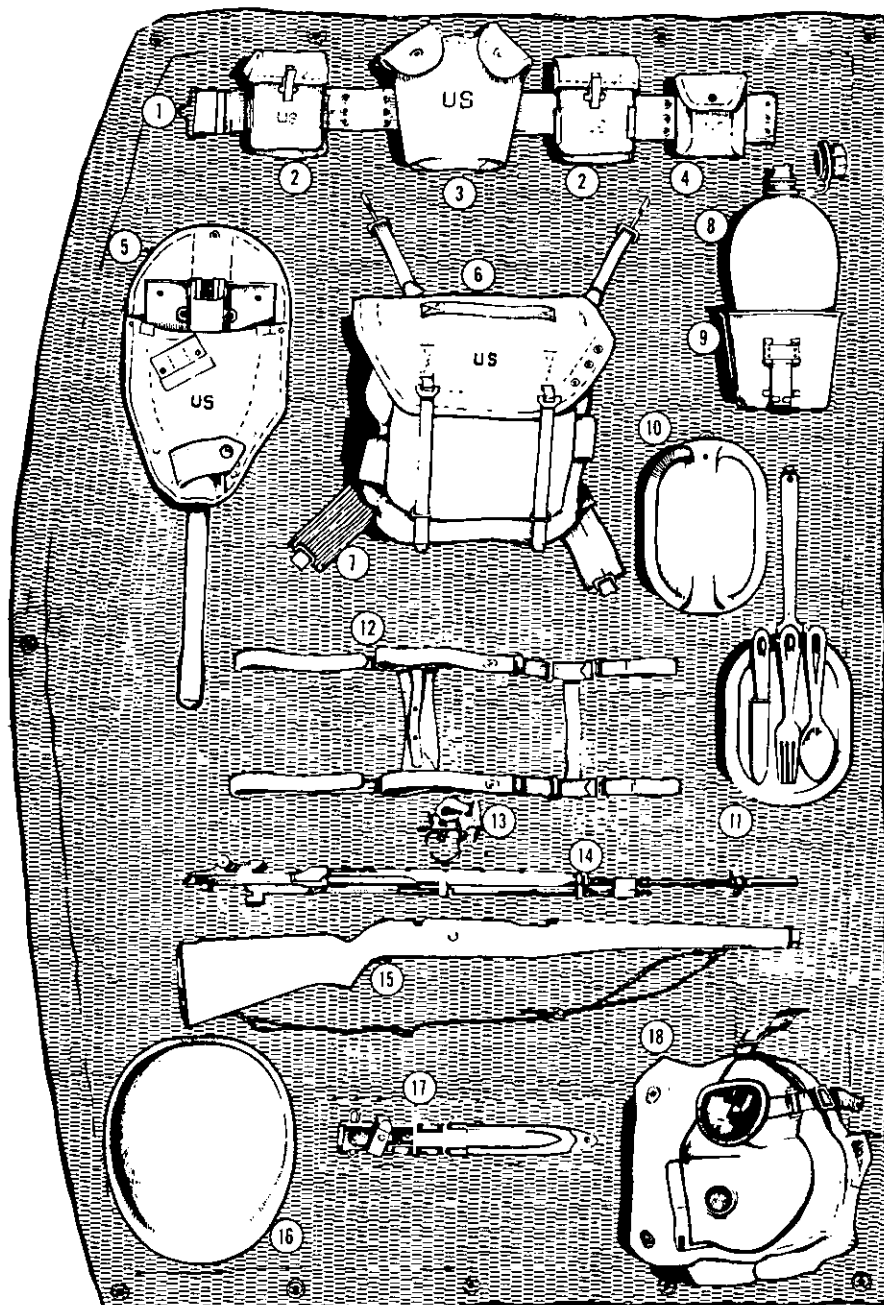
### *d. Unslung Equipment.*

(1) The platoon leader then commands UNSLING EQUIPMENT. Each man then lays

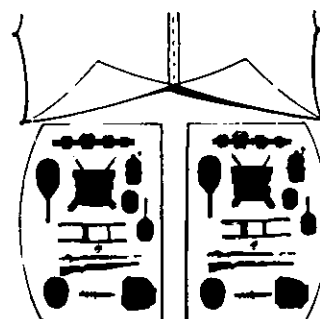


1 Pitching shelter-half tent

Figure 46. Tent pitching and equipment display.



- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ① PISTOL BELT                  | ⑩ MEAT CAN                |
| ② POUCH, S.A. AMMO UNIVERSAL   | ⑪ KNIFE, FORK, SPOON      |
| ③ COVER, CANTEEN               | ⑫ CARRIER, SLEEPING BAG   |
| ④ CASE, FIRST AID PACKET       | ⑬ FIRING MECHANISM        |
| ⑤ CARRIER & ENTRENCHING TOOL   | ⑭ BARREL & RECEIVER GROUP |
| ⑥ FIELD PACK COMBAT            | ⑮ STOCK GROUP             |
| ⑦ SUSPENDERS FIELD PACK COMBAT | ⑯ HELMET WITH LINER       |
| ⑧ CANTEEN                      | ⑰ BAYONET & SCABBARD      |
| ⑨ CUP                          | ⑱ MASK, PROTECTIVE        |



2 Field equipment display

Figure 46—Continued.



his weapon on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, but near the toe of his right foot. He unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, belt to the rear, the pack in front of his toes.

(2) The platoon leader then directs **PITCH TENTS AND DISPLAY EQUIPMENT**. Tents are pitched and equipment is displayed as outlined below.

*e. Pitching Tent.* Two men can pitch a tent in approximately 5 minutes as follows:

(1) Spread two shelter halves on the ground, one with the buttons up and to the center; the other with the buttons down and to the center.

(2) Proceed as shown in 1, figure 46.

(3) The platoon leader will supervise the pitching of tents and display of equipment. The equipment will be displayed as prescribed by the unit commander using 2, figure 46.

(4) The platoon members form to the right or left of their equipment. Odd numbered men to the right, even numbered men to the left, and on line with their front tent pole. The platoon leader then commands the platoon to **ATTENTION**, and commands **AT EASE** and awaits the inspecting officer. The platoon leader insures that all equipment is properly displayed and then takes his post three steps in front of the right flank man facing to the front.

(5) All other platoons take interval, covering the platoon to their front and prepare for inspection as described for the first platoon.

(6) When the first platoon has completed preparation for inspection, the company commander starts inspecting the company as described in paragraph 108b.

(7) When the right rear of the platoon has been inspected, the inspecting officer makes any comments pertaining to the platoon. He then directs the platoon leader to **STRIKE TENTS, SECURE EQUIPMENT, AND ASSEMBLE THE PLATOON**. Salutes are exchanged and the inspecting party marches to the next platoon to be inspected. The platoon leader marches to his post three steps in front of the radiotelephone operator, halts facing

the front, executes left face, he then directs **STRIKE TENTS AND SECURE EQUIPMENT**.

*f. Striking Tents and Securing Equipment.* The platoon members strike tents.

(1) Open enough buttons to make it possible to let the tent poles fall to the ground.

(2) When the tent is flat, remove the pins, unbutton all remaining buttons, disassemble the poles, and untie the guy lines from the loops at each end of the tent.

(3) Each member of the platoon assembles his equipment, leaving the equipment in its position on the ground at his feet, and assumes the position of *at ease*.

*g. Sling Equipment.*

(1) After the equipment is assembled, the platoon leader commands, **SLING EQUIPMENT**. On this command, the men sling their packs, fasten their belts, take their weapons, and assume the position of order arms.

(2) The platoon leader then assembles his platoon by commanding **ASSEMBLE MARCH; RIGHT FACE, COLUMN OF FOURS TO THE RIGHT, MARCH, and LEFT, FACE**, and takes his post at the front and center of the platoon; the radiotelephone operator moves back to his post on the left of the platoon.

(3) In units which have special combat equipment such as machineguns, mortars, and signal or command post equipment, the company commander directs **DISPLAY MACHINEGUN (MORTAR, or other) EQUIPMENT** after the individual inspection has been completed. The gun squads, under the direction of their leaders, break ranks and display their weapons and accessories for inspection as prescribed in the gun drill for weapons. The gun equipment is displayed in the rear of its vehicle. Headquarters personnel display fire control, communication, and any other combat equipment. When no transportation is present, the equipment is displayed three steps from the flank of each squad on the side from which the interval was taken. The rear of the equipment is placed on line with the rear edge of the individual field equipment.

## **110. Procedure for Inspection of Personnel, Weapons, and Equipment Without Shelter Tents**

Procedure for inspecting personal field equipment—

*a.* The company forms in column of platoons in line as described in paragraph 104.

*b.* After the company is formed in column of platoons in line the company commander directs **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION OF EQUIPMENT**. On this directive, all platoon leaders face about and command **OPEN RANKS, MARCH**. All platoon leaders verify the alinement of their platoon from the right flank as described in paragraph 85. After they verify the alinement, the platoon leaders march three steps in advance of their platoon, halt, execute a left face, and command **READY FRONT**. Then the platoon leader commands, **TAKE INTERVAL, MARCH**. On the command of execution, squads take interval as described in paragraph 72c. As soon as the proper interval has been obtained, the platoon leader commands, **UNSLING EQUIPMENT**.

*c.* At the command **UNSLING EQUIPMENT**, each man draws his bayonet with his left hand and sticks it into the ground, outside of and against his left heel at the instep. This marks the line for the rear of his equipment when displayed. The men not armed with the bayonet mark the place with their heel. Each man then lays his weapon on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, butt near the rear of his right foot. He unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, belt to the rear, the pack in front of his toes.

*d.* The platoon leader then commands **DISPLAY EQUIPMENT**. Equipment is displayed in the interval to the left of each man and as prescribed by the unit commander. When arrangement of the equipment is completed each man resumes his original position in ranks and stands at ease.

*e.* As soon as the first platoon has completed taking interval, the other platoons take interval successively, covering the platoon to their front and preparing for inspection as described for the first platoon.

*f.* When the first platoon has completed preparation for inspection, the company commander starts inspecting the company as described in paragraph 108. He then directs the platoon leader to command: **SECURE EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLE THE PLATOON**.

*g.* The platoon leader then commands **SECURE EQUIPMENT**. (Equipment is secured as in paragraph 109f, (3) and *g.*)

## **111. Battalion Inspection**

*a.* For the inspection of individual weapons and appearance the battalion is formed in a column of companies in line. For the display of equipment, it is formed in line with companies in column of platoons in line. Before the inspection, the battalion commander indicates whether heavy weapons and special equipment are to be displayed for inspection or left on their transportation.

*b.* When all companies are in the appropriate formation with all troops dismounted, the battalion commander directs **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION**. At this command, the company commanders face about and prepare their companies as described in paragraph 108, except that the companies are not put at ease.

*c.* Next, the battalion commander commands **REST**. He then inspects his staff and the color guard. When the battalion commander approaches the staff, the officers come to attention without command. When they have been inspected, they accompany the commander. As the commander approaches the color guard, the color bearer commands **COLOR GUARD, ATTENTION**. The color guard does not come to the position of inspection arms as the officers approach, nor does the commander actually inspect the color guard's weapons. The color guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

*d.* The battalion commander, beginning at the head of the column (right of the line), makes an inspection of the arms, dress, and appearance (equipment) of the personnel of the several companies.

*e.* As the commander approaches each company, its commander faces toward his company and commands **COMPANY, ATTENTION**,

faces to the front, salutes, and reports "Sir, the company is formed for inspection." As soon as he has been inspected, he faces about and commands AT EASE. He then accompanies the battalion commander. The inspection proceeds as described for company inspection.

*f.* The battalion commander may direct the company commanders to make the detailed inspection of the arms or other equipment of their companies. He may require officers of his staff to assist in the inspection, especially by checking equipment.

*g.* When a company has been inspected, the battalion commander may direct that it be

dismissed or proceed with other duties.

*h.* When desired, the battalion commander may direct that companies not under inspection stack arms, fall out, and resume their places in time to be inspected.

*i.* When the battalion commander is not the inspecting officer, he prepares his battalion for the inspection and commands REST. On the approach of the inspecting officer, the battalion commander brings the battalion to attention, faces to the front, salutes, and reports. The inspecting officer inspects the battalion commander, who then commands REST. He accompanies the inspecting officer throughout the inspection of his battalion.

## CHAPTER 9

### THE BATTALION AND THE BRIGADE

#### Section I. GENERAL

##### 112. Introduction

a. The formations of the infantry battalion and brigade are prescribed in this chapter. They are recommended as a *guide* for the corresponding units of the other arms and services and for higher units.

b. The brigade does not drill by command of the brigade commander. Its battalions form and march under the battalion commanders as directed by the brigade commander. When practicable, the formation and movement of the subdivisions of the battalion and brigade are made clear to the unit commanders before starting the movement.

c. When in mass formation, the battalion drills by command. Such drill is limited to movements for ceremonies where the units of the battalion execute the manual, facings, and marchings as one body at the command of the battalion commander. These movements are executed by the battalion in a manner similar to that prescribed for the company.

d. The assembly of units in mass formation is directed by the battalion commander. Each company commander moves his company to its place in the most convenient manner.

e. To assume any formation, the battalion or brigade commander announces the desired formation, the flank position for the right (or left) of the battalion or brigade, and the direction in which the line or column is to face. The units approach the line on which the battalion or brigade forms in column or line formations. On completion of the movement the companies are given AT EASE, until another movement is ordered.

f. After a battalion is halted the companies

make no movement to correct their alinement or position unless ordered by the battalion commander.

g. In ceremonies, the units remain at attention after the ceremony has started until at ease is ordered by the next higher commander of troops. Rest should not be given once the proceedings have started.

h. A unit may be presented to its commander or to a reviewing officer. When this is done, the presenting officer faces his unit and

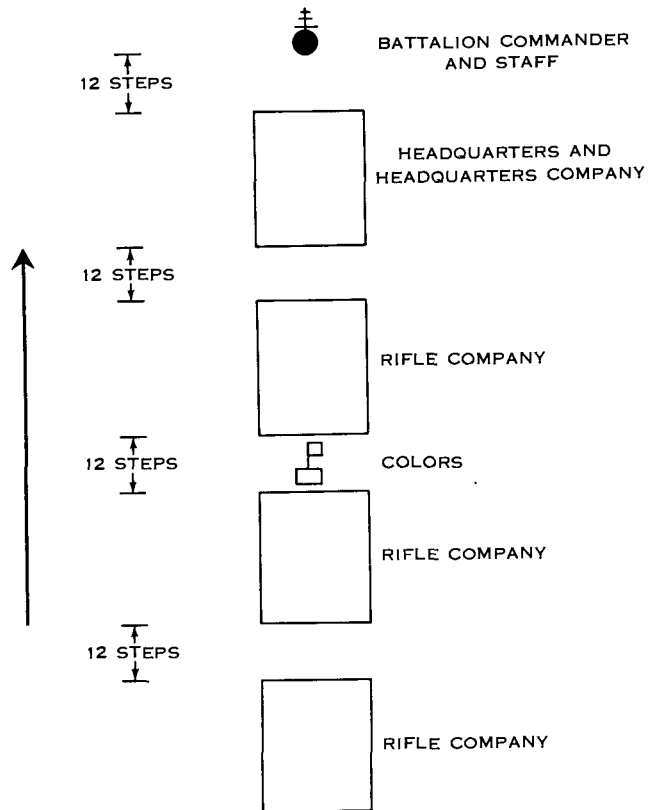


Figure 47. Battalion in column of companies in column.

gives the command PRESENT, ARMS. Then he faces to the front and salutes. The members of the presenting officer's staff salute and complete the salute as he does.

### 113. Commands and Orders

The commands or orders of the battalion or brigade commander are given orally, by pre-arranged signal, or by means of staff officers or messengers who transmit them to the commander concerned.

### 114. Staff

a. The commissioned staff of a commander forms in one rank, two steps to his rear at

normal interval. The enlisted personnel of his staff form two steps to the rear of and covering the officers. When only one staff officer is present, he is posted one step to the right and one and one-half steps to the rear of the commander. Staff members usually are arranged from right to left in order of rank, the senior on the right; however, the commander may have them arranged in any desired order.

b. When necessary to reduce the front of the staff, as in marching, it may be formed in as many ranks as necessary, maintaining normal distance between ranks, following the commander. The staff marches under the direction of the senior staff officer.

## Section II. THE BATTALION

### 115. Formations

a. The battalion forms in column (fig. 47), in line with companies in line (fig. 48), in line with companies in mass (fig. 49), in mass

(fig. 50), or for inspections, in line of companies, each company being formed in column of platoons in line (3, fig. 45).

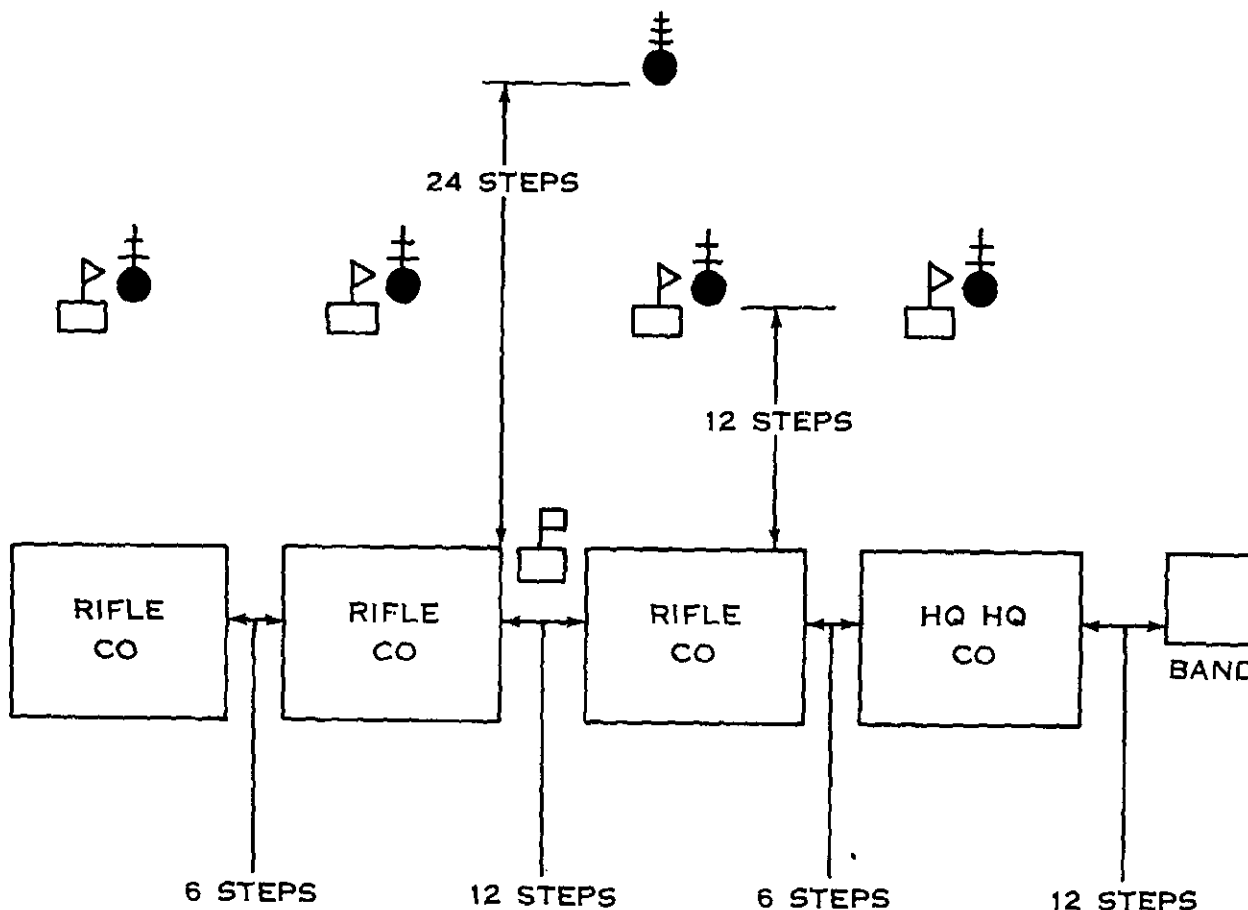


Figure 48. Battalion in line of companies in line.



the direction the company will face, the hour of forming, the location of the head of the column and the order in column of the battalion headquarters company, attached units, and trains. At the appointed time, the company commanders form their units as prescribed. They place their units in column and report their arrival in place to the battalion commander or his adjutant (fig. 47).

### **117. To Form in Line with Companies in Line (for Ceremonies)**

*a.* Before the ceremonies, the adjutant sees that the battalion position on the parade ground is marked with as many flags and markings as are needed. One flag is placed on each flank of the line on which the battalion is to form. The adjutant takes his initial post for the ceremony nine steps to the right of the right flank marker facing down the line.

*b.* When a band is to participate in the ceremonies, the adjutant prearranges a signal or a specific time for adjutant's call to be sounded. The left flank man of the band is 12 steps to the right of the right flank marker as shown in figure 48, and 3 steps to the right of the adjutant.

*c.* Companies are marched in column of threes (fours), from the left flank of the battalion position so as to arrive successively at a position parallel to and in rear of the line. The command of execution for their movement is so timed that they will step off at the first note of the music following adjutant's call. The line of march is far enough from the line on which the battalion is to form to permit alinement of the guides of the right company by the adjutant. As each company arrives in rear of its position, it is halted and faced to the left. The company commander then commands **GUIDES ON LINE**. At this command, the guides of each platoon double time to their positions on the line of flags (final line), and execute right face in order to face the adjutant. The adjutant alines the guides of the right company; the guides of the other companies cover the guides already on line. As soon as the guides have established themselves on the line, the company is moved to the line of guides. The company commander halts the company so the right man of the front rank

halts with his chest approximately 6 inches from the guide's right arm. If the company is at right shoulder arms, the company commander gives **ORDER, ARMS**. The company is then alined as prescribed in company drill. On the command **DRESS RIGHT, DRESS**, the right man of the front rank moves forward until his chest touches the guide's right arm.

*d.* When the units have reached their positions on the line, the band stops playing. The adjutant then moves by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and the battalion commander. He halts and faces the battalion.

*e.* When all units are dressed, the adjutant commands **GUIDES, POST**. At this command, the guides move to their positions in ranks by taking one step forward, executing a face to the right while marching, advancing the right foot one step and bringing the left foot alongside the right foot. They then face about.

*f.* The adjutant then commands **PRESENT, ARMS**, faces the battalion commander, salutes, and reports, "Sir, the battalion is formed."

*g.* The battalion commander returns the salute and commands **POST**. The adjutant passes to the battalion commander's right and takes his post on line with the staff. The battalion commander then commands **ORDER, ARMS**. He may then command several movements in the manual of arms.

*h.* The commander of troops may direct a ready line be established in rear of the final line. These lines are approximately 30 steps apart. This permits the commanders to form their units on the ready line in the same formation as on the final line, prior to adjutant's call. When adjutant's call has been sounded, first the guides and then the troops are moved to the final line on the commands of their commanders from right to left. The ready line may be used for any formation.

### **118. To Form in Line with Companies in Mass Formation (for Ceremonies)**

The procedure is the same as in forming the line, except that—

*a.* The companies are marched from either

flank of the battalion position in columns of threes (fours) along a line in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company successively executes column left (right). As soon as this column movement has been initiated, the company commander commands **GUIDE (OF LEADING PLATOON) ON LINE**. At this command the guide of the leading platoon moves out at double time to the line marked by the flags. He halts there, and faces the adjutant. The guide marks the right of the company. The company commander then commands **COMPANY MASS LEFT, MARCH**. The command is timed so that the leading platoon halts short of, but close to, the line of guides. The remaining platoons successively move into position at the designated interval on the left of the leading platoon (fig. 49).

b. At the command **GUIDES, POST**, the guides move to their positions in ranks by executing a face to the left in marching.

### 119. To Form the Battalion in Mass

The procedure is the same as in forming in line except that companies are marched from either flank of the battalion position in column of threes (fours) at close interval with-

out distance between platoons. Officers and a guide comprise the front rank (fig. 50). The line of march is in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company executes column left (right). As soon as this column movement has begun, the company commander commands **GUIDE ON LINE**. The guide moves out, the company is halted, and the guides take their posts as described previously.

### 120. To Dismiss the Battalion

a. The battalion commander commands **DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES**.

b. The company commanders salute the battalion commander, march their companies to the place of dismissal, and dismiss them as described previously.

c. After the companies march off, the battalion commander dismisses his staff.

d. In case the battalion commander desires to release the companies to their commanders, without prescribing that the companies be dismissed promptly, he commands **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR COMPANIES**. The company commanders salute the battalion commander and take charge of their companies.

## Section III. THE BRIGADE

### 121. Formations

a. The brigade forms in column with the battalions in column, in column with the battalions in mass, in line with the battalions in mass, or in line with the battalions in line of company masses as shown in figures 51 and 52.

b. The separate companies of the brigade usually are grouped as a provisional battalion. When not grouped as a provisional battalion, these units form on the left of the brigade when it is in line or at the rear when it is in column (figs. 51 and 52).

### 122. To Form the Brigade

a. The brigade commander announces—

(1) The formation (with or without vehicles).

(2) The place and time of the formation.

(3) The direction the units will face.

(4) The color battalion.

(5) The uniform and equipment of troops.

(6) The reviewing officer.

(7) The commander of troops.

(8) The provisional battalion commander.

(9) The frontage and depth of troops for uniformity.

(10) The order in which units will be formed on the ready and final lines.

(11) Ceremonies.

b. Before forming the brigade, the brigade commander has the positions marked on which the larger (battalion) elements are to form.



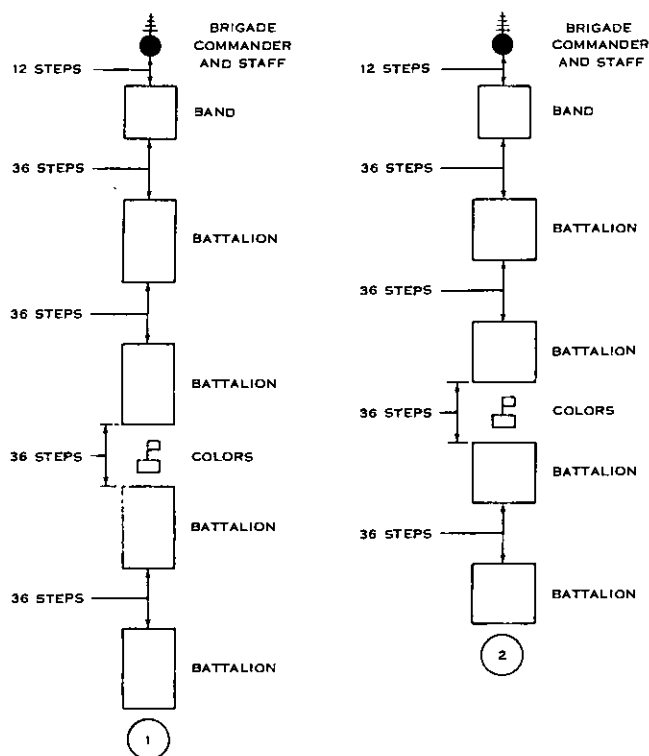


Figure 51. Brigade in column.

c. On arrival at their designated places on the ready line, the battalions and separate companies of the brigade are given rest.

d. For ceremonies, the procedure for the formation of a battalion is followed as described previously except that the battalion adjutants take their posts at adjutant's call on the final line on which the brigade is to form. They face down the line from their positions, which are six steps from the point where the right flanks of their respective battalions will form. When all units of their battalions are on line, they move to their posts by the most direct route.

e. The brigade adjutant acts for the brigade

in a manner similar to that prescribed for the battalion adjutant previously, except that his post on the final line is three steps to the right of the right battalion adjutant and three steps to the left of the left flank man in the band.

f. When a commander or adjutant gives a *directive* which is to be executed by troops under the command of another commander (when a brigade adjutant causes the troops to be brought to attention), he gives the command in a conversational tone of voice, but loud enough to be heard distinctly by the subordinate commanders. The command is not separated into a *preparatory command* and a *command of execution*, nor does he give the command so as to cause it to be executed prematurely.

### 123. To Dismiss the Brigade

To dismiss the brigade, the commander orders the commanders of the battalions and separate companies of the brigade to dismiss their units. The procedure is the same as described previously.

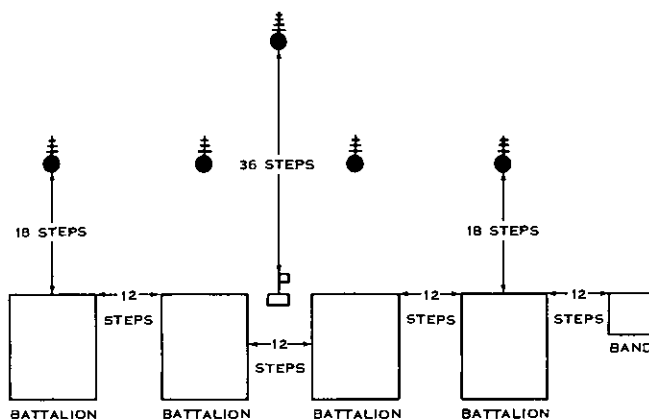


Figure 52. Brigade in line with battalions in mass formation.

## CHAPTER 10

### CEREMONIES

#### Section I. REVIEWS

##### 124. General

a. A review is a military ceremony held—

- (1) In honor of a visiting higher commander, official, or dignitary.
- (2) For presenting decorations, awards or honors to members or units of a command.
- (3) To allow a higher commander, official, or dignitary to observe the state of training in a command.

b. A review may consist of the following six parts:

- (1) Formation of troops.
- (2) Presentation and honors.
- (3) Retreat (if scheduled).
- (4) Inspection (passing around the troops).
- (5) Decoration and awards (if scheduled).

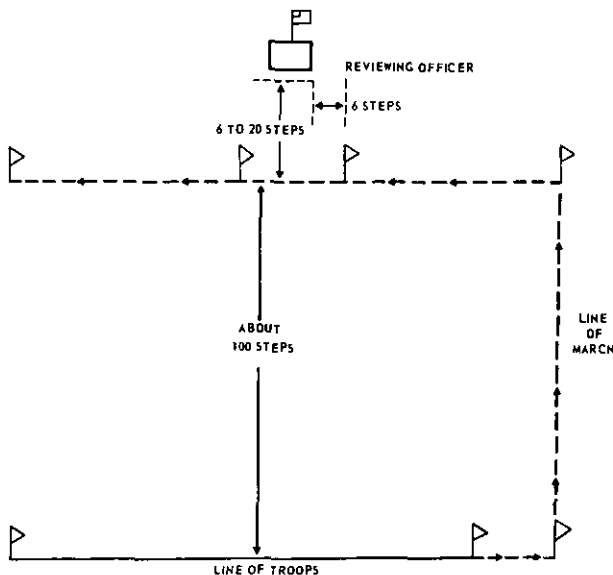


Figure 53. Preparation for review.

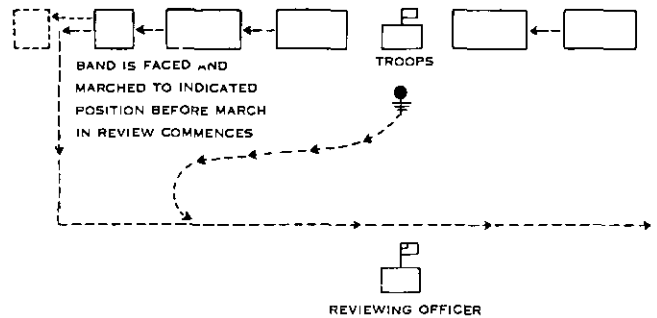


Figure 54. Battalion review, companies in line, marched in review in column of platoons in column.

##### (6) March in review.

c. A commander normally designates an officer of his command as commander of troops so that the commander may review his own troops or accompany a visitor reviewing the troops. The commander of troops is responsible for the preparation and organization of his troops for the review. Whenever the National Anthem or To The Color is played as part of a ceremonial formation, the commander of troops faces the reviewing party and salutes.

d. The line on which the troops are to be formed and the route of march are marked or designated. Flags or appropriate markings are used to mark the post of the reviewing officer, and are also placed six steps to the left of the reviewing officer to designate the point where EYES, RIGHT is commanded and executed, and are placed far enough to the right of the reviewing officer to designate the point where the command READY, FRONT is given (fig. 53). These flags may be placed from six to twenty steps in advance of the position of the reviewing officer, being contingent on the size of the formation and the discretion of the commander.

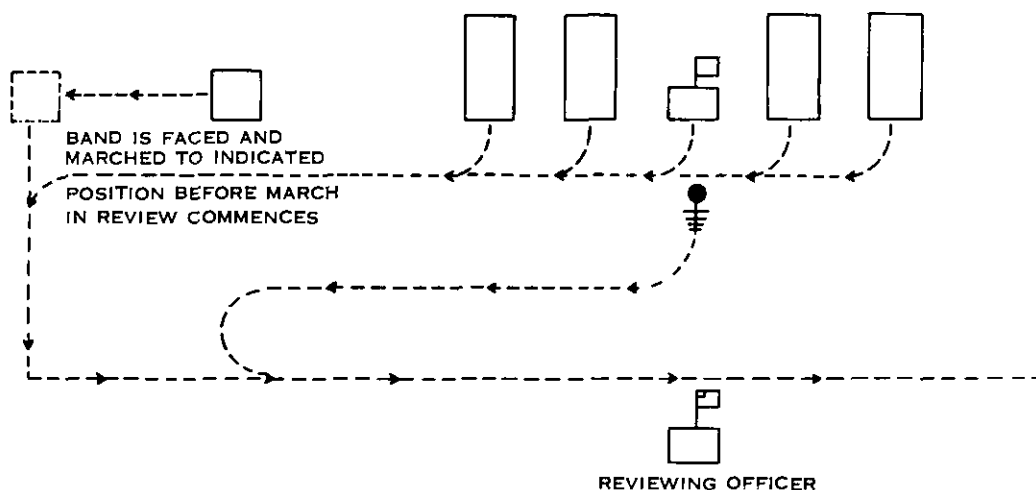


Figure 55. Brigade review, battalions in mass, marched in review of column of battalions in mass.

e. Any of the formations described for the battalion or brigade may be used. The formation used is limited by the space available and the formation in which the units pass in review. The formation may be modified to meet the local situation. Each unit should be sized uniformly with the tallest men in front and on the right.

## 125. Formation of Troops

a. Battalions and brigades are formed as shown in figures 54 and 55. In reviews in which two or more arms (infantry, artillery) are present, the troops are arranged as ordered by the commander of troops. As a guide, units should be arranged from right to left in line with the slowest unit on the right (usually infantry) and progress to the most rapidly moving unit on the left.

b. The troops move to their position in the most convenient manner. For large reviews the commander of troops prescribes the routes and time of arrival. When the frontages of the units have been measured and marked, the units may arrive in any convenient order and occupy their place in line. When this is not done the units form successively from right to left along the line. The first method is preferable in large mixed commands.

c. When commanders are mounted in vehicles, they dismount and take their posts as prescribed or as directed. They remain at their posts from the time their units arrive on the line until the command PASS IN REVIEW.

d. In motorized or mechanized units or elements, occupants of vehicles usually are required to form dismounted in a formation corresponding to that of the other units in review. At the command PASS IN REVIEW, they break formation, move at double time, and mount their vehicles.

e. An adjutant, designated by the commander of troops, forms the troops in a manner similar to that described for a battalion or brigade, as described previously. After all units are formed and alined, the adjutant brings the units to attention (if at rest or at ease), and then commands PRESENT, ARMS, for a battalion size review, or for larger reviews, he directs, PRESENT, ARMS. When the troops have come to present arms, he faces the commander of troops, salutes, and reports, "Sir, the battalion (brigade) is formed."

f. When the formation consists of one brigade (two or more battalions), at the direction of the adjutant, the battalion commanders and special unit commanders bring their units to present arms, starting with the center or right center battalion and continuing simultaneously toward both flanks.

g. In formations consisting of two or more brigades, the brigade commanders repeat the directive of adjutant, starting with the center brigade and continuing simultaneously toward both flanks. The battalion and special unit commanders within their respective brigade then bring their units to present arms as in f above.

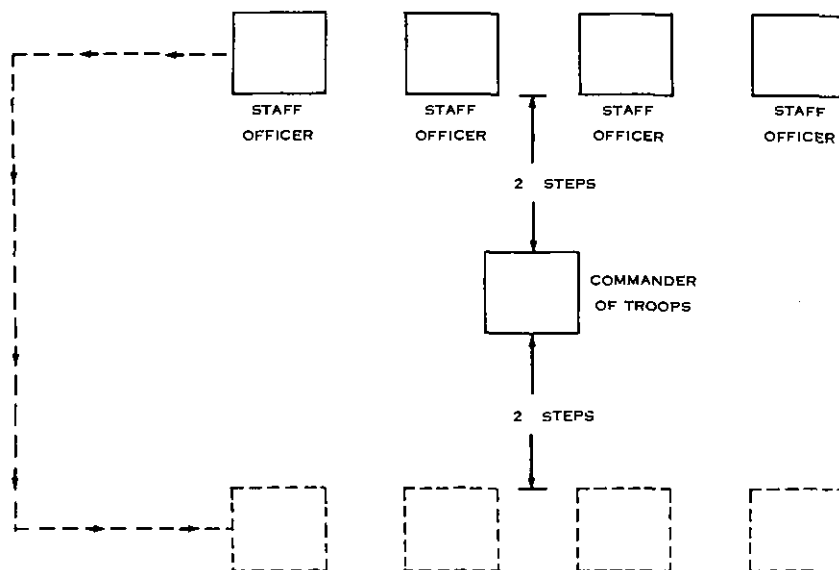


Figure 56. Movement of the staff to the rear of the commander of troops.

h. Units and individuals not armed with rifles execute the hand salute at the command PRESENT, ARMS, and end the salute at the command, ORDER, ARMS. They remain at attention during the execution of the manual of arms.

i. The commander of troops and his staff take their position midway between the leading rank of the unit commanders and the post of the reviewing officer, facing the line of troops. The commander of troops returns the salute of the adjutant and orders him to take his post. (The members of the staff do not salute with the commander of troops when the troops are presented to him.) The commander of troops for units larger than battalions, *directs* order arms in a conversational tone making sure that he does not give the *directive* as a drill command. When all units have come to order arms, the members of his staff march to their positions to his rear at the commands of the senior staff officer (fig. 56).

j. When the staff has reversed its position, the commander of troops faces the reviewing stand and, if the reviewing officer has not taken his post, faces about and *directs* at ease. If the reviewing officer has taken his post, he faces about and *directs* present arms, faces the reviewing officer, and commands STAFF, PRESENT, ARMS. He and his staff present arms

together. The ceremony then proceeds as outlined in paragraph 127.

## 126. Reviewing Party

a. When the formation has been completed, the reviewing officer with his staff moves to his position opposite the center of the line of troops to receive the review (fig. 57).

b. The local commander (if not acting as commander of troops), distinguished persons invited to accompany the reviewing officer but not themselves receiving the review, staffs, and enlisted personnel take positions facing the troops as shown in figure 57. When an organization is reviewed before an inspecting officer or other person junior in rank to the local commander, the junior takes his position to the left of the local commander, unless the commander desires to accede the place of honor to the reviewing officer.

c. An officer from the local staff is designated to escort distinguished persons and to show them their positions. When a civilian receives the review, he takes position on the right of the local commander; if necessary, timely explanation of the ceremony is made to him.

d. As the reviewing officer moves to his position, the commander of troops faces his troops and brings them to attention.

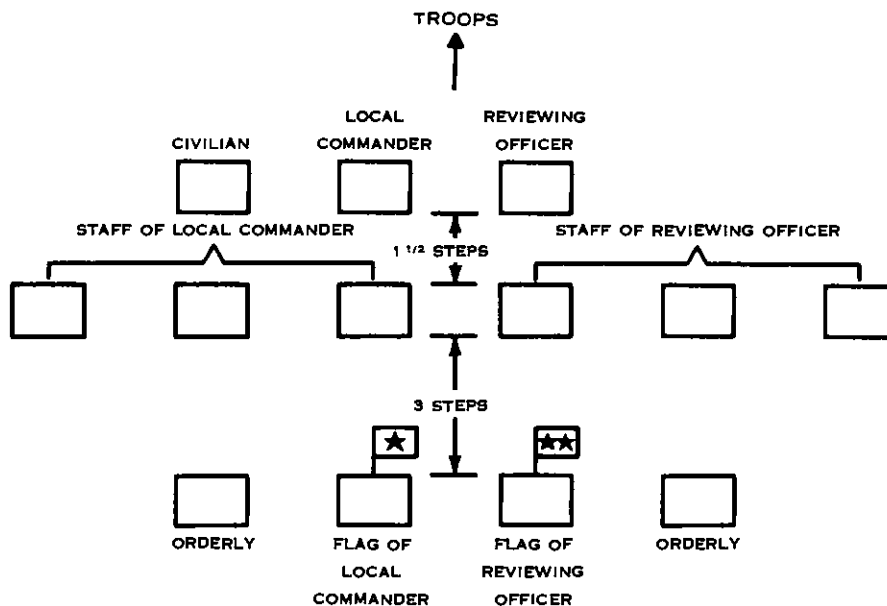


Figure 57. Reviewing party.

## 127. Presentation and Honors

a. The commander of troops brings the troops to present arms as soon as the reviewing officer has taken his post. When the grade of the reviewing officer entitles him to honors, each brigade or separate battalion color salutes at the command PRESENT, ARMS, given by the commander of the battalion with which the colors are posted or by the commander of the battalion to the right of the colors when they are not posted with a battalion. The national color renders no salute.

b. Honors are given the reviewing officer, when his grade so entitles him, as prescribed in AR 600-25. The band (a designated band near the center of the command, if more than one band is present) or field music sounds the honors when the commander of troops faces the reviewing officer and salutes with his staff. The reviewing officer, the members of his staff, and all military spectators salute at the first note of the music and hold the salute until the music and gun salute are completed. When the honors are completed, the commander of troops and his staff end their salute. He then faces about and brings the troops to order arms. If the National Anthem was played as part of the honors, or if the ceremony includes decorations and awards, he orders at ease. The ceremony then proceeds

with retreat (if scheduled), and march in review. If the National Anthem was not played as part of the honors, and decorations and awards are not scheduled, the commander of troops then faces the reviewing officer and, after a slight pause, he again faces the troops and *directs* present arms. He then faces the reviewing officer and commands STAFF, PRESENT, ARMS. He and his staff salute, and the band plays the National Anthem. The reviewing officer and his staff, and all military spectators salute at the first note of the music. The commander of troops commands STAFF, ORDER, ARMS, without facing about. He then faces about and brings the troops to order arms and at ease. The ceremony then proceeds as scheduled. The inspection and decorations and awards may be omitted from the ceremony.

c. If the reviewing officer is not entitled to honors, the presentation proceeds as above except that the brigade colors do not salute persons of lower rank than the brigade commander. As soon as the reviewing officer returns the salute of the commander of troops, the command is brought to order arms and at ease and the inspection follows. No music is played as part of honors, but if decorations and awards are not scheduled the national anthem is played after the command has been presented to the reviewing officer.

d. When artillery is present in the review

and when the commander of troops deems it practicable, a salute is fired in the manner prescribed in AR 600-25. The first gun is fired with the first note of the music. The detachment firing the salute rejoins its unit after the salute is fired. Use of the gun salute is limited to special ceremonial occasions when it is desired to stage an especially impressive ceremony.

## 128. Inspection

a. On completion of the presentation and honors, the reviewing officer and his party move forward and halt six steps in front of the post of the commander of troops. The two exchange salutes. Their staffs do not salute. The commander of troops then guides the reviewing party around the formation, beginning with the unit on the right of the line, passing in front of the line and then around the rear of the formation. In division-size reviews, the reviewing party passes between the line of brigade commander and staffs and the line of battalion commanders and staffs. For brigade-size reviews, the reviewing party passes between the line of battalion commanders and company commanders. In reviews for a battalion or for units of similar size, the inspecting officer passes between the front rank of troops and the line of company commanders. The commander of troops and the local commander march to the right of the reviewing officer. They are followed by the staffs of the commander of troops, of the local commander (if present), and of the reviewing officer. Each staff follows its own commander in file. If the commander of troops directs his staff not to accompany him, the senior staff officer gives the staff at ease after the reviewing party has departed and commands attention prior to the return of the reviewing party.

b. The reviewing officer may direct that his staff, flag, and orderlies remain at the post of the reviewing officer.

c. When the inspection is made in motor vehicles, the reviewing party enters the vehicles, which drive up to the post of the reviewing officer after completion of the honors. In each vehicle, one seat on the right side (the side away from the troops during inspection) is left vacant. The vehicles move to the post of the commander of troops and

stop. The commander of troops exchanges salutes with the reviewing officer, enters the reviewing officer's vehicle, and occupies the vacant seat. His staff officers occupy the vacant seats in the remaining vehicles. The orderlies and flag bearer remain at their posts. The vehicles proceed on the route of inspection as already described.

*Note.* The reviewing officer may use a helicopter instead of a ground vehicle, in which case the review route is relatively the same as prescribed for ground vehicles.

d. As the reviewing party approaches, each company commander or battalion commander (when the battalion is in mass formation) commands attention and eyes right. The guidon bearer executes present guidon. The company commanders and platoon leaders execute the hand salute. Each soldier turns his head and eyes to the right. As soon as the reviewing officer comes into their line of vision, they follow him with their eyes, turning their heads, until he reaches their front. At this point, the head and eyes of each man remain fixed to the front. The company commander commands ORDER, ARMS, so that he and the platoon leaders terminate their salutes and the guidon bearer comes to order guidon when the heads and eyes of the troops reach the front. When the troops are standing at ease, each company or massed unit is brought to attention as the reviewing party approaches. They remain at attention during the remainder of the inspection, except that for division-size reviews each unit may be given at ease after the reviewing party has passed by and again brought to attention as the reviewing party approaches the rear of the unit.

e. The band of an organization plays until the inspection by the reviewing officer is completed.

f. The reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the color only when passing in front of it.

g. The reviewing officer makes such general inspection of the command as he may desire while passing around the troops. A detailed inspection is not part of a review ceremony.

h. The commander of troops halts and salutes after passing around the line and arriving at the right of the band, unless he is in a vehicle. The reviewing officer returns the salute and proceeds with his staff to his post.

The commander of troops and his staff move directly to their posts facing the reviewing officer. When the inspecting party is in motor vehicles, a stop is made at the post of the commander of troops, where the commander of troops dismounts, exchanges salutes with the reviewing officer, and returns to his post. The members of his staff dismount and return to their posts at the same time. The vehicles then proceed to the post of the reviewing officer, where the members of the reviewing party dismount and return to their posts.

## **129. Decorations and Awards**

a. A review ordinarily is held on occasions of the presentation of decorations or of the decoration of the colors.

b. After the reviewing officer has inspected the troops and resumed his post, the commander of troops, from his own post, commands or signals by prearranged signal: PERSONS TO BE DECORATED AND COLORS, CENTER, MARCH. At the command MARCH persons to be decorated and all colors move by the most direct route and take their posts as follows:

(1) The persons to be decorated take positions as a single rank in the front and center of the command and 10 steps in front of the line of company commanders. They line up according to the rank of the decorations to be conferred, highest ranking decoration on the right. Those receiving similar decorations take position according to their military rank within each decoration group.

(2) The colors to be decorated are placed in a single rank five steps in front of the center of the line of persons to be decorated. They are alined in groups according to the rank of decorations to be bestowed, the highest ranking decorations on the right.

(3) All other colors with the color guards are alined in a single rank five steps back of the center of the persons to be decorated. They take the same relative positions as their locations in the command.

(4) The staff of the commander of troops (under command of the senior staff officer) executes right face and moves to the right far enough to provide clearance for the colors and persons to be decorated. The staff then halts and executes left face.

(5) The commander of troops takes his

post five steps in front of the center of the leading element. When the staff has cleared the necessary line of march, the commander of troops commands FORWARD, MARCH. At the command MARCH, the commander of troops, the persons to be decorated, and the colors advance, the band playing. The commander of troops marches directly toward the reviewing officer. The guide is center in all ranks. When the commander of troops has reached a point six steps from the reviewing officer, he halts the group with the command DETACHMENT, HALT. He then salutes the reviewing officer and reports, "Sir, the persons (colors) to be decorated are present." The reviewing officer returns the salute and directs that the command be presented.

(6) The commander of troops passes around the right flank of the persons or colors to be decorated and proceeds directly to his post, two steps in front of and centered on his staff. He brings the troops to present arms, faces about, and salutes, his staff saluting with him. If the National Anthem has not been played as part of the honors, the band (field music) then plays the National Anthem (or To The Color). On completion of the music, or after a slight pause if the National Anthem is not played, the commander of troops and his staff terminate their salute, and the commander of troops brings the troops to order arms and has them stand at ease. The persons to be decorated salute at the first note of the National Anthem (or To The Color) and terminate the salute at the last note.

(7) The reviewing officer, accompanied by his staff or certain members of his staff, advances by the most direct route to the right front of the line of persons or colors to be decorated. A staff officer reads the individual citations when the reviewing officer approaches each individual. The staff officer pauses between reading citations to permit the reviewing officer to pin the medal on the left breast pocket of the individual or fasten the streamer on the staff of the guidon or colors. As the viewing officer approaches the guidon to be decorated, the guidon bearer executes present arms so the reviewing officer may fasten the streamer. He executes order guidon after the guidon has been decorated. Color bearers lower the colors to be decorated far enough for

the reviewing officer to fasten the streamer. The color bearer gathers the colors around the staff so they cannot touch the ground. He resumes the carry after the colors have been decorated. When the last award has been presented the formation is called to attention by the commander of troops. Then the reviewing party returns to its position in the reviewing stand. The commander of troops commands DETACHMENT, POST, MARCH. At this time, the senior person decorated moves the persons decorated to a position in line with and six steps to the left of the reviewing party. The colors reverse march (para 141) and return to their posts by the most direct route. After the colors have passed, the commander of troops marches his staff back to their original position. At this time the reviewing officer directs "PASS IN REVIEW."

### 130. March in Review

a. When the reviewing party is again in place after the inspection of the troops, or when the colors and staff have resumed their posts, the commander of troops commands PASS IN REVIEW.

b. At the command PASS IN REVIEW, the band is faced to the right and marches to a position that enables it to move straight out on the route of march without changing direction. The commander of the unit next to the band gives the necessary commands to put the troops in march in the formation designated for the review. The band starts to play and marches forward at the command of execution, given by the commander of the unit next to the band. Other units move out in succession and follow in column at the prescribed distance.

c. The band and each unit change direction at the points indicated in figure 55. When the units are in mass formation, the commander of each formation (company or battalion) in turn commands LEFT TURN, MARCH; FORWARD, MARCH, at each change of direction.

d. The brigade and battalion commanders, other than the commander of troops, move into position in the column at the head of their troops just before the turn on the reviewing line.

e. The commander of troops and his staff take position 12 steps in front of the band

after the band has turned on the reviewing line.

f. The commander of troops and the brigade and battalion commanders salute when they arrive six steps from the front of the reviewing officer. They end the salute when their staffs have passed six steps beyond the front of the reviewing officer. Members of their staffs salute with them. The reviewing officer returns their salute. Other members of the reviewing party do not salute.

g. After saluting the reviewing officer, the commander of troops turns out of the column and takes his post on the right side of the reviewing officer. The members of his staff accompany him and take their posts on the corresponding side of the reviewing officer's staff. When the rear element of his command has passed, the commander of troops faces the reviewing officer and salutes. The reviewing officer faces to the right and returns the salute. Then, accompanied by his staff, the commander of troops rejoins the command or dismisses his staff.

h. When the person reviewing the command is not mounted in a vehicle, the commander of troops and his staff (if mounted), turn out of the column after passing the reviewing stand and dismount preparatory to taking post. In such cases, the commander of troops salutes the reviewing person before remounting and before rejoining his command.

i. When the commander of troops and his staff are in vehicles, the vehicles are parked on the side of the reviewing officer toward the direction of march and behind the lines occupied by the reviewing officer, the commander of troops, and their staffs.

j. When the reviewing officer is entitled to honors (AR 600-25) and the review is held before retreat, the drum major of the band, when six steps from the reviewing officer, causes the band to interrupt the march while the field music (or trumpet section of the band) renders the prescribed ruffles and flourishes only. The bandmaster and drum major execute and end their salutes at the point prescribed for the other commanders. The reviewing officer returns the salute. Other members of the reviewing party and spectators do not respond to the salute rendered by the band to the reviewing officer as it passes him. Each



band, when it has passed the reviewing officer, executes left turn three times to take a position in front of and facing the reviewing officer and at least 12 steps from the left flank of the marching troops. It continues to play until the band following it nears the post of the reviewing officer. The band then ceases playing, executes a left turn, and leaves the field, marching parallel to the troops that have passed the reviewing officer. The band following begins playing as soon as the preceding band has ceased.

*k.* In large commands, two bands may remain alongside each other after they have turned out of column to alternate in playing while the troops pass in review. Bands may be massed and posted as directed by the commander of troops.

*l.* When only one band is present, it remains in position facing the reviewing officer until the review has ended. It then follows behind the last unit.

*m.* Troops march in review with the guide on the right. Each company commander (or the senior company commander when the battalion is in mass formation), without turning his body, commands EYES, RIGHT; READY, FRONT. He gives the command RIGHT when he is six steps from the front of the reviewing officer, and FRONT when the last rank of the unit has cleared the reviewing officer by six steps. In each company or mass formation, all troops except the right flank men execute eyes right.

*n.* At the command EYES, RIGHT, the company commanders and platoon leaders render the hand salute. The guidon bearers execute present guidon.

*o.* All end the salute at the command FRONT. The guidons are returned to the carry.

*p.* The reviewing party and all spectators salute the colors as they pass by. When the colors pass between the band (halted) and the reviewing party, the bandmaster and/or drum major salutes the colors as the band continues playing the march. As the color guard passes the reviewing officer, each man of the color guard except the right flank man, executes eyes right at the command of the senior color sergeant. When the grade of the reviewing of-

ficer entitles him to the honor, the brigade or separate battalion color salutes.

### 131. Retreat

*a.* When a review is held at retreat, honors are given the reviewing officer as outlined in paragraph 127. At the completion of honors, the troops are brought to order arms and parade rest. The commander of troops then commands or signals SOUND RETREAT to the band or field music. He then faces the reviewing officer, and he and his staff stand at parade rest. At the conclusion of retreat, the commander of troops faces the troops and brings them to attention and present arms. He then faces the reviewing officer. At this time either the National Anthem or To The Color is played. If the National Anthem has been used as part of honors for a reviewing officer, or if decorations and awards are scheduled, then To The Color is played after retreat is sounded. When the ceremony is held on an Army post, the gun is fired at the last note of retreat, and as the National Anthem (or To The Color) is played, the flag is lowered in the manner prescribed in FM 22-6 and AR 840-10.

*b.* The commander of troops salutes at the first note of the National Anthem or To The Color. His staff, the reviewing officer and his staff, and all military spectators salute at the same time. The salute is held until the last note of the music. The commander of troops, on ending his salute, faces the troops and brings them to order arms. The ceremony then proceeds with an inspection and decorations and awards (if scheduled), and march in review.

*c.* If the reviewing officer has not arrived at his post by the scheduled time for retreat, the commander of troops proceeds with the retreat ceremony. He then presents the command after retreat and upon the arrival of the reviewing officer at his post.

*d.* Honors are not rendered between retreat and reveille, on Sundays, or on national holidays (except Memorial and Independence Days) unless, in the discretion of the officer directing the honors, the occasion requires an exception. The person or persons will be honored at the first available opportunity thereafter.

## Section II. PARADES

### 132. General

a. A battalion or brigade parade is an alternate and more formal ceremony than a review (para 124).

b. The appearance and movement of troops in formation are the primary considerations in a parade.

c. Preparation for a parade is similar to that for a review. The organization of troops for a parade is also similar to that for a review. The distance between the troops and the commander for parade formations is greater than that for a review as the troop commander is also the reviewing officer.

### 133. Ceremonial Battalion Parade

a. After the battalion has been formed and aligned in one of the previously described formations (fig. 54) and the guides have taken their posts, the adjutant, before presenting the battalion to the battalion commander, commands **PARADE, REST**. When the troops have executed parade rest, he commands **SOUND OFF**. The adjutant and the battalion commander, with his staff, stand at parade rest during the playing of sound off, the marching by of the band, and the sounding of retreat.

b. At the command **SOUND OFF**, the band, in place, plays three chords. At the conclusion of the third chord it moves forward, playing a march in quick time. It executes left turns to march across the front of the troops, midway between the adjutant and the line of troops. When the band has passed the left of the line, it countermarches and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After it has passed beyond the right of the troops, it executes right turn. When the entire band has passed beyond the front rank of the troops, it again countermarches and halts in its original position. When the band finishes the march, it again plays the Sound Off.

c. At an evening parade, immediately after the completion of Sound Off, the field music plays Retreat, and the retreat ceremony (described in para 131) follows. The adjutant brings the troops to attention and to present arms at the last note of retreat. When all the troops have come to present arms, he faces the battalion commander and salutes. The bat-

talion commander and the battalion staff salute at the first note of the National Anthem (or To The Color), and end their salute at the last note.

d. At the completion of the National Anthem (or To The Color) with the troops still at present arms, the adjutant again salutes the battalion commander and reports, "Sir, the parade is formed." The battalion commander orders, **POST**. The adjutant passes by the battalion commander's right and takes his post on the right side of the staff.

e. The battalion commander then commands **ORDER, ARMS**, and gives such movements in the manual of arms as he may desire. Officers, noncommissioned officers commanding platoons, the color guard, and the guidon bearers, having once executed order arms, remain in that position during the movements of the manual of arms.

f. The battalion commander then *directs* the adjutant, **RECEIVE THE REPORT**. The adjutant, passing by the battalion commander's right, advances toward the center of the battalion, halts midway between it and the battalion commander, and commands, **REPORT**.

g. At the command **REPORT**, the company commanders, in succession from the right, salute and report, "\_\_\_\_\_ Company, All present or accounted for." The adjutant returns each company commander's salute after the report is made and understood.

h. After receiving the reports, the adjutant faces the battalion commander, salutes, and reports, "Sir, all present or accounted for."

i. The battalion commander then *directs*, **PUBLISH THE ORDERS**. The adjutant faces the troops and commands **ATTENTION TO ORDERS**. He publishes the orders and then commands **OFFICERS, CENTER, MARCH**. He then faces about and takes his post with the battalion commander.

j. At the command **OFFICERS**, guidon bearers execute carry guidon.

k. At the command **CENTER**, when companies are in line, company commanders, officers commanding platoons, and guidon bearers face to the center. When companies are in mass formation, company commanders and guidon bearers face to the center. Officers command-

ing platoons move one step forward and face to the center. Officers, second in command, move through the interval nearest to the center and take their posts in the column formed by the platoon leaders.

*l.* At the command **MARCH**, the band plays; officers and guidon bearers close to the center, halt and individually face to the front; company commanders, when moving to the center, face half right (half left) (as in marching) to the front and close on a line four steps in advance of the line of guidon bearers. The guidon bearers close on their own line, each taking his post in rear of his own company commander. All other officers close on the line of platoon leaders.

*m.* The officers and guidon bearers having closed and faced to the front, the senior officer commands **FORWARD, MARCH**. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide. The officers and guidon bearers are halted with the leading rank six steps from the battalion commander. They salute the battalion commander, who returns the salute. The command, **READY, TWO**, is given by the battalion commander or senior company commander for the termination of the salute. The guidon bearers execute carry guidon at the same time.

*n.* The movements are executed at quick time to assure simultaneous execution by the officers and guidon bearers.

*o.* The battalion commander gives such instruction as he deems necessary and then (in quick time cadence) commands **OFFICERS, POSTS, MARCH**.

*p.* At the command **POSTS**, all officers and guidon bearers face about.

*q.* At the command **MARCH**, they step off. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide.

*r.* The senior officer commands, **OFFICERS, HALT**. He halts the leading rank six steps from the line of companies when companies are in line and three steps from the line of companies when they are in mass formation. He then commands **POSTS, MARCH**.

*s.* At the command **POSTS**, the officers and guidon bearers face outward.

*t.* At the command **MARCH**, the officers step off in succession at four-step intervals and resume their posts. The guidon bearers step off with their company commanders. On

resuming their posts, the guidon bearers execute order guidon. The music ceases when the last officer has taken his post. On resuming their posts, the officers and guidon bearers remain facing the troops and face about simultaneously at the command of the company commander. Executive officers take their posts without commands.

*u.* During the execution of *officer center* and *officers post*, except when saluting, all guidon bearers remain at carry guidon.

*v.* The battalion commander then gives the command for the battalion to pass in review. The battalion passes in review on the commands and in the manner prescribed for a review. When the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded.

*w.* The band continues to play while the companies are in march on the parade ground. After passing in review, the companies are marched to their respective areas and dismissed.

### **134. Ceremonial Brigade Parade**

*a.* The brigade ordinarily is formed in line of battalions in mass formation (fig. 55). The parade is the same as the ceremonial battalion parade (para 133) with the following exceptions:

(1) "Brigade commander" is substituted for "battalion commander," and "brigade," for "battalion," in the description.

(2) In moving across the front of the brigade, the band passes midway between the adjutant and the line of battalion commanders.

*b.* The battalions execute present arms, order arms, parade rests, and come to attention at the command of execution and their respective commanders as described in paragraph 125. Reports are made by the battalion instead of company commanders.

*c.* At the command **MARCH**, of the command **OFFICERS, CENTER, MARCH**, the battalion commanders and their staffs close on the line of battalion commanders and staffs. The company commanders face half right (half left) (as in marching) to the front and close on a line four steps in rear of the battalion staffs. The guidon bearers face half right (half left) (as in marching) to the front and close on a line four steps back of the company com-

manders. The other officers face half right (half left) (as in marching) to the front and close on a line four steps back of the guidon bearers.

### **135. Street Parade**

a. For street parades, the troops are formed and marched in the most convenient manner. Streets parades may include transportation. Either towed or transported weapons add to the effect of a street parade. Cargo vehicles are included only when it is desired to increase the size of the display.

b. Practical formations for street parades are—

(1) Columns of threes or fours.

(2) Two or more columns of threes or fours abreast.

(3) Mass formation.

c. The vehicles move in single column or column of twos, threes, or fours as the street width permits.

d. In long street parades, the rifles may be carried at sling arms.

## **Section III. ESCORTS AND HONOR GUARDS**

### **136. Escorts of the Color**

a. When the brigade is in line, the brigade commander details a company to receive and escort the national color to its place. For this ceremony, the brigade color forms with the color guard at its post with the brigade.

b. The band moves straight to its front until clear of the line of battalion commanders, changes direction if necessary, and halts. The designated company takes position in column of threes (or fours) 15 steps back of the band, with the color bearer back of the leading platoon. The escort then is marched without music to the brigade commander's office or quarters and is formed in line facing the entrance. The color bearer, preceded by the senior lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, obtains the color.

c. When the color bearer returns, followed by the lieutenant and the sergeant, he halts before the entrance facing the escort. The officer places himself on the right and the sergeant on the left of the color bearer. The company commander brings the company to present arms, and the field music sounds *To The Color*. At the last note of the music, the company commander brings the company to order arms. The lieutenant and the sergeant salute and end their salute at the commands of the company commander and return to their posts.

d. The company again is formed in column, the band taking post in front of the column and the color bearer placing himself in the center of the space in rear of the leading platoon.

The escort then is marched back to the brigade, the band playing. The march is conducted so that the escort arrives at a point about 50 steps in front of the right of the brigade and then moves parallel to its front. The brigade commander takes his post in front of the center of the brigade. When the color arrives opposite the brigade commander, the escort is formed in line facing the brigade. The color bearer moves to a position six steps in front of the brigade commander and halts.

e. The brigade commander then faces the troops and brings the brigade to present arms. He then faces the color and salutes. The field music sounds *To The Color*. When the field music ends, he terminates his salute, faces the troops and brings them to the order. Following the commands of the brigade commander, the escort is brought to present arms and order arms by its commander. When the troops have been brought to the order, the color bearer moves to his post beside the brigade color bearer. The escort is faced to the right and, preceded by the band, is marched to its place in line, moving around the left flank and back of the brigade. The band plays until the escort has passed the left of the line. It then returns to its post on the right, moving behind the brigade. The brigade may be given the command *REST* after the escort passes to the left of the line.

f. Escort of the color is executed by a battalion in a manner similar to that of the brigade.

### **137. Honor Guards**

a. Honor guards are employed to render to

persons of high civilian or military rank upon arrival and/or departure from a military command, the personal honors to which these individuals are entitled. Honors are not rendered between retreat and reveille (AR 600-25).

b. Honor guards of battalion size (two or more companies) are generally limited to personages entitled to a salute of 17 or more guns (AR 600-25). The number of troops detailed should not be so large as to compromise the high military standards expected of honor guards. Honor guards will wear the prescribed uniform of the Army without nonregulation embellishments.

c. The commander of the installation being visited, or his representatives, is the host and takes part in the ceremony as described herein. He is briefed on the sequence of events so that he can advise the personage to be honored of actions to be taken during the ceremony.

d. Prior to the arrival of the personage, the honor guard is formed in line of companies or platoons with the colors centered. The band takes position to the right of and in line with the honor guard. If a saluting battery is present, its use will be governed by the provisions of AR 600-25.

e. Upon the first approach of the personage, the commander of troops brings the honor guard to attention. The host welcomes the personage on arrival and escorts him to the receiving line (if there is one) where greetings are exchanged. At the conclusion of the greetings, the host escorts the personage to a position 10 steps in front of and facing the commander of troops and takes position on his guest's left. When the personage and accompanying persons have halted in their positions, the commander of troops brings the honor guard to present arms and salutes. If the commander of troops has a staff, the staff salutes with the commander.

f. As the commander of troops executes the hand salute, the band begins the appropriate honors. If a firing battery is employed, the first round is fired simultaneously with the first note of the music and remaining rounds are fired at 3-second intervals. All military personnel in the vicinity of the honor guard formation, except those on security duty, salute during the firing of the cannon salute and the rendering of honors (AR 600-25).

g. On completion of the honors, the commander of troops gives ORDER, ARMS, salutes, and reports, "Sir, the honor guard is formed." Staffs do not salute at this time.

h. If the personage does not desire to inspect the honor guard, the honor guard remains at attention until the personage departs.

i. If the personage indicates that he will inspect the honor guard, the commander of troops takes a position to his right and guides him through the inspection. The host takes a position to the right of the commander of troops. The band plays appropriate music until the inspection is completed.

j. The inspection begins at the right front of the band. The inspecting party passes along the front rank of troops. Ranks are not opened, nor do the individual members of the honor guard come to inspection arms, or execute eyes right.

k. The members of the inspecting party render hand salutes or honors when they pass in front of the colors. When the inspecting party reaches the left front of the honor guard, it passes around the rear of the formation to a point at the right front of the band. When passing in rear of the colors, salutes will not be rendered by members of the inspecting party; however, if the visiting personage salutes all others will conform.

l. When the inspecting party reaches the right front of the band, the commander of troops halts, exchanges salutes with the personage, permits the personage and host to pass in front of him, and returns to his post. The host escorts the personage back to the position in front of the honor guard. The commander of troops brings the honor guard to present arms. He and his staff salute the personage, who terminates the ceremony by acknowledging the commander's salute. The commander of troops commands ORDER, ARMS, and the honor guard remains at attention until the personage departs.

m. An honor guard ceremony upon departure of a personage is conducted in a manner similar to that described above. Generally, if the personage has inspected the honor guard upon his arrival, the host advises him that another inspection on departure is not expected.

## Section IV. COLORS

### 138. General

a. The national and brigade flags carried by organizations are called the "national color" and the "brigade color." The term "color" implies the national color. The term "colors" implies the national color and brigade color.

b. In garrison, when the colors are not in use they are kept at the office or headquarters of the commanding officer. They are escorted to and from his quarters or office by the color guard. In camp when the colors are not in use, they are displayed in front of the commanding officer's tent. When the weather permits, they are displayed uncased from reveille to retreat. From retreat to reveille and during inclement weather they are cased and placed in the commanding officer's office, quarters, or tent.

c. The colors are cased when they are furled and placed within protective covering.

d. The colors may be carried in any formation in which two or more companies participate and in escorts, when ordered.

e. In separate organizations and commands entitled to colors and in battalions not stationed with their brigade headquarters, the colors are similarly cared for and displayed at the office, quarters, or tent of the commanding officer.

f. The battalions stationed with their brigade headquarters do not display the colors of their organizations.

g. At brigade formations, the colors are posted with the brigade. When the brigade formation is broken up, as in drill or field exercises, the colors join the brigade commander or are dismissed as directed.

h. The manual for individual colors and distinguishing flags for general officer is the same as that for organizational colors. Salutes by such colors or flags are executed from the carry as prescribed for a brigade color.

i. The national color renders no salute.

### 139. Salutes by Brigade Color

a. The brigade color salutes in military ceremonies while the National Anthem or To The Color is being played and when rendering honors to its brigade commander or to an individual of higher rank, but in no other case.

b. When marching, the brigade color salutes

when six steps from the front of the person entitled to the salute. It resumes the carry when six steps beyond him.

c. When passing in review, the color guard executes eyes right at the prescribed saluting distance upon the command of the senior sergeant. The commands are: EYES, RIGHT, and READY, FRONT. When the grade of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, the brigade color salutes at the command RIGHT and resumes the carry at the command FRONT. The man on the right flank of the color guard does not execute eyes right. In those organizations which do not execute eyes right in passing in review, the color guard omits this compliment. Where applicable, the brigade color salutes at the command of the senior, who commands, COLOR, SALUTE. The return to the carry is made at the command CARRY, COLOR.

### 140. Color Guard

a. The color guard normally consists of two sergeants (or two corporals if sergeants are not available) and two specialists or privates selected by the brigade commander. A position on the color guard is considered to be one of honor. Members of the color guard, when not engaged in the performance of their duties, join their organizations. The senior sergeant carries the national color and commands the color guard. He gives the necessary commands for the movements and for rendering the colors. The brigade color is placed on the left of the national color.

b. When battalions carry the color, a sergeant acts as color bearer and two experienced specialists or privates selected by the battalion commander act as members of the color guard. The general rules prescribed for the brigade color guard are applicable to the battalion.

c. The color guard is formed and marched in one rank at close interval, the bearers in the center. The color guard does not execute rear march, or about face. The color guard marches at right shoulder arms.

d. At the command of the senior sergeant, the specialists or privates of the color guard present arms, or, if armed with the pistol, execute the hand salute on receiving and parting with the colors. After having parted with

the colors, the guard is brought to order arms by command of the senior remaining member who is placed as the right flank man of the guard. WAC guards (unarmed) execute the hand salute.

e. Having received the colors, the senior sergeant conducts the guard to its proper position before the color company. Having parted with the colors the guard is dismissed by the senior sergeant.

f. At drills and ceremonies in which the colors are to participate, except escort of the colors, the colors are received by the color company before the formation of the battalion. The color company receives the colors as follows: The color company is formed, its commander facing the front. The color guard, guided by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and halts at a distance of 10 steps from the company commander. The company commander then faces his company and brings it to present arms, faces the colors, and salutes. He then faces his company and brings it to order arms. The specialists or privates of the color guard execute present and order arms with the color company. The color guard then is marched by the senior sergeant directly to its post. It takes its post on the left when the company is in line or mass and in rear when the company is in column. When the color company joins the battalion, the color guard takes its appropriate post in the battalion formation. When the color battalion joins the brigade, the color guard takes its appropriate post in the brigade formation.

g. When in formation, the color guard executes at ease and rest with the color company, keeping the pikes of the colors vertical. It executes right shoulder, order, and present arms with the color company, but remains at order during execution of the manual of arms. It executes eyes right on the command of the senior sergeant.

h. During an inspection, the color guard does not come to the position of inspection arms as the inspecting officers approach, nor do the inspecting officers actually inspect the color guard's weapons.

i. When it is desired to dismiss the color guard at the conclusion of a drill or ceremony, it proceeds from its position and halts 10 steps in front of and facing the commander of the

color company. The company presents arms. The color guard then escorts the colors to the office, quarters, or tent of the commanding officer. The color guard is dismissed from organizations smaller than a company (funeral escort) in a similar manner.

j. In a campaign, before an engagement, the colors are stored as directed by the commanding officer.

k. After the playing of the National Anthem or To The Color, during the presentation of decorations and awards, the troops are brought to order arms. On this command, by the commander of troops, the color guard returns to the position of right shoulder arms.

#### 141. Movement of the Color Guard to the Rear, Right, or Left

a. To face the color guard to the rear (fig. 58), the command is COLORS, REVERSE, MARCH. At the command MARCH, each man steps off

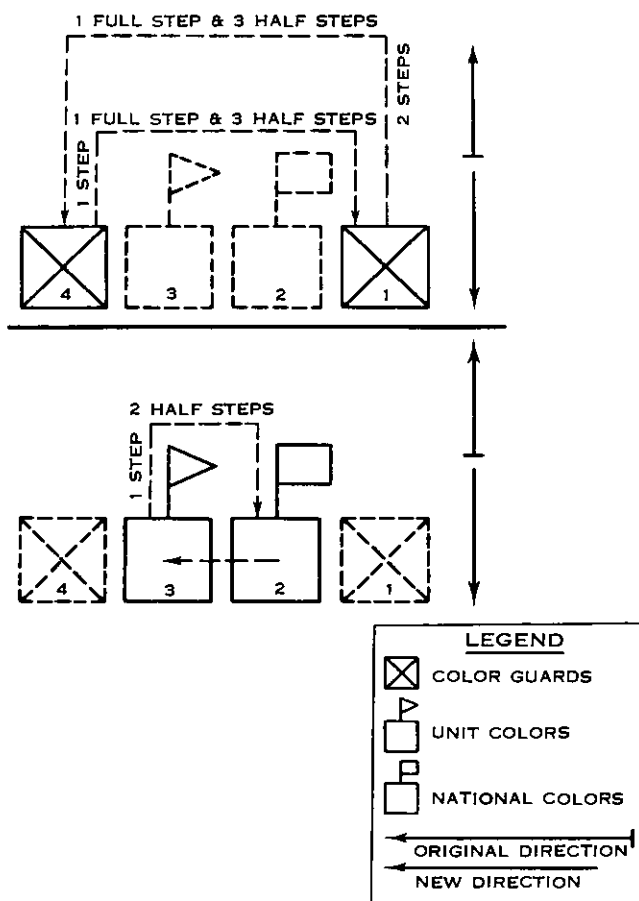


Figure 58. Movement of the color guard to the rear.

simultaneously and executes the following movements: Number 1 takes two steps forward, faces to the left in marching, takes one full step and three half steps, faces to the left in marching, and takes two steps in the new direction. Number 2 faces to the left in marching, and faces to the left while marking time. Number 3 takes one step forward, faces to the right in marching, takes two half steps, faces to the right in marching, and takes one step in the new direction. Number 4 takes one step forward, faces to the right in marching, takes one full step and three half steps, faces to the right in marching, and takes one step in the new direction. Numbers 2, 3, and 4 mark time after completing their movements until all men are abreast, then step off together or halt as the case may be.

b. The color guard faces to the right (left) by executing a right (left) turn and inclining to the left (right) until they are centered on the element to their front.

#### 142. Movement of a Five-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face the color guard to the rear (fig. 59),

the command is **COLORS, REVERSE, MARCH**. At the command **MARCH**, each man executes simultaneously the following movements:

a. Number 1 takes four full steps forward, faces to the left in marching, taking four full steps forward, faces to the left in marching, taking four full steps in the new direction, and halts. Number 2 faces left while marking time, takes two steps forward, and faces to the left while marking time. Number 3 takes one full step forward, halts, executes about face or executes about face while marking time, and takes one full step in the new direction, marking time. Number 4 takes one full step and two half steps, faces to the right while marking time, takes two full steps, faces to the right in marching, taking two full steps, and marks time. Number 5 takes three full steps forward, faces to the right in marching, taking four full steps forward, faces to the right in marching, takes three full steps in new direction, and marks time. Numbers 2, 3, 4 and 5 mark time after completing their movements.

b. When all men are abreast of each other

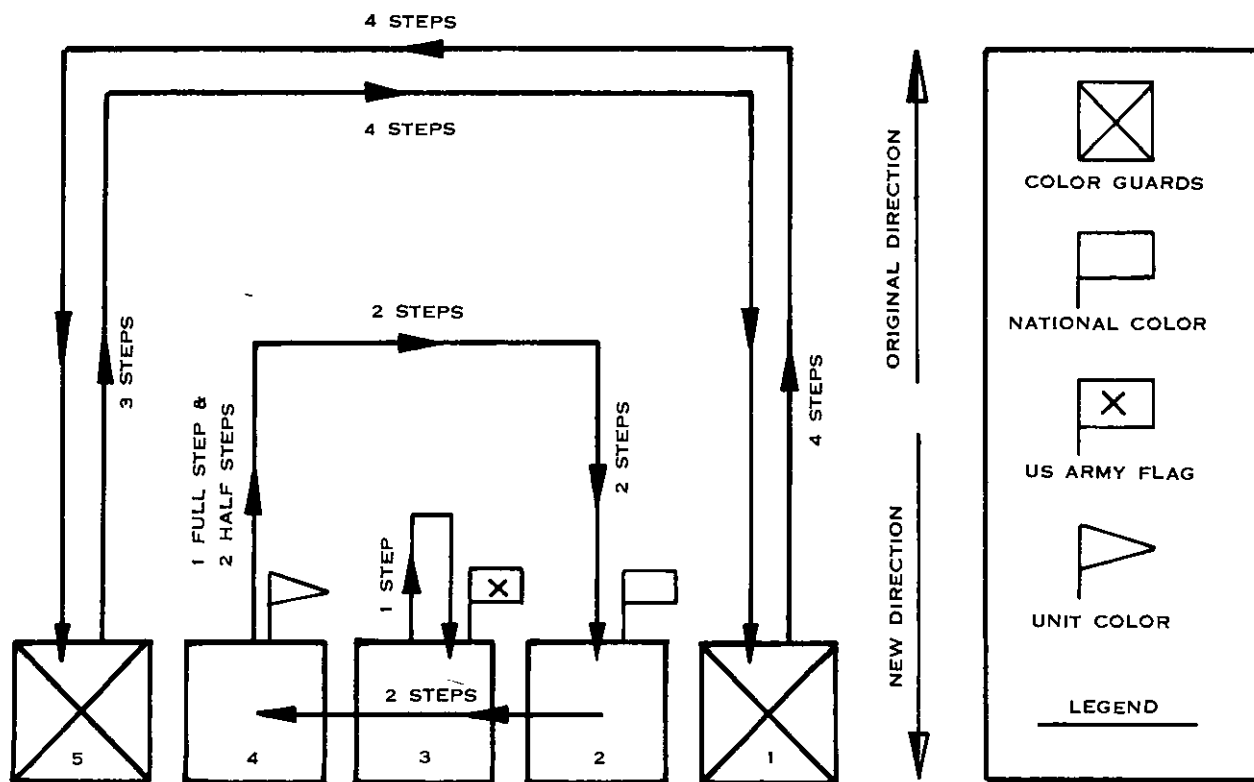


Figure 59. Movement of a five-man color guard to the rear.



the command HALT is given by the senior color bearer.

#### **143. Position of the Color at the Order**

At the order, rest the heel of the pike on the ground and touching the outside of your right footgear opposite the ball of your right foot. With your right hand at a convenient place on the pike, clasp it with your thumb, back of your hand to the right, and hold it in a vertical position.

#### **144. Position of the Color at the Carry**

At the carry, rest the heel of the pike in the socket of the sling, grasp the pike with your right hand at shoulder height, with the pike inclined slightly to the front.

#### **145. Position of the Color at Parade Rest**

a. Execute parade rest with the color similar to parade rest with the rifle, but keep the pike vertical.

b. Resume the order at the command ATTENTION.

c. Execute the order and parade rest with the color company.

#### **146. Position of Brigade Colors at Color Salute**

Assume this position from the carry by slipping your right hand up the pike to the height of your eyes, then lowering the pike by straightening your arm to the front. When the brigade color salutes with troops who execute present arms from the order, assume the position of carry at the command ARMS, and then execute the color salute.

### **Section V. FUNERALS**

#### **147. General**

a. Military funerals are divided into the three following classes:

(1) With chapel service, followed by the march to the grave or place of local disposition with the prescribed escort.

(2) Without chapel service, the funeral procession forming at the entrance to (or at a point within a reasonable distance of) the cemetery.

(3) With graveside service only.

b. A full military funeral normally consists of the following elements:

(1) Band.

(2) Escort appropriate to the grade of the deceased, including a firing squad and bugler (AR 600-25).

(3) Colors.

(4) Clergy.

(5) Caisson and active pallbearers.

(6) Caparisoned horse (if the deceased was a member of a mounted unit).

(7) Honorary pallbearers.

c. The services of an Army chaplain are provided unless the family of the deceased (or its representative) requests some other clergyman to officiate. A civilian clergyman may be substituted for or act in conjunction with the Army chaplain. The desires of the family are given the fullest consideration possible in the

selection of elements involved, but the funeral is conducted as prescribed in this manual.

d. The commanding officer or his representative, in coordination with the cemetery superintendent and the funeral director, makes the funeral arrangements and supervises the conduct of the funeral.

e. When honorary pallbearers are desired, they are selected by the family of the deceased or its representative, or when the family or its representative so desires, by the commanding officer.

f. At a military funeral all persons in the military service in uniform attending in their individual capacity will face the casket and execute the hand salute at the following times: when honors, if any, are sounded; at any time when the casket is being moved (the exception being when they themselves are moving); during cannon salutes, if sounded; during the firing of volleys; and while Taps is being played. Honorary pallbearers in uniform will conform to these instructions when not in motion. Military personnel in civilian clothes in the above cases, and during the service at the grave, will stand at "attention" uncovered and hold the headdress over the left side of the chest, or if no headdress is worn the right hand will be held over the heart. Female military personnel in civilian clothes will hold the

right hand over the heart. During the religious graveside service, all personnel will bow their heads at the words, "Let us pray." All personnel except the active pallbearers will follow the example of the officiating chaplain. If he uncovers, they will uncover, if he remains covered they will remain covered. When the officiating chaplain wears a biretta (clerical headpiece) during the graveside service all personnel as indicated above will uncover. When the officiating chaplain wears a yarmulke (Jewish skull cap) all personnel will remain covered.

*g.* When arms are presented at the military funeral of a person entitled to personal honors, the prescribed ruffles and flourishes are sounded. This is followed immediately by the National Anthem (or To The Color), or the march prescribed for the grade of the deceased, except when arms are presented at the close of the benediction at the grave (AR 600-25).

*h.* The remains of a member of the Armed Forces, who died while on active duty, may be consigned direct to a national cemetery from a military installation. In such cases, the cemetery superintendent will, regardless of time of arrival, if not otherwise provided for, engage a funeral director to receive the remains at the common-carrier terminal, hold them at his establishment until the date of the funeral, if necessary, and deliver them to the cemetery. The superintendent will not authorize a funeral director to render any other service incident to the interment (TM 10-287).

*i.* The word "chapel" is interpreted to include the church, home, or other place where services are held, exclusive of the service at the grave.

*j.* The word "casket" is interpreted to include a receptacle containing the cremated remains of the deceased.

#### **148. Funeral with Chapel Service**

*a.* Before the beginning of the service, the funeral escort is formed in line facing the chapel. The band forms on the flank toward which it is to march.

*b.* Members of the immediate family, relatives, and friends of the deceased are requested to enter the chapel and be seated before the

casket is taken in. Members of the immediate family and relatives occupy front seats on the right of the chapel.

*c.* The conveyance bearing the remains to the chapel should arrive in front of the chapel a few moments before the time set for the service. Since the casket normally is covered with the national color, the escort is called to attention and the escort commander salutes as the conveyance passes. When all is in readiness to move the casket into the chapel, the commander of the escort brings the escort to PRESENT, ARMS. As the escort commander presents arms, the band renders honors, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the casket is removed from the conveyance by the active pallbearers and carried between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, if any, into the chapel. As soon as the casket enters the chapel, the band ceases to play. The escort then is brought to the order and given at ease.

*d.* When honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in two ranks, each facing the other, forming an aisle from the conveyance to the entrance of the chapel. At the first note of the music, and while the casket is being borne between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, they uncover or salute as prescribed in paragraph 147. They then follow the casket in column of twos and occupy pews to the left front.

*e.* When the casket has been placed upon the church truck, two active pallbearers push the truck to the front of the church while the other active pallbearers move to the vestibule and await the termination of the church service. If there is no church truck, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the front of the church as instructed by the chaplain before the service. When no honorary pallbearers are used and if the active pallbearers are selected friends of the family, they may, if desired by the family, occupy the pews to the left front of the church.

*f.* After the chapel service, the honorary pallbearers (if present) precede the casket in column of twos as the two active pallbearers push the church truck to the entrance of the chapel. The honorary pallbearers again form an aisle from the entrance of the chapel to the caisson or hearse and uncover or salute as prescribed.

When the casket has been placed on the caisson or in the hearse, the honorary pallbearers enter their conveyances. When marching, the honorary pallbearers form columns of files on each side of the caisson or hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the caisson or hearse.

*g.* The casket, followed by the family group, is moved to the entrance immediately behind the honorary pallbearers. As soon as the honorary pallbearers have taken their positions, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the caisson or hearse and form in a column of twos behind it if the honorary pallbearers march. If the honorary pallbearers do not march, the active pallbearers form files on each side of the caisson or hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels. The family group remains at the chapel entrance until the honorary pallbearers have broken ranks to enter their conveyances or have taken their positions for marching. The members of the family group then are guided to their conveyances.

*h.* When the casket appears at the entrance of the chapel at the conclusion of the service, the funeral escort and band repeat the procedure as prescribed for entering the chapel. The band ceases playing and the escort is brought to the order when the casket has been secured to the caisson.

*i.* The procession is then formed in the following order:

- (1) Escort commander.
- (2) Band.
- (3) Escort, including colors, firing squad, and bugler. (Firing party and bugler may be prepositioned in the vicinity of the gravesite for full honor funerals (AR 600-25).)
- (4) Honorary pallbearers, if riding in cars.
- (5) Clergy.
- (6) Caisson or hearse and honorary pallbearers, if walking.
- (7) Active pallbearers.
- (8) Personal flag.
- (9) Caparisoned horse (para 147b(6)).
- (10) Family.
- (11) Friends, patriotic or fraternal organizations.

*j.* When the procession has been formed, the band and escort are put in march by the escort

commander. The elements in the rear conform. The procession marches slowly to solemn music. When there is considerable distance from the chapel to the grave, the escort, after leaving the vicinity of the chapel, may march in quick time. The band will play appropriate music throughout the march. When the escort is in the vicinity of the grave, it resumes a slow cadence to solemn music. Customary music will be used.

*k.* As the procession approaches the grave, the marching elements move directly to their predesignated positions. The band and military escort are formed in line in view of the next of kin. The other marching elements are placed as near as practicable to the grave. The firing party is positioned so that it will not fire directly over the mourners but over the grave, and so that it is in view of the next of kin.

*l.* As soon as the caisson is halted, the honorary pallbearers are formed in two ranks, forming an aisle extending from the caisson toward the grave. When the grave is too near the road to permit this formation, they take their position at the grave before the removal of the casket from the caisson.

*m.* When all is in readiness to move the casket from the caisson, the escort commander commands PRESENT, ARMS. At the command ARMS, the band renders honors, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the active pallbearers remove the casket from the caisson. At the first note of Taps, and until its last note has sounded, military personnel attending in an individual capacity and honorary pallbearers uncover or salute.

*n.* Preceded by the chaplain and the cemetery representative or funeral director, the active pallbearers bear the casket between the ranks of honorary pallbearers. As soon as the casket has passed, the honorary pallbearers face toward the grave and follow the casket in column of twos, followed by the family and friends. The active pallbearers upon reaching the grave place the casket on the lowering device. They remain in place facing the casket. They raise the flag from the casket and hold it in a horizontal position, waist high, until the conclusion of Taps.

*o.* During the movement of the casket from the caisson or hearse to the grave, the escort

is brought to PRESENT, ARMS. When the casket has been placed over the grave, the band ceases playing and the escort is brought to ORDER, ARMS. The commander of the escort then commands PARADE, REST.

p. When the escort has been brought to parade rest, the chaplain conducts the graveside service. At the conclusion of the benediction, he moves two steps to the side or rear.

q. When the service has been completed, the commander brings the escort to attention. He then commands: ESCORT, PRESENT, ARMS; FIRING PARTY, FIRE THREE VOLLEYS. The firing party fires three volleys of blank cartridges, assumes the position of present arms at the command of the noncommissioned officer in charge, and remains in this position until the conclusion of Taps. The bugler positioned near the firing party and in view of the next of kin sounds Taps immediately following the last volley.

r. At the conclusion of Taps, the rifles of the firing party are locked and the entire escort then is brought to *order arms*. The active pallbearers then fold the flag into the shape of a cocked hat (fig. 60). They do not let the flag touch the casket. The band plays appropriate music as the flag is folded. The flag, when folded, is passed to a pallbearer at the head of the grave who faces left and places the flag at chest level in the hands of the superintendent of the cemetery or his representative. The pallbearer salutes the flag for three seconds and then faces right to assume his original position. The active pallbearers face left or right together and march away from the grave in column of twos. The superintendent of the cemetery, or his representative, then makes disposition of the flag as prescribed in AR 840-10. The band and escort remain in position until the family begins to move away from the grave. The band and escort are then put in march in quick time by the escort commander. The other elements conform. At the first halt, the rifles of the firing party are unloaded and inspected.

s. On the return march, the band does not play in the immediate vicinity of the grave. In a small cemetery this is considered as within the cemetery limits. In a large cemetery this is considered as a distance from the grave so short that the playing would detract

from the solemnity of the occasion. Care is exercised to avoid disturbing other funeral processions or services which may be passed on the route of march.

#### **149. Funeral without Chapel Service, but with Procession and Graveside Service**

a. When the escort for a military funeral forms at or near the entrance to the cemetery, the officer in charge supervises the transfer of the casket from the hearse to the caisson.

b. When honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in a single line facing the caisson. The leading honorary pallbearer is opposite to that on which the hearse is halted. When more than 12 honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in double rank.

c. While the casket is being transferred from the hearse to the caisson, the escort is brought to present arms and the band plays an appropriate air. The honorary pallbearers uncover or salute as described in paragraph 147. During the transfer of the casket, the family and friends remain in their conveyances.

d. The funeral procession then is formed and proceeds as prescribed.

#### **150. Graveside Service**

a. For this type funeral (without chapel service) all elements of a military funeral except the caisson or hearse and caparisoned horse are present and used as described in paragraph 148. However, if troops are not conveniently available or if the family desires to eliminate other elements, the following are used:

(1) Clergy.

(2) Officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge appropriate to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25).

(3) Active pallbearers.

(4) Firing party.

(5) Bugler.

(6) Personal flag bearers (if appropriate to grade of deceased).

b. The military elements participating in a graveside service are in position before the arrival of the remains.

#### **151. Cremated Remains**

a. When the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the pro-

visions of paragraphs 148 through 150, with necessary modifications, will govern.

b. For all phases of the funeral where the cremated remains are carried by hand, one man is detailed to carry the receptacle containing the ashes and another is detailed to carry the flag, folded into the shape of a cocked hat (fig. 60). The pallbearer carrying the flag is always positioned to the right of the remains. When the receptacle is carried from the conveyance into the chapel and from the chapel to the conveyance these two men are the only participants in the ceremony. On the procession to the gravesite the receptacle and flag are carried by the two enlisted men mentioned above and followed by four additional pallbearers. When the container has been placed on the gravesite, all six men unfold the flag and hold it over the grave.

c. When the receptacle and flag are placed before the chancel of the chapel or transported to gravesite by vehicle or caisson, the receptacle and folded flag are placed side by side. If the pallbearers walk to the gravesite, the two bearers carrying the receptacle and the flag join the other four pallbearers already prepositioned on either side of the conveyance.

d. When no vehicle or caisson is used, suitable transportation is provided for the receptacle bearer and the other pallbearers.

e. In cases where the remains are conducted to a crematory and the ashes are to be interred with military honors at a later time, the ceremony consists only of the escort to the crematory. Arms are presented as the remains are borne into the crematory. The firing of volleys and the sounding of Taps are omitted. When the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory and when no further military honors are anticipated, the volleys are fired and Taps is sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer.

## 152. Ceremony Before Shipment of Remains

When the remains of a deceased officer or soldier are moved to a railway station or other point for shipment to a distant place for interment or final disposition, funeral services, modified as necessary, may be carried out as prescribed in paragraphs 136 through 149. When no further military honors are anticipated at the place of interment or final dis-

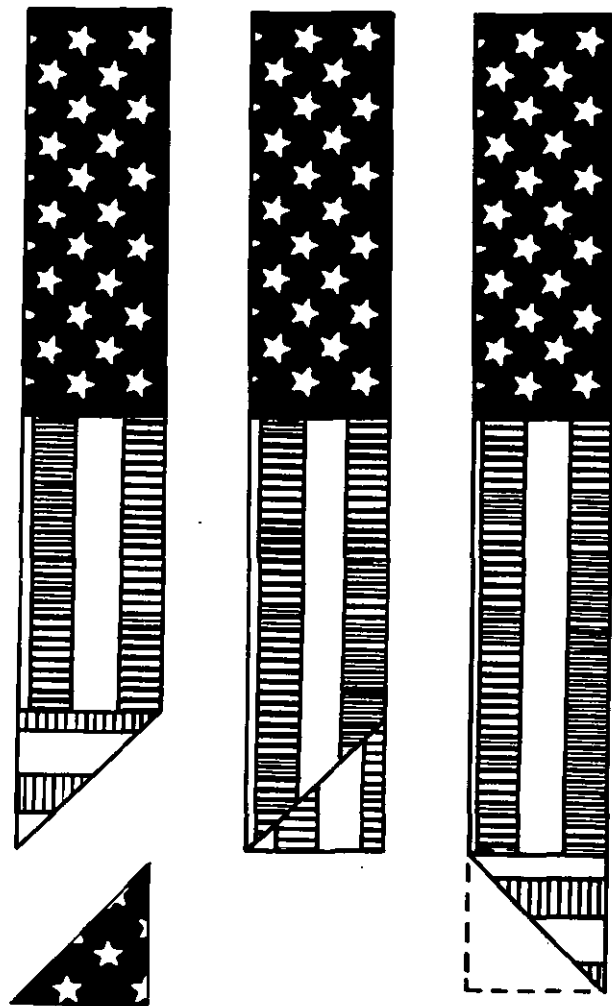


Figure 60. The ceremonial flag.

position, the volleys are fired and Taps sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer. When military honors are anticipated at the place of final disposition, the firing of volleys and the sounding of Taps are omitted.

## 153. Cannon Salute

a. When the funeral of a general officer on the active or retired list, who was entitled to a cannon salute, takes place at or near a military installation, minute guns equal to the number to which the officer was entitled (AR 600-25) will be fired at noon of the day of the funeral.

b. Immediately preceding the benediction, a cannon salute corresponding to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25) will be fired at

5-second intervals. Following the benediction, three volleys of artillery, guns firing simultaneously, or three volleys of musketry will be fired.

#### **154. Participation of Aviation**

When aviation participates in a military funeral, it is timed so that the airplanes appear over the procession while the remains are being borne to the grave.

#### **155. Participation of Fraternal or Patriotic Organizations**

a. At the request of the immediate family of the deceased or its representative, military organizations of which the deceased was a member may be permitted to take part in the funeral service.

b. When the ritual is military or semimilitary, the rites begin immediately upon the conclusion of the Army religious service. When the ritual contains the firing of three volleys of musketry and the sounding of Taps, the military firing squad and bugler are used. The sounding of Taps concludes the funeral services.

c. All fraternal or patriotic organizations wishing to conduct services at gravesite will conduct such services at the conclusion of the military portion of the ceremony which ends with taps.

#### **156. Duties of the Chaplain**

a. The chaplain takes his position in front of the chapel before the arrival of the remains. He precedes the casket when it is borne from the conveyance into the chapel, from the chapel to the conveyance, and from the conveyance to the grave. While the remains are being placed on the caisson or in the hearse, he stands uncovered at the rear and to the side facing the caisson or hearse. When he is wearing vestments, he may, at his discretion, proceed from the chancel to the sacristy (vestry) at the conclusion of the chapel service and divest, joining the procession before it moves from the chapel.

b. When the procession is formed at the entrance to the cemetery or other point and the chapel service is omitted, he stands uncovered at the rear and to the side facing the caisson while the remains are being transferred from

the hearse to the caisson. In cold or inclement weather, he may remain covered except when reading such parts of the service as require him to be uncovered.

#### **157. Preliminary Arrangements**

The officer in charge of a military funeral, the commander of the escort, and the superintendent of the cemetery or his representative visit the places involved and make careful arrangements before the time set for the funeral. They determine the positions at the grave for the various elements of the funeral, and make arrangements for traffic control.

#### **158. Floral Tributes**

a. In the absence of the chaplain, the chaplain's assistant will assist the funeral director in arranging all floral tributes in the chapel. The commanding officer or his representative will coordinate with the funeral director the necessary transportation for prompt transfer of floral tributes from the chapel to the gravesite. The conveyance bearing the floral tributes is loaded promptly at the conclusion of the chapel service. It precedes the funeral procession, moving as rapidly as practicable to the site of the grave. The funeral procession does not move from the chapel until the conveyance carrying the floral tributes has cleared the escort.

b. The funeral director or the cemetery representative is responsible for removing cards and making a record that gives a brief description of the floral piece pertaining to each card. After completion of the funeral services, the cards and records are turned over to a member of the family of the deceased.

#### **159. General Rules for Ceremonial Firing**

a. For ceremonial firing, the firing party consists of not more than seven riflemen and one noncommissioned officer in charge. The party is formed in line before firing.

b. Rifles are loaded while locked.

c. Except during firing, after the rifles have been ordered loaded and locked, they remain loaded and locked without command until the command UNLOADED and INSPECTION, ARMS.

#### **160. To Load**

a. With the unit halted in any formation,

the command is **WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES, LOAD**. At the command **LOAD**, each rifleman faces half right and moves his right foot 12 inches to the right to a position that gives him a firm and steady stance. He raises or lowers the rifle, and drops it into his left hand, grasping it at the balance. His right hand is at the small of the stock, the muzzle held in the air at an angle of 45°.

b. For instruction in loading, the command is **SIMULATE, LOAD**. The movements of loading are executed except that the handling of the cartridges is simulated.

c. Magazines will be loaded with three rounds of blank cartridges in the manner prescribed in FM 23-8.

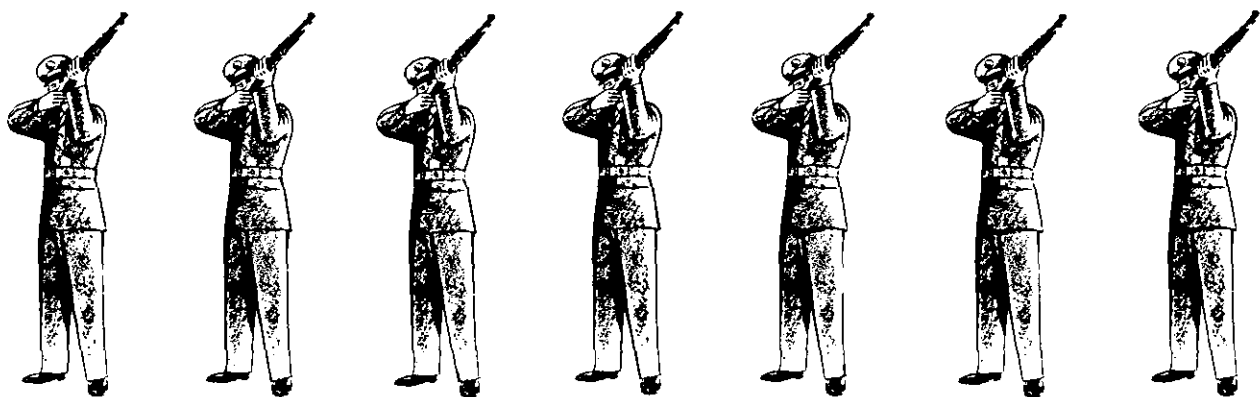
### 161. To Fire by Volley

a. Being in the firing formation with the rifles loaded, the command is **READY, AIM, FIRE**. For ceremonial purposes blank ammunition and blank adaptors will be utilized. At the command **READY**, each rifleman faces half right, moves his right foot 10 inches to

the right to a position that gives him a steady stance, and assumes the position of port arms. The safety lock of the rifle is pressed to its forward position with the trigger finger. At the command **AIM**, the rifle is raised with both hands to a position 45° from the horizontal. The rifle rests in the palm of the left hand, and the butt is placed and held firmly against the shoulder. The right cheek is pressed firmly against the stock as far forward as possible without straining. As a safety precaution, a firing party may find it necessary to swing the muzzles of their weapons to the right or left from front to avoid firing over the attendants assembled at the gravesite (fig. 61), but where possible the firing party should fire over the grave. At the command **FIRE**, the trigger is squeezed quickly and the weapons are returned to port arms.

b. To continue the firing, the command is **AIM, FIRE**. Each command is executed as prescribed above.

c. To cease firing, the command is **CEASE FIRING**. Rifles not already at the position of load are brought to that position.



*Figure 61. Position of fire, modified, ceremonial firing.*

## CHAPTER 11

### MOUNTED DRILL

---

#### Section I. GENERAL

##### 162. General

*a.* The drill described in this chapter provides for the orderly formation and movement of vehicles in ceremonies. The formation may be modified to conform to local conditions.

*b.* The term "motorized units" includes armor and mechanized units and the term "company" includes battery and troop.

##### 163. Dismounted and Motorized Troops Participating in Ceremony

When both marching and motorized troops take part in a ceremony, it is desirable to have the vehicles move as a unit separately from the foot troops. The formation, speed of movement, and the method of march are determined by the commander.

##### 164. Disposition of Weapons

Members of motorized units fall in at formation for drills and ceremonies in the same manner as dismounted units. When mounted in vehicles, unless at rest or at ease, they sit at attention and hold their weapons in the position of order arms. They grasp the handguard of the rifle just above the lower band. When armed with the carbine, they grasp it just below the front band. The drivers, assistant drivers, and others specifically designated, place their weapons in the boots or racks provided or in any other safe and appropriate place.

##### 165. Manual of Arms

*a.* When dismounted, execute the manual of arms for foot troops. Do not execute the manual in the vehicle.

*b.* When armed with the rifle or carbine,

take up the positions as prescribed in paragraph 164.

*c.* When passing in review, all troops except drivers or those armed with the rifle or carbine, fold their arms and hold their elbows shoulder high with right arm uppermost.

*d.* The officers in vehicles execute the hand salute. The men in vehicles, unless in charge of a unit or detachment, do not salute.

##### 166. The Commander

The mounted drill commander usually is in front of the base element. From this position, he leads the unit in the desired direction and at the desired speed. He may, however, move to where he can best observe and supervise his unit, leaving its guidance to another officer.

##### 167. Base

*a.* In mounted drill, any element or vehicle may be designated as the base. Ordinarily, the base vehicle follows the commander or conforms to his movement. The other elements or vehicles regulate and guide on the base vehicle.

*b.* In mass, the right front vehicle normally is the base vehicle. When not in mass, the right vehicle usually is the base vehicle in line, and the leading vehicle usually is the base vehicle in the column.

*c.* Base elements adjust their movements to prevent interference with the other elements during changes in the formation.

##### 168. Intervals and Distances

*a.* In mounted drill, the intervals and distances may be varied to meet local conditions



of terrain. The normal intervals and distances for halted vehicles are shown in figure 62. Moving vehicles should maintain a distance of not less than 12 yards and an interval of not less than 5 yards.

b. On the command or signal OPEN or CLOSE, the intervals or distances are increased or decreased.

c. The intervals or distances are not closed when coming to a halt unless the unit is commanded or signaled CLOSE.

## 169. Speed

a. In mounted drill, the leader and base elements move at a uniform rate of speed, which usually is not more than 15 miles per hour.

b. Other elements, when necessary, vary their speed gradually during movements to conform with the base or to complete movements.

## 170. Formations

a. The formations described in this chapter can be adapted to all motorized units, regardless of type or number of vehicles. When practical, the vehicles are formed in columns or lines of approximately 20 vehicles formed as a single unit. For tactical formations, see the manual for the particular type of unit concerned.

b. The formations are as follows:

(1) *Column*. In this formation, the elements or vehicles are placed one behind one behind the other and the right edges of the vehicles are alined (fig. 64).

(2) *Line*. In this formation, the elements or vehicles are abreast and the front edges of the vehicles are alined (fig. 63).

(3) *Mass*. A unit formed with two or more columns abreast constitutes a mass. Masses may be grouped as follows:

(a) *Line of masses*. Masses abreast with 10-yard interval (fig. 63).

(b) *Column of masses*. Masses placed one behind another with 10-yard distance between companies (fig. 62).

(c) *Line of battalions in line of masses*. Battalions in line of masses abreast with 20-yard interval between battalions.

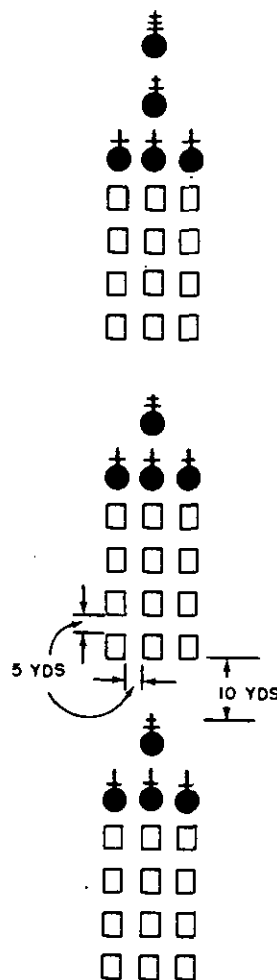


Figure 62. Column of masses.

(d) *Line of battalions in column of masses*. Battalions in column of masses abreast with 20-yard interval between battalions.

(e) *Column of battalions in line of masses*. Battalions in line of masses, placed one behind another, with distances of 20 yards between battalions.

(f) *Column of battalions in columns of masses*. Battalions in column of masses, placed one behind another, with distances of 20 yards between battalions.

c. Mass formations may be used for ceremonies or instruction by companies or larger units.

## 171. Vehicles Massed as a Separate Unit

When vehicles are massed as a separate unit, they are placed with respect to the foot troops

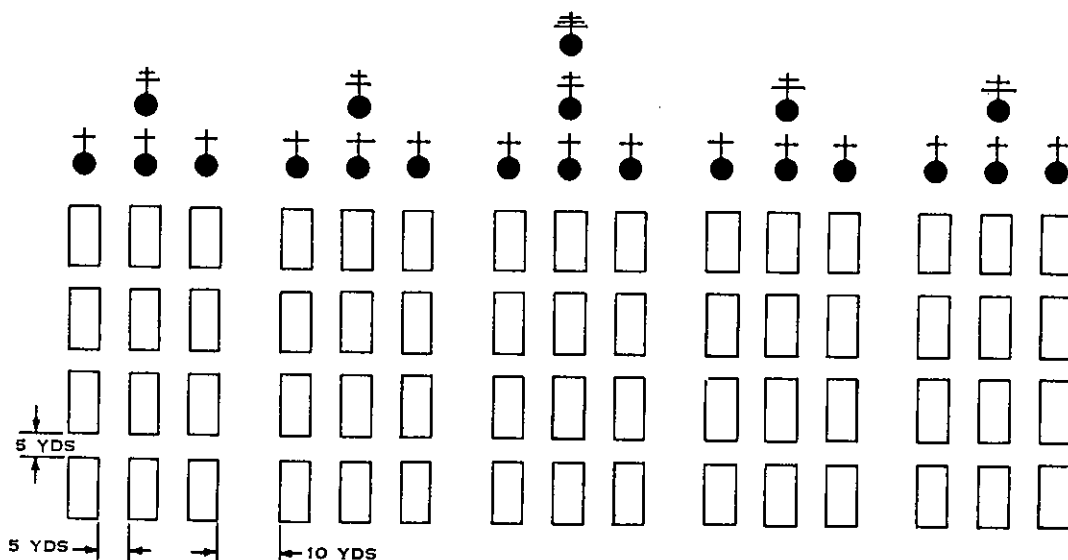


Figure 63. Armor battalions, line of mass with vehicles in mass formation.

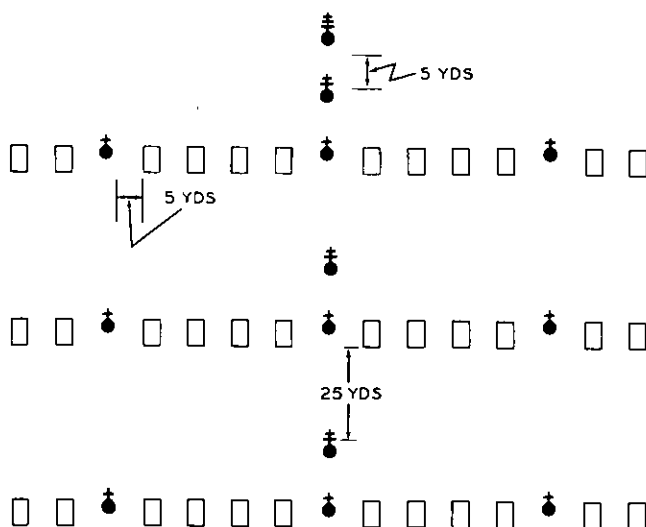


Figure 64. Battalion in column with companies in line.

as directed by the unit commander. The distance and interval between the vehicles and the marching troops is stated by the unit commander. The normal distance and interval between halted vehicles is the same as prescribed in paragraph 168.

### 172. Vehicles Accompanying Dismounted Troops

When forming with foot troops, vehicles form 5 yards in rear of the rear line of men. The

interval between the vehicles depends on the frontage of the unit with which they are forming, but is never less than 5 yards (fig. 65).

### 173. Formation at Vehicles

To form at the vehicles, from any formation, the commands are **AT YOUR VEHICLES, FALL IN**. At the command **FALL IN**, the men move to their assigned vehicles and form as shown in 1, figure 66. When there are more than five men, they form two or three ranks with normal distance as illustrated in 2, figure 66. When there are more than 15 men, the number of men per rank may be increased. Artillery sections form as prescribed in service-of-the-piece manuals.

### 174. Load Vehicles

At the command **LOAD VEHICLES**, the men in formation at the vehicles load their weapons and equipment under the direction of their leader. When the loading is completed, the men designated to ride then mount the vehicle and take their seats and sit at attention.

### 175. Unload Vehicles

With the men in the vehicles, the command is **UNLOAD VEHICLES**. At this command, the men dismount and remove their weapons and equipment under the direction of their leader. The unit re-forms without command as described in paragraph 173.

## Section II. MOVEMENT OF VEHICLES

### 176. General

*a. Formations While Moving.* The rules for drill of vehicles are the same regardless of their number, because the vehicles of a unit normally form in line or in column. Complicated maneuvers are not executed.

*b. Instruction Before Ceremonies.* The formation and movements are explained before the ceremonies. To attain orderly formations and movements at ceremonies, it may be necessary to drill in the following essential movements:

(1) Movement forward in line and columns.

(2) Movement from column to line and from line to column, including changes in direction.

(3) Movement into a mass formation from a single column.

(4) Movement in mass formation, including changes in direction.

(5) Forming a single column from a mass formation while moving or from a halt.

### 177. To Start Engines

The vehicles are started at the command or signal START ENGINES. They are kept running until the command or signal STOP ENGINES is given. When the vehicles are halted during ceremonies, the engines are kept running unless the halt is prolonged.

### 178. To Move Forward

The commander gives the warning signal FORWARD and his vehicle moves out. The other vehicles move forward at the designated distance (or interval). They are alined on and follow the base vehicle.

### 179. To Halt

The commander orders his driver to signal HALT. The driver then slows down and halts the commander's vehicle. The other vehicles close to the prescribed distance (interval) and halt.

### 180. To Form a Column or Line

In any formation except line or column, the commander places his own vehicles at the base position and signals ASSEMBLE. Then he extends his arm horizontally and points in the direction of the line or column on which the vehicles are to form. The other vehicles then move to position in column or line at the prescribed distance or interval.

#### *a. To Form a Column from a Line.*

(1) *Wheeled vehicles.* The commander signals COLUMN, and orders his driver to give the signal indicating whether the movement is to be made on the right, left, or front. Then he has his vehicle move in the new direction. The remaining vehicles, in succession from the

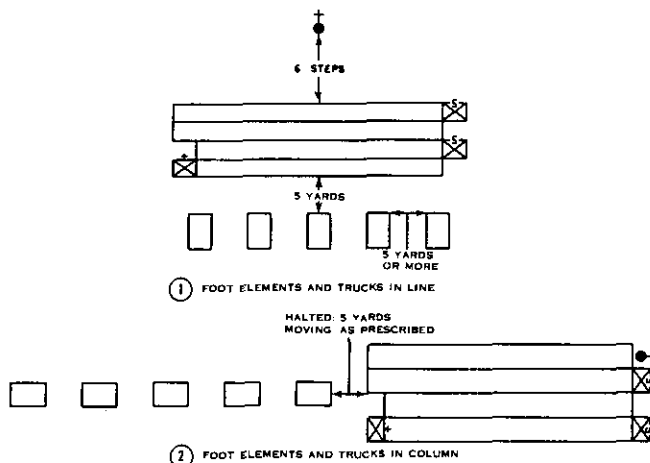


Figure 65. Formation of vehicles accompanying dismounted troops.

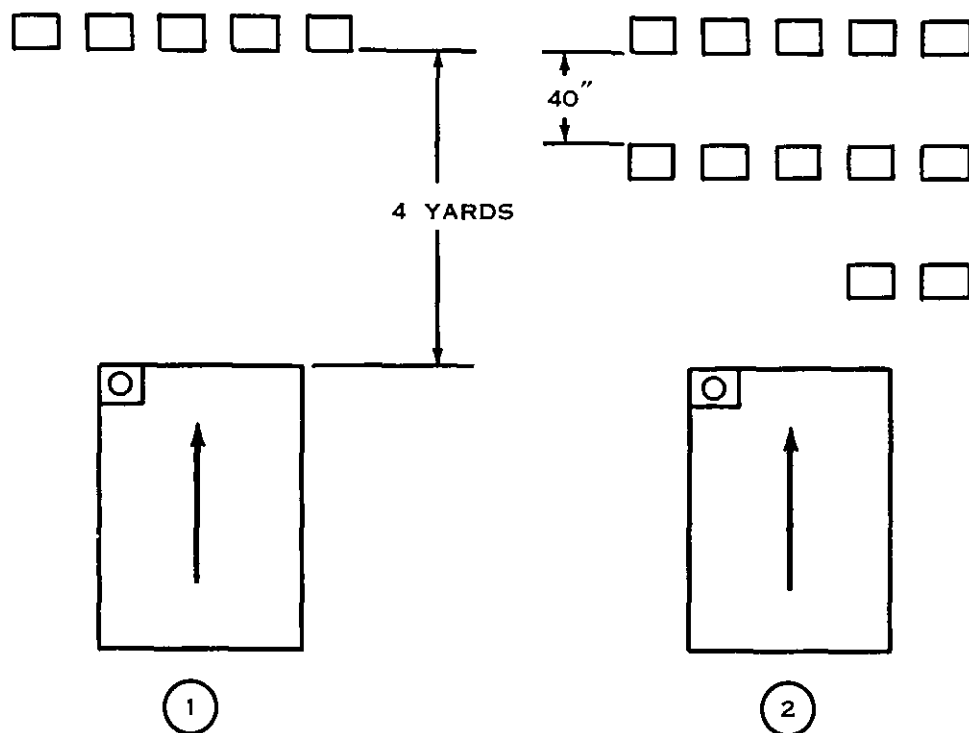


Figure 66. Formation of vehicles.

right (left), turn and follow at the prescribed distance.

(2) *Tracked vehicles.* The commander signals COLUMN and orders his driver to move the vehicle in the direction the column is to be formed (right, left, or front). The column formations are executed from any line formation by successive movements of the next elements within a unit to their positions in rear of the forward moving base. The base is followed alternately by the next lower element on its right and left. These elements begin their movement by changing their formations, if required, and moving by the most direct route to their new positions.

*b. To Form a Line from a Column.*

(1) *Wheeled vehicles.* The commander signals LINE and orders his driver to give the signal indicating the direction the movement is to be made (right, left, or front). Then he has his vehicle move in the desired direction. The other vehicles form in line on the commander's vehicle (figs. 67 and 68).

(2) *Tracked vehicles.* The commander

signals LINE and orders his driver to move the vehicle in the direction in which the line is to be formed (right, left, or front). Formation in line is attained from any column by a fan-shaped deployment toward both sides of the base. The next element within the unit in rear of the base moves to the right of the base, the third to the left of the base, and so on, alternately (fig. 67). These elements move by the most direct route without changing formation until they arrive near their new positions where they form a line, when required. When a line is formed in any direction other than the direction of march, the head of the column is turned in the new direction before the deployment is ordered.

(3) Platoons of five vehicles form a line from column as shown in figure 67. Platoons of less than five vehicles form a line in the same manner as those for the platoon with five vehicles as shown in figure 69.

(4) To change the direction of march for a unit, the commander directs the movement of the base on the arc of a circle so that the pivot turns on a minimum radius. For movements to the flank, all vehicles turn simul-

taneously on a minimum radius in the direction indicated by the commander.

(5) When the unit is in a column formation, the elements behind the base successively change direction in the same manner and on the same ground as the base (fig. 70).

(6) When the unit is in any formation

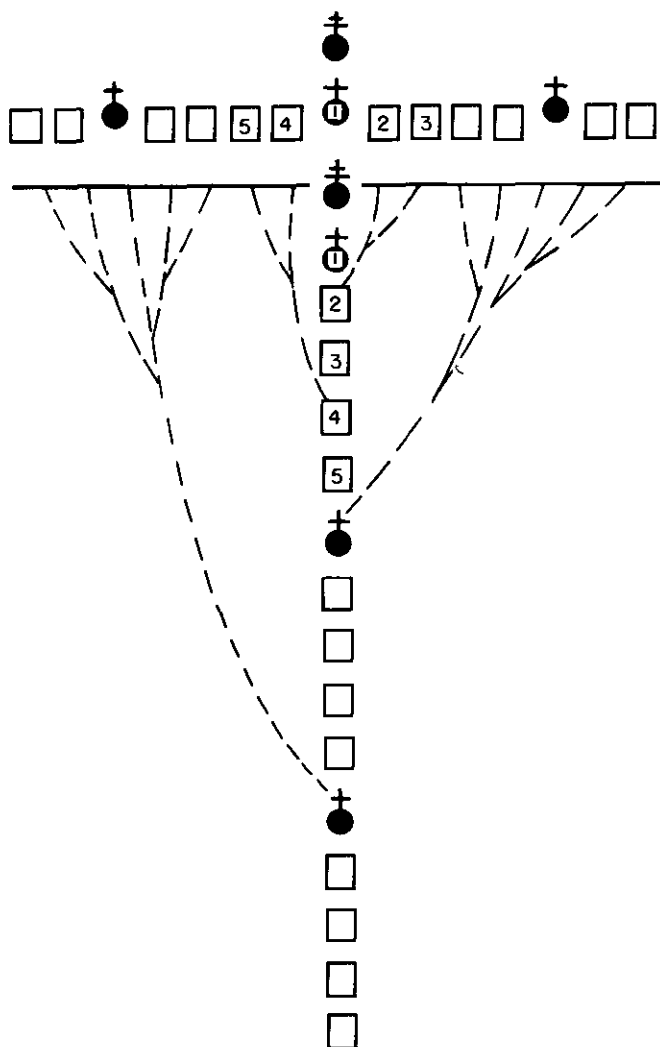


Figure 67. Forming line from column in armor unit.

except column, the other elements regulate on the base and maintain their relative positions.

(7) Changes in direction are made on a radius of not less than 15 yards.

### 181. To Form a Single Column from a Mass

The commander signals or commands COLUMN and points to the column leader who is

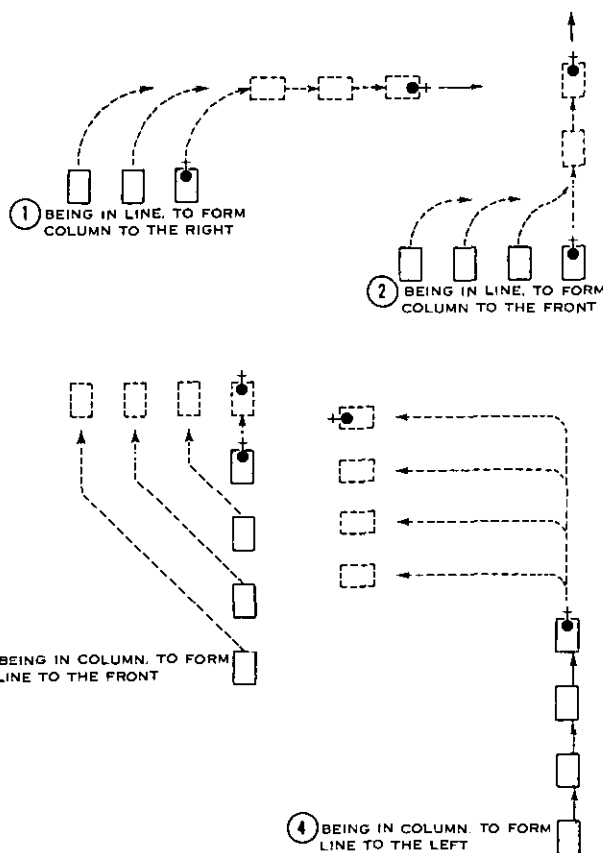


Figure 68. Moving vehicles changing direction of march in line or column.

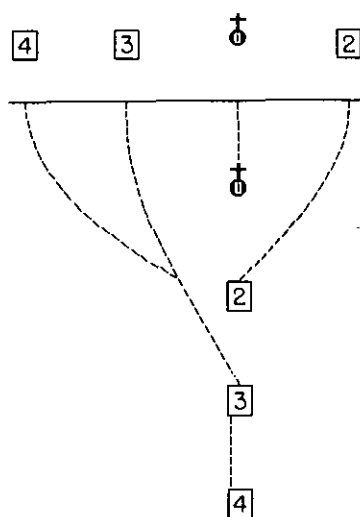


Figure 69. Forming line from platoon in column with less than five vehicles.

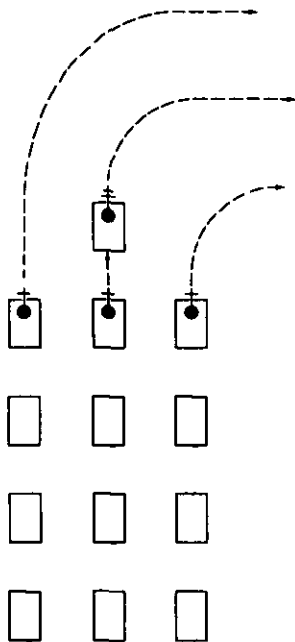


Figure 70. Moving vehicles changing direction of march in mass formation.

to lead off. He then moves his own vehicle in the desired direction, followed by the leading vehicle of the designated column. The lead-

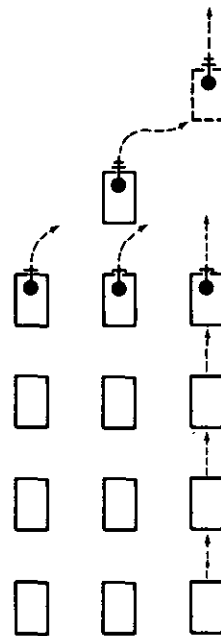


Figure 71. Forming a single column from a formation of vehicles with several columns abreast.

ing vehicle is followed by the remaining vehicles of that column. The other columns follow in succession (fig. 71).

### Section III. SIGNALS

#### 182. General

a. When conditions make oral commands inadequate, signals are used for transmitting commands and warnings. The signals described in this manual are the arm and hand signals used in mounted drill.

b. When a movement is to be executed by one unit or all units of a command, a preliminary signal designating the unit or units to execute the movement is given. The person giving the signal faces the unit or units he is signaling. The signal is given either from the ground or from a vehicle. The signal for executing the movement is given as soon as the preliminary signal has been understood.

c. One signal is preferable to a combination of signals. When a combination of signals is used, the signals should be easily recognizable and given in the order in which the command is worked. For example, to signal ASSEMBLE

IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS give the signal for ASSEMBLE, COLUMN, and PLATOONS in that order.

d. To change the formation of lower units, it is preferable for the leader to move the base element and indicate or signal the desired formation. All other elements conform to the base.

#### 183. Arm and Hand Signals

The general arm and hand signals used for mounted drill are as follows:

a. **ATTENTION.** Extend your arm sideward slightly above the horizontal, palm to the front, and wave toward the head several times.

b. **FORWARD; TO THE REAR.** Face in the desired direction of movement and raise hand vertically in the full extent of your arm, palm to the front; lower your arm and hand

to the horizontal in the direction of the movement.

*c. BY THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK.* Face the unit being signaled, extend both arms horizontally in the direction of the desired movement.

*d. MOUNT.* Extend your arm downward at your side, palm out, and raise your arm sideward and upward to an angle of 45° above the horizontal. Both arms may be used when giving this signal.

*e. DISMOUNT.* Extend your arm sideward and upward to an angle of 45° above the horizontal, palm down, and lower it to your side. Both arms may be used when giving this signal.

*f. CLOSE FORMATION.* (From turrets of tanks and open vehicles.) From the positions of arms extended sideward, palms up, bring the arms vertically overhead until the palms touch. Repeat as necessary.

*g. CLOSE FORMATION.* (From cabs of closed vehicles.) Extend your left arm sideward to the horizontal, palm up, and raise it as high as the cab permits. Repeat several times.

*h. MASS.* Extend your arm horizontally sideward, palm up, fingers extended and joined; then, by flexing your elbow, bring the tips of

your fingers to the point of your shoulder several times.

*i. EXTEND.* Raise your arms vertically overhead, with your palms together. Then drop your arms sideward to the horizontal position, palms down. Repeat this several times. (In a formation possessing width and depth, extension is made in both directions.)

*j. STOP ENGINES.* Draw your right hand, palm down, across your neck in a "throatcutting" motion from left to right.

*k. MOVE IN—GEAR OR SPEED.* Hold up the number of fingers which indicates the desired gear or speed.

*l. MOVE IN REVERSE.* Face the unit being signaled, extend your arm and hand at shoulder level, palm toward the driver, and make a pushing motion. Repeat this several times until the vehicle has moved to the desired position.

*m. START ENGINES.* Rotate your arm in front of your body, describing circles to simulate cranking.

*n. COLUMN.* Raise your arm vertically. Then drop your arm to the rear and describe circles in a vertical plane with your arm fully extended.

*o. LINE.* Raise both arms sideward to the horizontal.

## Section IV. MOUNTED REVIEWS

### 184. General

*a.* The procedures described in paragraphs 106 through 111, 124 through 131, 132 and 146 are applicable to all units with vehicles, mounted or dismounted.

*b.* The national and unit colors are mounted on the vehicle when carried in mounted formations. The color bearers and the color guards ride in the vehicle with the colors. The vehicle carrying the colors takes its position at or near the center of the formation and in the interval between battalions or similar elements. When the troops dismount from their vehicles and form into foot formations, the colors are removed from the vehicle and posted in the

same relative position as for a dismounted formation.

*c.* In mounted formations the guidon is flown from the commander's vehicle.

*d.* Unless ordered otherwise, all vehicular weapons are mounted and carried with their covers removed. Machineguns, except for the antiaircraft weapons, are adjusted and clamped with the barrels horizontal and alined with the axis of the vehicle. Antiaircraft machineguns are pointed to the left and upward at the maximum elevation. Rifles, carbines, and submachineguns are carried in the prescribed positions.

*e.* All tank hatches are open. The wind-

shields of the vehicles are closed. The bows and canvas tops are down on all combat vehicles and vehicles carrying personnel. The bows and canvas tops are up on the cargo-carrying vehicles. The rear curtains are closed and fastened. The radio antennas are secured as prescribed.

### 185. Preparations

The line on which the foot troops are to form is marked. The post of the reviewing officer and the line of march are marked with flags. The reviewing stand and markers are located so that as each unit passes in review its right flank is 20 yards from the reviewing officer. When formed for battalion reviews, the line of *troops* is 145 yards in front of the reviewing stand; however, in the case of larger reviews, the line of *unit commanders* is 145 yards in front of the reviewing stand (fig. 72). The band and buglers are formed dismounted and take their post 25 yards to the left and 5 yards to the rear of the reviewing officer. Where more than one band is present, the additional band or bands form on the left of the first band. The bands may be massed. The bands play during the reviewing officer's inspection and during the march in review.

### 186. Formation

a. The normal formation of the battalion for ceremonies is a *line of masses*. However, a *column of masses* may also be used. For large reviews, a *line of battalions in line of masses* is preferable; but where space is the controlling factor a *line of battalions in columns of masses* may be used.

b. In reviews for units larger than the battalion, the battalion commander's vehicle is 20 yards in front of the center of his unit. The commander's vehicle is centered 40 yards in front of the unit. Staff vehicles, except the second in command of a company, form with the right flank of their line 5 yards in rear of the commander's vehicle.

c. When platoon leaders and company and battalion commanders are dismounted, they take positions six steps directly in front of their respective vehicles.

d. Extra vehicles, administrative vehicles, and transportation which is not a part of a

combat platoon or similar unit may be formed as an additional column on the left of each company or similar unit. It may be desirable to group the administrative and extra vehicles in columns at the left of each battalion or other unit. When platoons contain less than five vehicles, additional vehicles may be added as part of the platoon.

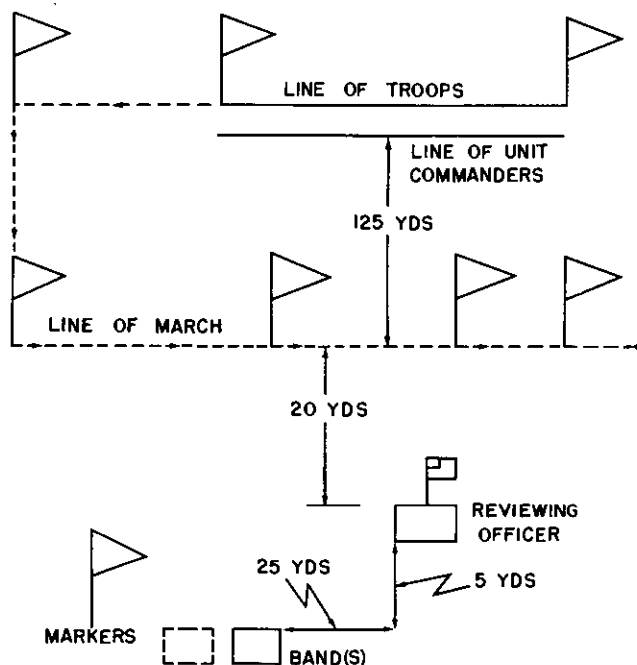


Figure 72. Preparation for mounted review.

e. All units form and take their positions on the line of troops before the adjutant's call.

f. The reviewing officer is dismounted and generally receives the review from a reviewing stand.

### 187. Inspection

When the troops remain in the vehicles, eyes right is not executed as the reviewing party approaches.

### 188. March in Review

a. When the reviewing officer has resumed his post (fig. 73) after inspecting the troops, or when he indicates he does not desire to inspect the troops, the commander of troops commands. PREPARE TO PASS IN REVIEW, MOUNT.



b. At the command MOUNT, the troops break ranks, move at double time, and mount. The engines are started. When the troops remain in the vehicles, the command MOUNT is not given. Engines are started at the command PREPARE TO PASS IN REVIEW.

c. When the commander of the troops observes that the troops are mounted, he climbs into his vehicle and commands (usually by radio), PASS IN REVIEW.

d. When the commander of the unit on the right flank receives the command to PASS IN REVIEW he gives the commands to start the March. Each successive commander of a mass formation on the line of troops, in turn, gives the command to follow the unit on his right flank.

e. Units may march in review with their elements in line, column, or mass. The sequence of commands for passing in review is as follows:

(1) *Line*. By the right flank is executed successively by platoons at the command PASS IN REVIEW. Commands or signals of execution are given by each platoon leader. By the left flank is executed successively by platoons to make the next change of direction at the end of the review field. By the left flank is executed successively by platoons to make the last change of direction and bring them in line for passing the reviewing stand. Figure 73 shows the formation for passing a reviewing stand.

(2) *Column*. Right turn is executed successively by companies in mass at the command PASS IN REVIEW. The commands or signals of execution are given by each company commander. Left turn is executed successively by companies in mass to make the last change of direction so that the company will be in mass for passing the reviewing stand.

f. Mass formation for passing in review is executed in the same manner as for a column, except when battalions are in line of masses or in line of companies with companies in column.

g. Commanders of platoons and all higher unit commanders salute as they pass the reviewing officer. They begin the salute 15 yards from the reviewing stand and hold it until they are 15 yards beyond it.

h. The review ends when the rear element of the command has passed the reviewing officer. When the review is ended, the unit commanders take charge of their unit (at a previously designated point) and move them as directed in the review instructions. When an inspection follows the review, the units move to the designated area.

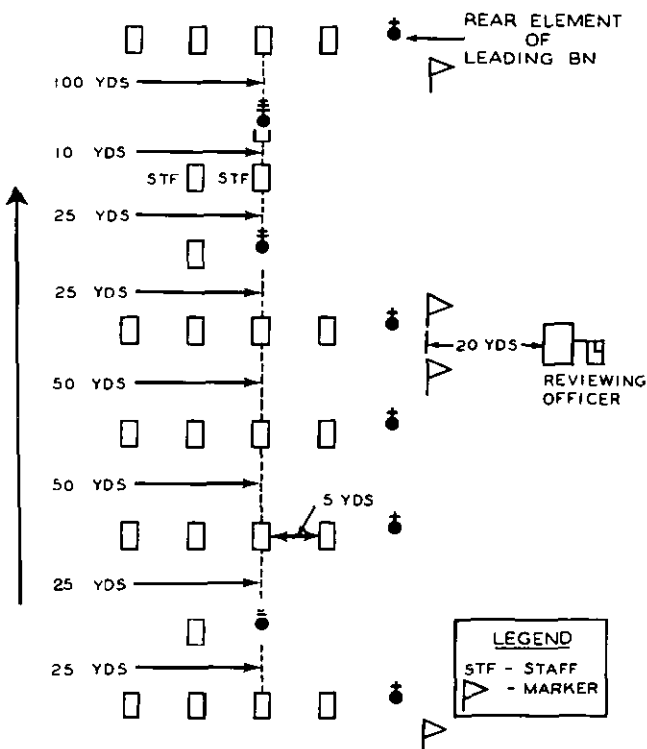


Figure 73. Passing in review (line formation mounted).

## 189. Road Reviews

Road reviews usually are conducted in column formation with as many vehicles abreast as the width of the road permits. Special instructions are issued for control of traffic, distances between vehicles, speeds, safety precautions, markers, and guides. To prevent traffic jams, divergent routes are designated for the units that have passed the reviewing stand.

## Section V. INSPECTION OF MOUNTED UNITS

### 190. General

a. Inspections may be mounted or dismounted.

b. The administrative details for the inspection of various units are limited by the variety of armored and motorized elements and the available terrain. The area for the inspection is marked carefully and lines are established to simplify the inspection. A field inspection of a large unit may require an advance detail from each battalion to assist in the layout of the area. Suggested arrangements for field inspections are shown in figures 74 and 75.

c. When all the elements are in position, the adjutant reports to the commanding officer who, after receiving the report, orders the troops to prepare for inspection.

d. When a band is present, it plays during the inspection.

e. When desired, an alternate formation may be used (fig. 75) with shelter tents pitched in lines separate from the lines of vehicles. The shelter tents may be pitched in double lines by company or similar unit, forming a company street. The vehicles are in line in extension of the street of the corresponding company.

f. The company officer's tents are erected facing their respective company streets.

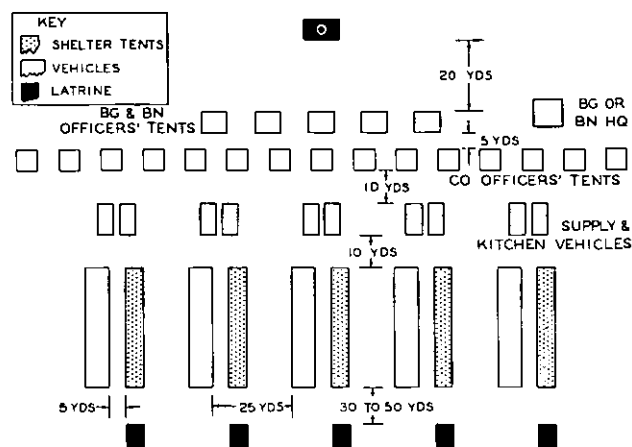


Figure 74. A typical formation for field inspection.

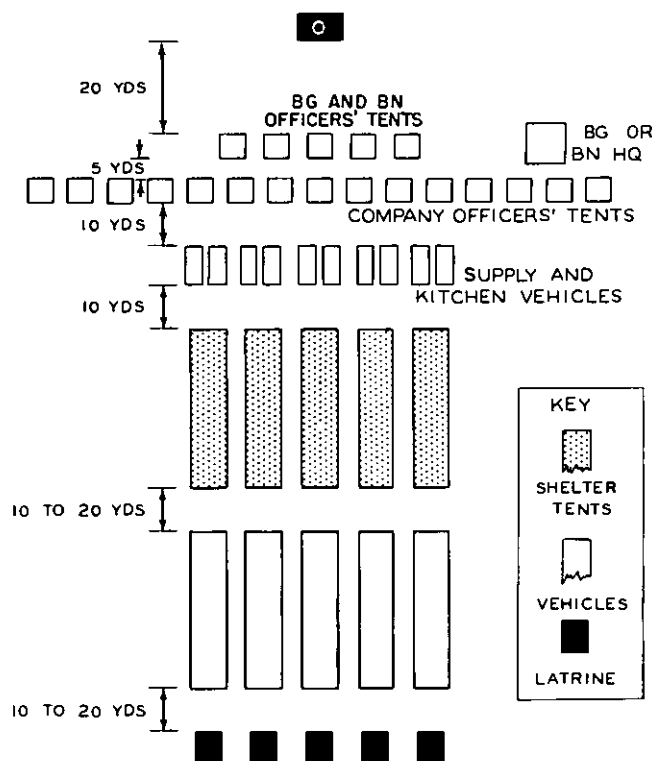


Figure 75. An alternate formation for field inspection.

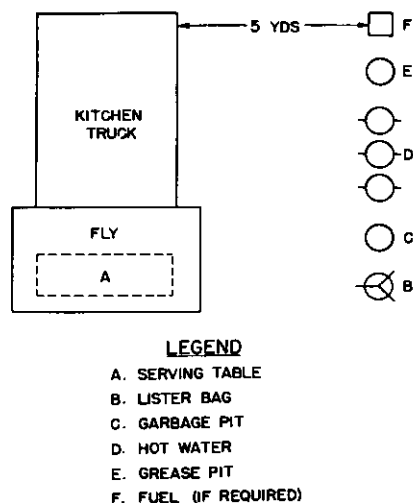


Figure 76. A type layout for kitchen equipment.

g. The colors are placed in front of the commanding officer's tent. The guidon is placed at the right front of each company commander's tent.

## **191. Display of Equipment**

*a.* Vehicles are displayed with hoods raised; engine compartments, doors, and battery boxes open; and tailgates down. The tools are displayed directly in front of each vehicle.

*b.* The mounted weapons are prepared for action. The towed weapons are uncoupled, moved 2 yards to the rear, and prepared for action.

*c.* Organizational equipment is displayed on the ground in the rear of the vehicle. The kitchens may be displayed as shown in figure 76. Additional equipment not shown in figure 76 is placed under the kitchen fly and in the kitchen truck.

*d.* Individual equipment, including weapons, is displayed in front of the shelter tents as prescribed in chapter 8.

## **APPENDIX A**

### **REFERENCES**


















---

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| AR 600-25    | Salutes, Honors and Visits of Courtesy.                                |
| AR 840-10    | Description and Use of Flags, Guidons, Tabards, and Automobile Plates. |
| FM 21-5      | Military Training Management.  |
| FM 21-15     | Care and Use of Individual Clothing and Equipment.                     |
| FM 21-30     | Military Symbols.  |
| FM 21-60     | Visual Signals.  |
| FM 22-6      | Guard Duty.  |
| FM 23-5      | U.S. Rifle, Caliber .30, M1.   |
| FM 23-7      | Carbine, Caliber .30 M1, M1A1, M2, and M3.                             |
| FM 23-8      | U.S. Rifle, 7.62-mm, M14 and M14A1.                                    |
| FM 23-9      | Rifle, 5.56-mm, M16A1.   |
| FM 23-15     | Browning Automatic Rifle, Caliber .30, M1918A2.                        |
| FM 23-31     | 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M79.   |
| FM 23-35     | Pistols and Revolvers.   |
| DA Pam 638-1 | Escorting Deceased Army Personnel.                                     |
| TM 10-287    | Administration, Operation, and Maintenance: National Cemeteries.       |

## APPENDIX B

### SYMBOLS

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
|    | DIVISION OR DIVISION COMMANDER OF TROOPS |
|    | BRIGADE COMMANDER/COMMANDER OF TROOPS    |
|    | BATTALION COMMANDER                      |
|    | COMPANY COMMANDER                        |
|    | COMPANY COMMANDER ALTERNATE POSITION     |
|    | EXECUTIVE OFFICER (COMPANY)              |
|    | PLATOON LEADER                           |
|    | FIRST SERGEANT                           |
|    | PLATOON SERGEANT                         |
|  | SECTION LEADER                           |
|  | SQUAD LEADER                             |
|  | FIRE TEAM LEADER                         |
|  | RADIOTELEPHONE OPERATOR                  |
|  | SQUAD MEMBER                             |
|  | DIRECTION TROOPS ARE FACING OR MARCHING  |
|  | GUIDON                                   |
|  | COLORS                                   |

*Figure 77. Master key to symbols in illustrations.*

## APPENDIX C

### MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M1 RIFLE

---

#### 1. General

a. Execute FALL IN with the rifle at order arms.

b. Facings, alinements, and short distance marching movements are normally executed from order arms. Right (left) step, backward march, open and close ranks, and close and extend are short distance movements. To march units forward for similar short distances, forward march may be given from order arms. When these movements are commanded while at order arms, come automatically to trail arms on the command of execution for the movement. Return the rifle to order arms on halting.

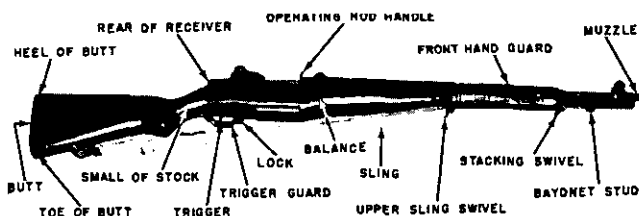
c. Before starting any other marching movement of armed troops, face the troops in the desired direction of march and then bring the weapons to right shoulder, port, or sling arms by the appropriate command. When a marching movement has been completed, and it is desired to execute a facing movement, first have the weapon brought to order arms or unslung arms and then give the command for the facing movement.

d. When at a position other than sling arms, come to port arms for double time. When in formation, the commander gives the appropriate commands.

#### 2. Rules for the Rifle Manual of Arms

a. The term "at the balance" refers to a point on the rifle just forward of the trigger housing (fig. 78).

b. With your left hand at the balance, hold the rifle with your thumb and fingers, including the sling in your grasp. Extend and join your fingers forming a U with your thumb.



*Figure 78. Drill nomenclature of the U.S. rifle, cal. .30, M1.*

c. The position of the rifle known as "diagonally across the body" is as follows (fig. 79): the barrel is up, the heel of the butt is on line with your right hip, and the barrel is at such an angle that one point of the barrel is in front of the juncture of your neck and left shoulder. Hold the rifle at a height which allows your right forearm to be horizontal when you grasp the small of the stock with your right hand. Grasp the rifle at the balance with your left hand as described in *b* above, keeping your left elbow at your side. The distance of the rifle from your body depends upon the conformation of your body, but it should be approximately 4 inches from your belt.

d. The cadence for rifle movements is quick time; however, in early stages of instruction, precise execution is learned before acquiring the proper cadence.

e. The manual for the rifle is taught to be executed while standing at the position of attention. To add interest to drill or lessen fatigue on long marches, movements between right and left shoulder, and port arms may be commanded when marching at attention in quick time. To move the rifle to the left shoulder from the right shoulder when marching, the command LEFT SHOULDER, ARMS, is given as the left foot strikes the ground. The first

count of this movement is executed as the right foot strikes the ground and the left arm is moving forward in its natural arc. To move the rifle to the right shoulder from the left shoulder while marching, the command **RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS**, is given as the right foot strikes the ground. The first count of this movement is executed as the left foot strikes the ground and the right arm is moving forward in its natural arc.

f. Any position of the manual of arms may be executed from another position, except inspection arms, trail arms, sling and unsling arms, and fix and unfix bayonets, which must be executed from the position of order arms. Port arms is the only movement that may be commanded from inspection arms.

### 3. Order Arms

a. Order arms is the position of the soldier at attention with the rifle. It is assumed on the command **SQUAD (PLATOON), ATTENTION**, from any of the rest positions except fall out. Order arms is assumed on the command **FALL IN** and on the command **ORDER, ARMS** from any position in the manual except inspection arms and sling arms.

b. At order arms, maintain the position of attention except for your right arm and rifle. Place the butt of the rifle on the ground with the barrel to the rear and the toe of the rifle butt against your right shoe, on line with the front of your right shoe. Grasp the front hand-guard with your right hand in a U formed by your fingers, extended and joined, and your



*Figure 79. Rifle held diagonally across the body.*



*Figure 80. Order arms.*

thumb. Hold the tips of your index finger and thumb on line with the forward edge of the front handguard. Keep your right hand and arm behind the rifle so that your thumb is along your trousers seam (fig. 80).

#### 4. Rest Positions With the Rifle

The rest positions with the rifle are commanded and executed as without arms, with the following exceptions and additions:

a. On the command **PARADE, REST**, keep the toe of the rifle butt on line with the front of your right shoe, and hold the rifle butt against your right shoe. Slide your right hand upward, regrasp the front handguard just below the stacking swivel and straighten your right arm so the muzzle of the rifle is inclined straight to the front. Place your left hand behind your back, just below the belt line, with your fingers and thumb extended and joined

and your palm to the rear. Thrust the rifle out at the same time you move your left foot (fig. 81).

b. Execute **STAND AT, EASE**, with the rifle, the same as parade rest with the rifle, but turn your head and eyes toward the commander.

c. On the command **AT EASE** or **REST**, keep your right foot in place. Hold the rifle as in parade rest, except that you may relax your right arm slightly. When at sling arms, follow the procedure outlined in paragraph 12c below.

d. Armed troops must be at attention at order arms, port arms, stack arms, or unsling arms before **FALL OUT** may be given.

#### 5. Trail Arms

a. When at the position of order arms, the position of trail arms is executed on the *command of execution* of a march command when no other command precedes the *preparatory command* for the movement.

b. For instructional purposes, the command **TRAIL, ARMS**, may be used to teach the position at a halt. At the command **ARMS**, grasp the rifle with your right hand, with your fingers and thumb closed around the front handguard. Raise the rifle butt 3 inches off the ground and incline the rifle forward at an angle of 30°. This movement is executed in one count.

c. At the command **ARMS**, of **ORDER, ARMS**, lower the rifle to the ground with your right hand and resume the position of order arms. When **TRAIL, ARMS**, is commanded, hold the rifle at the trail until **ORDER, ARMS**, is given.

#### 6. Port Arms

a. The command is **PORT, ARMS**.

b. This is a two-count movement from order arms. At the command **ARMS**, raise the rifle diagonally across the body with the right hand, grasping the balance with the left hand so that the rifle is approximately 4 inches from the belt. Hold your right elbow down without strain (1, fig. 82). On the second count, regrasp the rifle with your right hand at the small of the stock (2, fig. 82). At port arms,

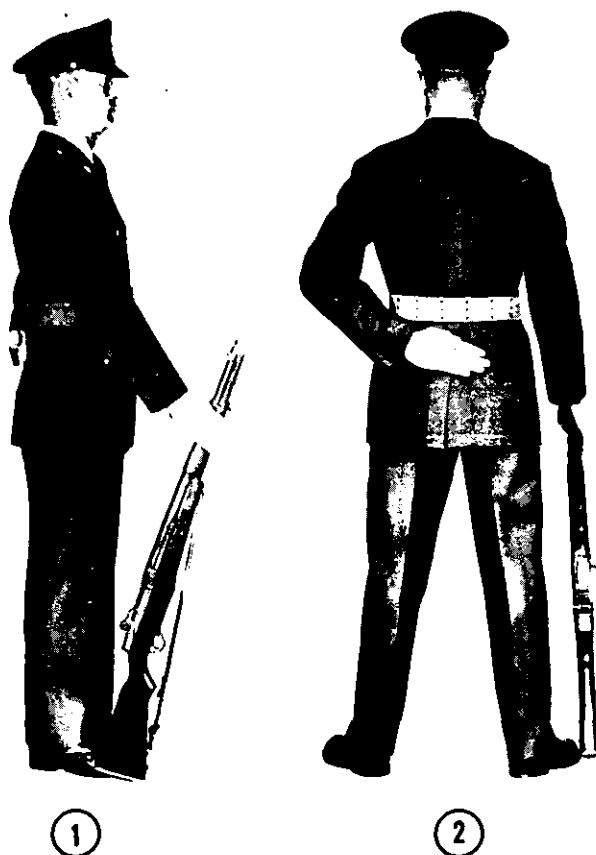


Figure 81. Parade rest.



keep your right forearm horizontal with your elbows in at your sides and hold the rifle diagonally across the body, approximately 4 inches from your belt.

c. Order arms from port arms is executed in three counts. At the command ARMS, move your right hand up and across your body and grasp the front handguard without moving the rifle (1, fig. 82). On the second count, release your left hand from the balance and lower the rifle to your right side with your right hand so that the butt is 3 inches from the ground. Place your left hand on the rifle in the vicinity of the stacking swivel, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm to the rear, to steady the rifle and hold the barrel vertically (fig. 83). On the third count, lower the rifle gently to the order with your right hand and move your left hand to your side.

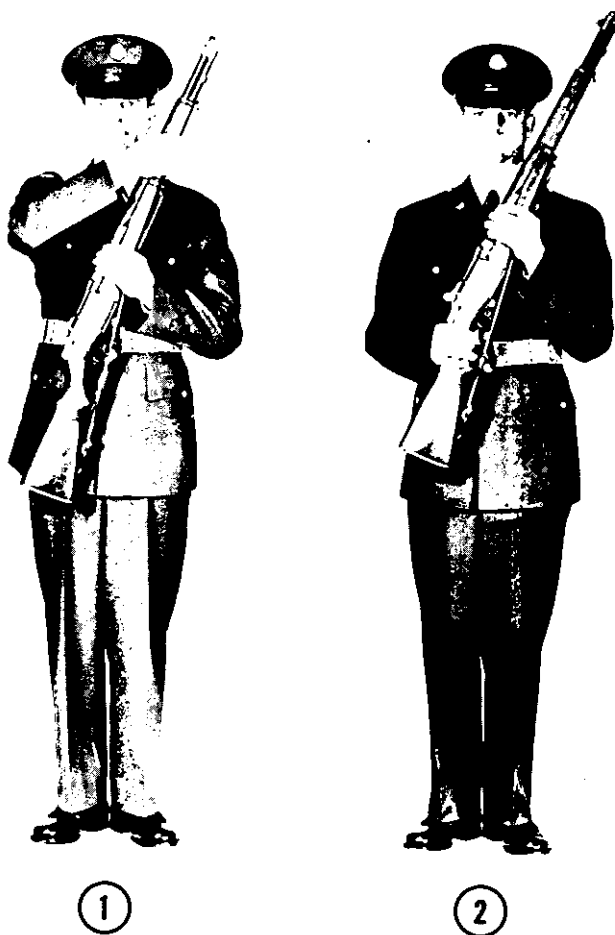


Figure 82. Port arms.



Figure 83. Next to last count in executing order arms.

## 7. Right Shoulder Arms

a. The command is RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS.

b. When executed from order arms, right shoulder arms is a four-count movement. At the command ARMS, execute the first count of port arms as described in 6b above (1, fig. 84). Hold your right elbow down without strain. On the second count, regrasp the rifle at the butt with your right hand, the heel of the butt between the first two fingers and the thumb and fingers closed around the stock with the thumb and index finger touching (2, fig. 84). On the third count, place the rifle on your right shoulder with the grasp of your right hand unchanged. Release your left hand from the balance and use it to guide the rifle to your shoulder by placing your left hand at the small of the stock, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm toward your body, and the

first joint of your left forefinger touching the rear of the receiver. Keep your left elbow down (3, fig. 84). On the fourth count, move your left hand back to its position by your side as at attention. At right shoulder arms, keep your right forearm horizontal and your right elbow against your side and on line with your back (4, fig. 84).

c. The return to order arms is a four-count movement. On the command ARMS, press the rifle butt down quickly and move the rifle diagonally across your body, turning the butt so as to keep the barrel up. Grasp the rifle at the balance with your left hand, retaining the grasp of your right hand on the butt (count one). On the second count, move your right hand up and across your body and grasp the front handguard. The third and

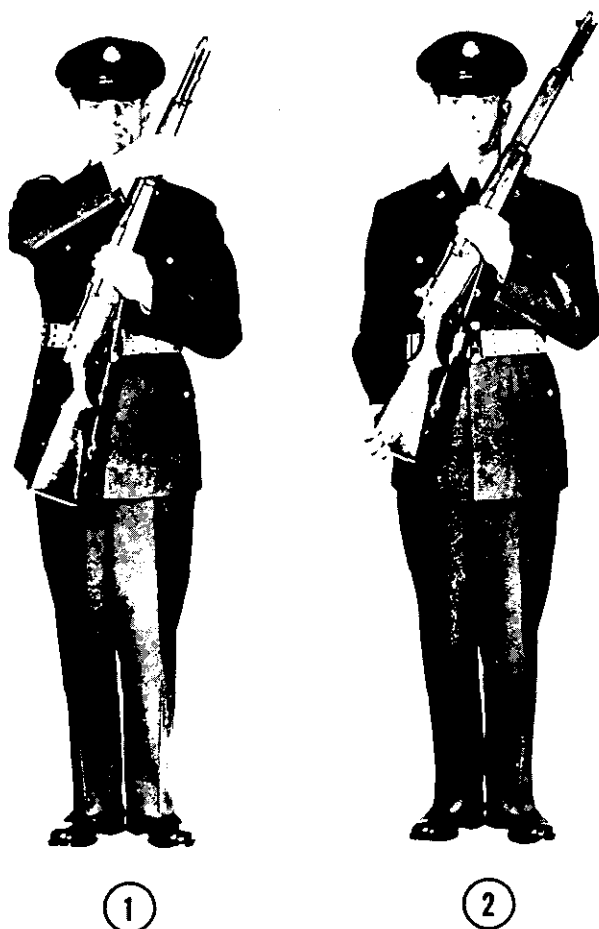


Figure 84. Right shoulder arms.

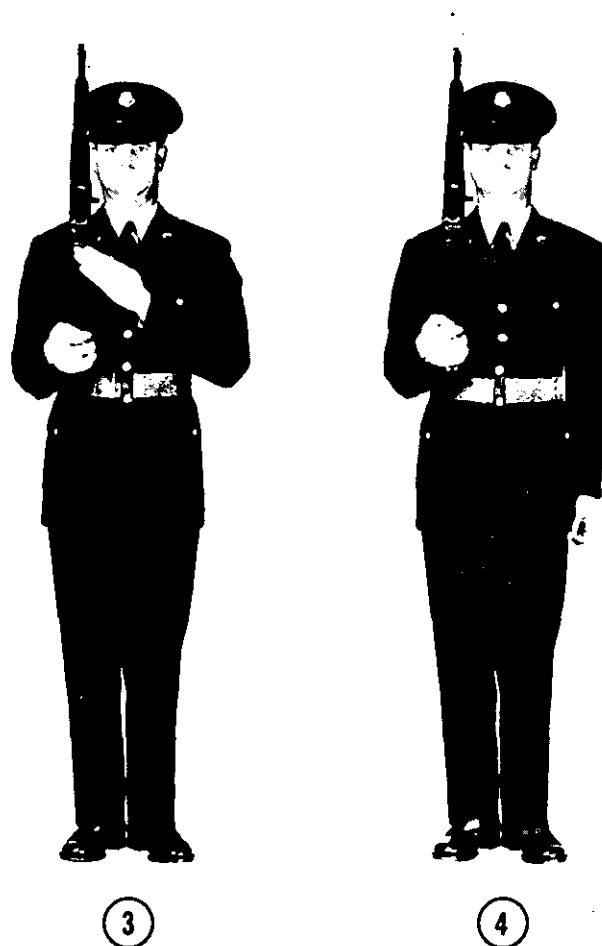


Figure 84—Continued.

fourth counts are executed in the same manner as the second and third counts in executing order arms from port arms (para 6c above).

d. Right shoulder arms from port arms is a three-count movement. On the first count, regrasp the rifle at the butt with your right hand as you would in coming to right shoulder from order arms. The last two counts are the same as the last two counts in moving from order to right shoulder arms.

e. Port arms from right shoulder arms is a two-count movement. The first count is the same as the first count from right shoulder to order arms. On the second count, regrasp the rifle with your right hand at the small of the stock in the position of port arms.

## 8. Left Shoulder Arms

a. The command is **LEFT SHOULDER, ARMS.**

b. In coming to left shoulder from order arms, come to port arms in the first two counts (fig. 82). On the third count, place the rifle on your left shoulder with your right hand, keeping your right arm pressed against your body. At the same time, regrasp the butt with your left hand in a manner similar to grasping the butt with your right hand in right shoulder arms (1, fig. 85). On the fourth count, move your right hand to your side as in the position of attention (2, fig. 85).

c. Port arms from left shoulder arms is a two-count movement. On the first count, move your right hand up and across the body and

grasp the small of the stock with your right hand, keeping your right arm pressed against your body (1, fig. 85). On the second count, carry the rifle diagonally across your body with your right hand, and regrasp the balance with your left hand as in the position of port arms (2, fig. 82).

d. Order arms or right shoulder arms from left shoulder arms is a five-count movement. On the first two counts, bring the rifle to port arms. On the last three counts, go to order arms or right shoulder arms as described in paragraphs 3 and 7 above.

## 9. Present Arms

a. The command is **PRESENT, ARMS.**

b. Order arms to present arms is a two-count movement. On the first count, carry the rifle to the center of your body with your right



Figure 85. Counts three and four of left shoulder arms from order arms.

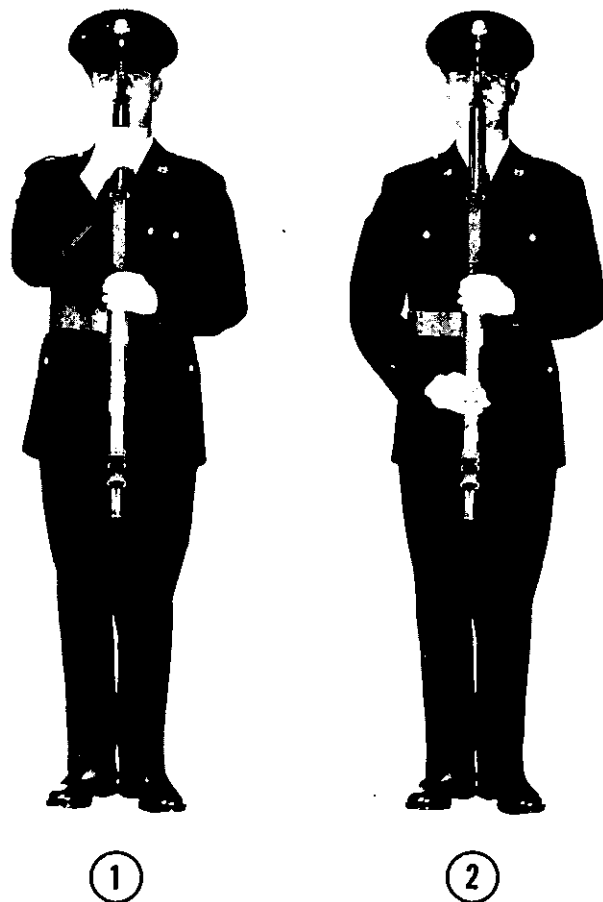


Figure 86. Present arms.

hand, keeping the barrel to the rear and vertical, right elbow down. Grasp the rifle and sling at the balance with your left hand, forearm horizontal, and elbow against your body (1, fig. 86). On the second count, grasp the small of the stock with your right hand (2, fig. 86). The distance of the rifle from your body depends upon the conformation of your body, but it should be approximately 4 inches from your belt.

c. Order arms from present arms is a three-count movement. Execute the first count by grasping the rifle at the front handguard with your right hand (1, fig. 86), keeping your elbow down and at your side. On the second count, lower your rifle with your right hand, completing the second and third counts as in order arms from port arms (fig. 83).

d. Port arms from present arms is executed in one count. Raise and twist the rifle with your right hand, moving the muzzle to the left, and regrasp the rifle at the balance with your left hand.

e. Present arms from port arms is executed in one count. Lower and twist the rifle with your right hand, moving the rifle to a vertical position, and regrasp it at the balance with your left hand.

## 10. Inspection Arms

a. The command is INSPECTION, ARMS. Inspection arms is a four-count movement, and is executed only from the position of order arms.

b. The first two counts are the same as in going to port arms (1 and 2, fig. 82). On the third count, release your left hand from the balance and, with your fingers closed, palm in, forearm horizontal, place your left thumb on the operating rod handle and push it to the rear until it is caught by the operating rod catch. At the same time, lower your head and eyes enough to look into the receiver (fig. 87). On the fourth count, having found the receiver empty or having emptied it, raise your head and eyes to the front and at the same time regrasp the rifle at the balance with your left hand.

c. Port arms is the only command that may be given from inspection arms. On the *preparatory command*, with your fingers extended



Figure 87. Third count of inspection arms.

and joined, palm in, place the rear edge of your right hand against the operating rod handle and move it slightly to the rear. Then depress the follower with your right thumb and allow the bolt to move forward slightly, overriding the rear portion of the follower. At the command ARMS, remove your right thumb from the receiver and at the same time release the operating rod handle. Pull the trigger with your forefinger and regrasp the small of the stock in the position of port arms.

d. Inspection arms is executed when forming and dismissing the unit as a safety precaution.

## 11. Rifle Salute

a. This movement may be executed from order (fig. 88), trail, right shoulder arms (fig.



*Figure 88. Rifle salute at order arms.*

89), or left shoulder arms. For instructional purposes, the command **RIFLE, SALUTE**, may be used. The rifle salute is a two-count movement.

b. When at order arms, on the first count, move your left arm across your body and with your forearm and wrist straight, fingers and thumb extended and joined, palm down, touch the rifle with the first joint of your forefinger at a point between the stacking swivel and the muzzle (fig. 88). If not in ranks, turn your head and eyes toward the person or color saluted. On the second count, move your left hand away to your side and turn your head and eyes to the front.

c. When saluting at trail arms, the movements are identical with those for saluting at



*Figure 89. Rifle salute at right shoulder arms.*

order arms. However, hold the rifle in the trail arms position.

d. At right shoulder arms, execute the movement by moving your left arm across your chest and touching the first joint of your forefinger to the rear of the receiver. Hold your left elbow so that the lower edge of your left forearm is horizontal. Hold your fingers, thumb, and wrist as described in b above, with your palm down (fig. 89). The second count of the rifle salute at right shoulder arms is similar to the return from the rifle salute at order arms.

e. At left shoulder arms, execute the movement by moving your right arm across your chest and touching the first joint of your forefinger to the rear of the receiver. Hold

your right elbow so that the lower edge of your forearm is horizontal. Hold the fingers, thumb, and wrist as described in *b* above, with your palm down as in figure 88. The second count of the rifle salute at left shoulder arms is similar to the return from the rifle salute at right shoulder arms.

*f.* The next to the last count of right shoulder and order arms is not a rifle salute but is used for steadying the rifle. The rifle salutes are executed with the palm of your hand down and the side of the first joint of your forefinger touching the rifle.

## 12. Sling and Unsling Arms

*a.* The command SLING, ARMS is given only from ORDER, ARMS, or UNSLING, ARMS. This movement is not executed in cadence. If the



Figure 90. Sling arms.

sling is not adjusted, at the *command of execution*, place the butt of the rifle on your right hip and cradle the rifle in the crook of your right arm. Adjust the sling with both hands and then sling the rifle on your right shoulder in the most convenient manner. When at sling arms, grasp the sling with your right hand, keep your right forearm horizontal, and hold the barrel of the rifle vertical (fig. 90). If the sling is already adjusted at the command ARMS, sling the rifle in the most convenient manner.

*b.* The command UNSLING, ARMS, is given only from position of sling arms. At the *command of execution*, unsling the rifle and bring it to the position of unsling arms, steadying the rifle with your left hand. The positions of order arms and unsling arms are the same except that at unsling arms the sling is loose.

*c.* Before precise movements of the manual may be executed, the command ADJUST, SLINGS, must be given. At the command SLINGS, tighten the sling from the position described in *a* above.

*d.* To salute while at sling arms, on the command ARMS, of PRESENT, ARMS, grasp the sling with your left hand to steady the rifle. Keep the palm of your left hand to the rear and forearm horizontal. At the same time release the sling with your right hand and execute the first count of hand salute, as described in paragraph 3 above. At the command ARMS, of ORDER, ARMS, move your right hand and arm to your side as in the position of attention and then resume the original position of sling arms.

*e.* Execute parade rest and at ease while at sling arms in the manner described for order arms, but keep the rifle slung, held with your right hand. When the command REST is given, you may unsling the rifle. At the *preparatory command* of SQUAD or PLATOON, take the position of parade rest at sling arms.

## 13. Fix and Unfix Bayonets

*a.* The command FIX, BAYONETS, is given at order arms.

*b.* At the command BAYONETS, when the bayonet scabbard is on your belt, move the muzzle of the rifle to your left front and grasp



*Figure 91. Withdrawing or replacing the bayonet.*

the rifle at the front handguard with your left hand. Then unfasten the snap on the scabbard and grasp the bayonet with your right hand, as shown in figure 91. Draw the bayonet from the scabbard. Glancing down, turn the point of the bayonet upward and fix the bayonet on the muzzle. Then resume the position of order arms.

c. The command UNFIX, BAYONETS, is given at order arms.

d. At the command BAYONETS, when the bayonet scabbard is on your belt, move the rifle to your left hand as when fixing bayonets. Glancing down, grasp the handle of the bayonet with your right hand and press the bayonet catch spring with the inside of your forefinger. Raise the bayonet vertically until the handle is about a foot above the muzzle of

the rifle. Then, keeping your eyes on the bayonet point, drop the point to the left, turning the back of your hand toward your body, and return the bayonet to its scabbard. Resume the position of order arms and fasten the snap on the bayonet scabbard with your left hand.

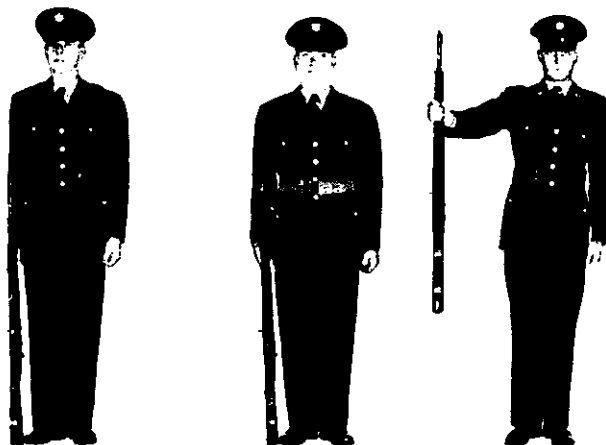
e. When the bayonet is carried other than on the belt, fix and unfix bayonets in the most convenient manner upon receiving the commands.

f. The movements are not executed in cadence.

#### **14. To Stack Arms**

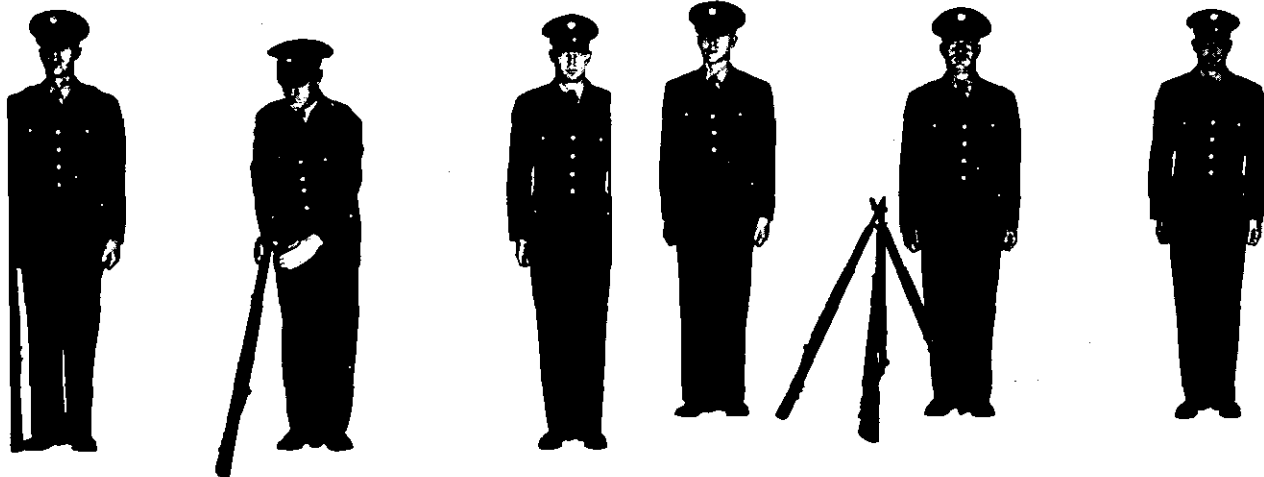
a. The members of the squad stack arms from their positions in line at normal interval on the command STACK, ARMS. After the squad counts off, the commander designates the stackmen by numbers before giving the command to stack arms. Only those riflemen with other riflemen on each side of them can be designated as stackmen.

b. At the command ARMS, the man on the left of the stackmen grasps his rifle at the lower portion of the front handguard and passes it in a vertical position to the right front (approximately 30°) to the stackman, who grasps it with his left hand at the upper portion of the front handguard. The stackman places the butt of the rifle between his feet, with the barrel to the front, muzzle outward,



①

*Figure 92. Stack arms.*



③  
Figure 92—Continued.

and with the thumb and forefinger of his left hand raises the stacking swivel. He then swings the butt of his own rifle 2 feet in front and 6 inches to the right of his right toe (2, fig. 92). At the same time, he shifts his right hand to the stacking swivel of his rifle and engages it with that of the left rifle. The stackman's rifle is on the right.

c. The man on the right of the stackman steps to the left with his left foot, keeping his right foot in place. At the same time he bends to the left front, regrasping his weapon

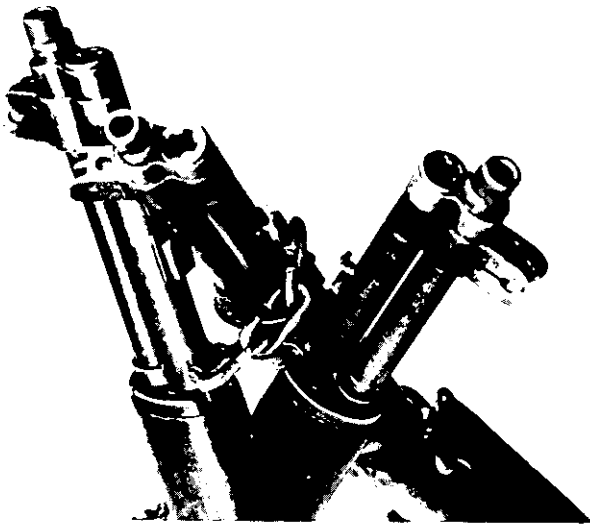
with his left hand at the front handguard and his right hand at the small of the stock. He then slides his left hand up to manipulate the stacking swivel, engaging it with the free hook of the swivel on the stackman's rifle (3, fig. 92). He rotates the rifle outward so that the barrel rests in the angle formed by the other two rifles and above the bayonet stud on the left rifle (5, fig. 92). He pulls the butt toward him until the stack is tight and the butt is in line with the butt of the rifle between the stackman's feet. He then lowers the butt to the ground and resumes the position of attention (4, fig. 92).

d. Other rifles, carbines, or automatic rifles are passed to the nearest stack on the right. When passing extra rifles to the stack, grasp the front handguard with your right hand and, holding the rifle vertical, fully extend your arm to your right front as shown in 1, figure 92. When the man on your right has grasped the rifle at the balance with his left hand, release your right hand and resume the position of attention. When you have received a rifle from the man on your left, keep it vertical and move it in front of you, with your left hand at the balance; grasp the front handguard with your right hand and, if you are not the stackman, pass it to your right as described above. If you are the stackman, place the rifle on the stack, trigger guard outward, at a sufficient angle from the vertical to keep it in place.



⑤  
Figure 92—Continued.





⑤  
*Figure 92—Continued.*

## 15. To Take Arms

*a.* The squad, in position in line behind the stacks, takes arms at the command TAKE, ARMS.

*b.* At the command ARMS, the stackman passes each extra rifle toward its bearer. The

rifles are held in the manner described for passing them to the stack (left hands at the balance; right hands at the front handguard). When the weapons are received, their bearers resume the position of order arms.

*c.* When the extra rifles have been passed, the stackman grasps his rifle and the rifle of the man on his left. The man on the right of the stackman steps to the left as in stacking, secures his rifle, and resumes the position of order arms.

*d.* The stackman then disengages the two remaining rifles, grasps the left rifle at the lower part of the front handguard and passes it to his left front. The man on his left grasps it at the front handguard with his right hand and lowers the rifle to the ground, resuming order arms. The stackman resumes order arms after the man on his left has received his rifle.

*e.* Each man comes to order arms by guiding and steadying the piece with his left hand as in the next to the last count of order arms (fig. 83). If armed with the automatic rifle or the carbine, assume the position of sling arms.

## APPENDIX D

### MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE CARBINE

---

#### 1. General

a. Except when otherwise prescribed, carry the carbine slung over your right shoulder in a position similar to sling arms for the rifle (fig. 93). When armed with the carbine, remain at attention during the manual of arms.

b. During marches and field exercises, when left shoulder arms is commanded to ease fatigue, change the carbine to your left shoulder without cadence.

c. When at ease or rest is commanded, keep the carbine slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. Execute parade rest with the carbine at sling arms, as described for the rifle at sling arms.

e. When armed with the carbine, give the hand salute as prescribed in paragraph 47d.

#### 2. Inspection Arms

a. INSPECTION, ARMS is commanded when at sling arms. At the command of execution, grasp the sling with your left hand above your right hand (1, fig. 94), and lift the carbine from your shoulder. At the same time, withdraw your right arm from between the carbine and the sling. Grasp the small of the stock with your right hand and bring the weapon across your body as in port arms with the rifle. Press the magazine lock to the left with the forefinger of your right hand and, at the same time, withdraw the magazine from the receiver with your left hand. Insert it behind your belt in front of your left hip with the open end down and the front of the magazine to the right (2, fig. 94). Assume the position of port arms, which is similar to that for the rifle. With the forefinger of your right hand, pull the operating slide all the way back and press down on the operating slide stop with

your right thumb, locking the operating slide in its rear position. At the same time, lower your head and eyes to glance into the receiver (3, fig. 94). Having found the chamber empty or having emptied it, raise your head and eyes to the front and regrasp the small of the stock in the position of port arms.



*Figure 93. Sling arms with the carbine.*

b. Inspection arms with the carbine is not a



Figure 94. Inspection arms.



Figure 94—Continued.

precision movement and is not executed as part of the manual of arms with the rifle, except when your unit is formed and dismissed, or for an inspecting officer.

c. At inspection arms, the only command is **PORT, ARMS**. At the *preparatory command* **PORT**, pull the operating slide to the rear with your right forefinger to disengage the operating slide stop. At the command **ARMS**, release the operating slide, pull the trigger with your forefinger, and regrasp the small of the stock with your right hand. Replace

the magazine with your left hand and resume port arms (4, fig. 94).

### 3. To Resume Sling Arms

a. Execute **SLING, ARMS** on the commands **ORDER (RIGHT SHOULDER), ARMS** after **INSPECTION, ARMS**, and **PORT, ARMS** have been given.

b. At the *command of execution*, grasp the sling with your left hand, thrust your right arm through the sling, and assume the position of sling arms. This movement is not executed in cadence.

## APPENDIX E

### MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE BROWNING AUTOMATIC RIFLE

---

#### 1. General

a. Except when otherwise prescribed, carry the automatic rifle slung over your right shoulder in a position similar to that prescribed for the rifle (fig. 95).



Figure 95. Inspection arms with the automatic rifle.

b. During marches and field exercises, when left shoulder arms is commanded to ease fatigue, change the automatic rifle to your left shoulder without cadence. Otherwise, remain at sling arms during the manual of arms, except for inspection arms when your unit is formed and dismissed.

c. When AT EASE is commanded, keep the automatic rifle slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. When REST is commanded, you may unsling the automatic rifle. When the *preparatory command* SQUAD or PLATOON is given, sling the automatic rifle and come to parade rest.

e. When PARADE, REST is commanded, keep the automatic rifle at sling arms. Execute the position as with the rifle (para 47e).

f. When armed with the automatic rifle, give the hand salute as described in paragraph 47d.

#### 2. Inspection Arms

a. INSPECTION, ARMS is commanded when at sling arms. At the command ARMS, grasp the magazine with your left hand and release the magazine catch with your right hand. Withdraw the magazine with your left hand and place it in your belt, open end down, the front of the magazine toward the right. Pull back the operating handle with your left hand to cock the piece and then slide the operating handle forward. Regrasp the magazine and hold it in the palm of your left hand (fig. 95).

b. At the commands INSERT, MAGAZINE, or PORT, ARMS, pull the trigger on the *preparatory command*. On the *command of execution*, replace the magazine and resume the position of sling arms.

## APPENDIX F

### MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE M14A1 RIFLE

#### 1. General

a. Except when otherwise prescribed, carry the M14A1 slung over your shoulder in a position similar to that prescribed for the M14 (fig. 24). Figure 96 lists the basic nomenclature of the rifle.

b. During marches and field exercises, when left shoulder arms is commanded to ease fati-

gue, change the M14A1 to your left shoulder without cadence. Otherwise, remain at sling arms during the manual of arms when your unit is formed and dismissed, or for an inspecting officer.

c. When AT EASE is commanded, keep the M14A2 slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. When REST is commanded, you may un-

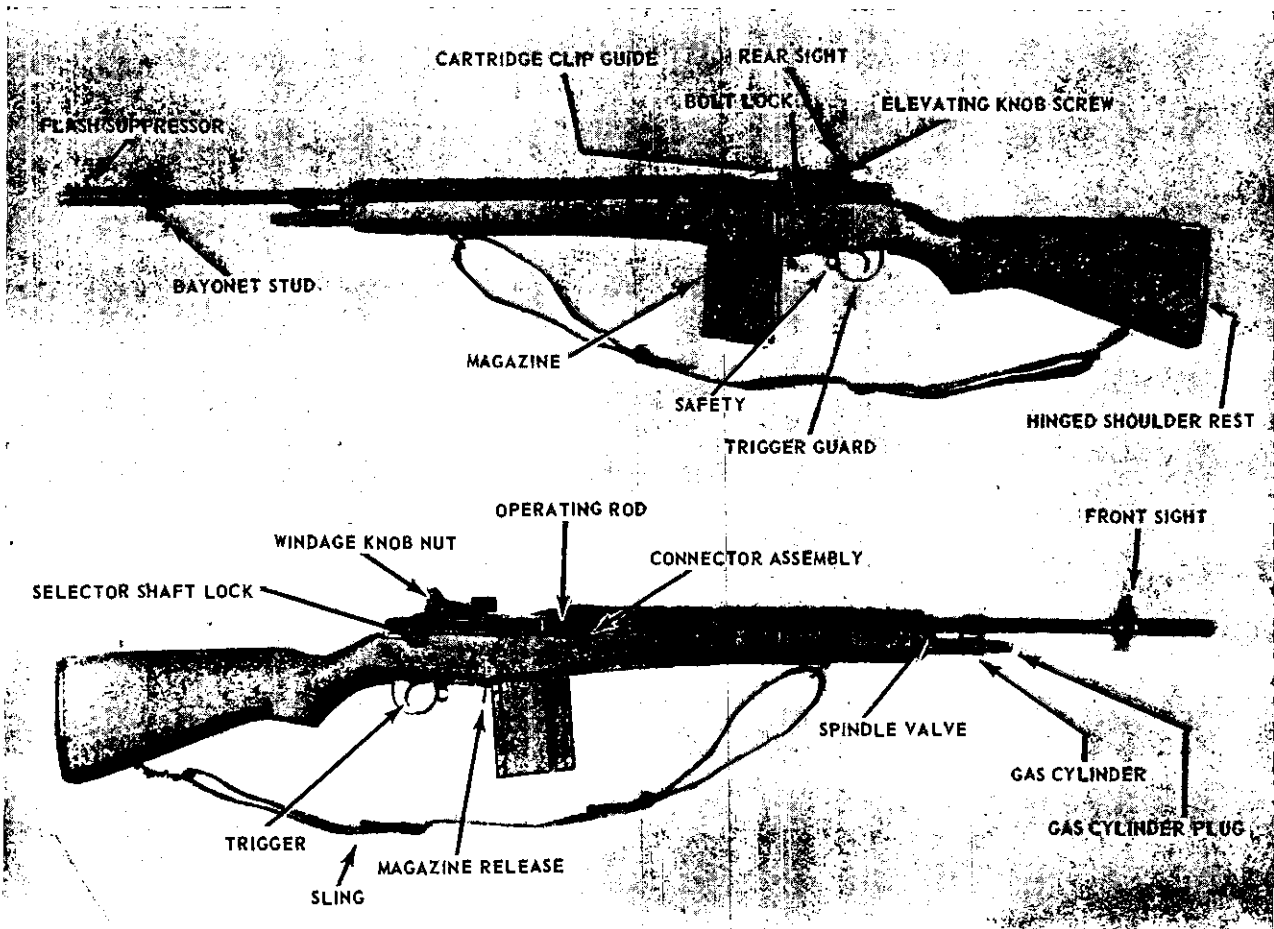


Figure 96. Nomenclature of the M14A1.

sling the M14A1. When the preparatory command, SQUAD or PLATOON is given sling the M14A1 and come to parade rest.

e. When PARADE, REST is commanded, keep the M14A1 at sling arms. Execute the position as with the M14 (para 47e).

f. When armed with the M14A1 give the hand salute as described in paragraph 47d.

## 2. Inspection Arms

a. The command is INSPECTION, ARMS, and it is executed only from sling arms.

b. Inspection arms is executed without the magazine, as described below. At the command of execution grasp the sling with the left hand at a point near the shoulder (1, fig. 97). Lift the rifle from the shoulder, withdrawing the right arm from between the rifle and sling. Grasp the rifle at the small of the stock with your right hand, release the sling with your left hand, and raise the front handgrip to the lock position. Regrasp the rifle at the balance as in the position of port arms (2, fig. 97). Release the grasp of your right hand at the small of the stock. With your fingers extended and joined, bring the knife edge of your hand in contact with the operating rod handle, with the thumb on the opposite side of the receiver (3, fig. 97). The operating rod handle is pressed sharply to the rear, opening the bolt. The bolt lock is depressed with the thumb so that the bolt is locked in the rearmost position. At the same time, the head and eyes are lowered to check the receiver (4, fig. 97). Having found the receiver empty or having emptied it, the head and eyes are raised to the front and the rifle is regrasped at the small of the stock, as in port arms.

c. Port arms is the only command that is given from inspection arms. On the *preparatory command*, the grip on the small of the stock is released. With the thumb on the back of the receiver and the index finger hooked over the operating rod handle, pull it slightly to the rear so that the bolt lock will be released (5, fig. 97). At the command ARMS, the operating rod handle is released, the trigger is pulled,



Step 1  
Figure 97. Inspection arms.



Step 2  
*Figure 97—Continued.*

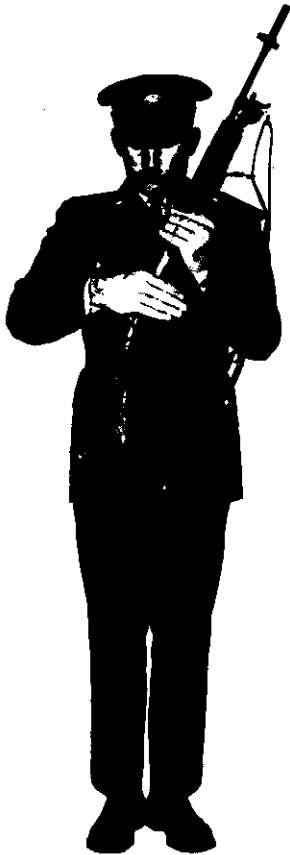
and the small of the stock regrasped with the right hand. Release the grasp with the left hand and place the forefinger on the bottom of the front handgrip, the thumb up under the



Step 3  
*Figure 97—Continued.*

front handgrip and touching the lock. Pull the lock toward the forefinger until it disengages, press the front handgrip down along the stock and regrasp the weapon at the balance with the left hand.

*d.* At the command ORDER, ARMS grasp the upper part of the sling with the left hand (6, fig. 97) and return to sling arms.



Step 4  
*Figure 97—Continued.*





Step 5  
*Figure 97—Continued.*



Step 6.  
*Figure 97—Continued.*

## APPENDIX G

### MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE GRENADE LAUNCHER, M79

---

#### 1. General

a. Carry the grenade launcher slung over your right shoulder in a position similar to sling arms for the rifle (fig. 98). When armed with the grenade launcher, remain at attention during the manual of arms.

b. During marches and field exercises, when left shoulder arms is commanded to ease fatigue, change the grenade launcher to your left shoulder without cadence.

c. When AT EASE or REST is commanded, keep the grenade launcher slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. Execute PARADE, REST or STAND AT, EASE with the grenade launcher at sling arms as described for the rifle at sling arms.

e. When armed with the grenade launcher, render the hand salute as prescribed in paragraph 47d.

#### 2. Inspection Arms

a. INSPECTION, ARMS is executed from sling arms. At the *command of execution*, grasp the sling with the left hand at the right shoulder (1, fig. 99), and lift the grenade launcher from your shoulder. At the same time, withdraw the right arm from between the sling and the grenade launcher. Grasp the small of the stock with your right hand and bring the grenade launcher across the body in a manner similar to port arms with the rifle. Release the sling with the left hand and grasp the fore-end assembly between the barrel band and the fulcrum pin (2, fig. 99). With the thumb of the right hand, press the latch lever to the right (outward) until it disengages from the barrel locking lug. Using both hands in a breaking motion, force the receiver in an upward motion to disengage the barrel group



Figure 98. The grenade launcher at sling arms.

from its seat in the receiver group. At the same time, lower the head and eyes to glance at the chamber (3, fig. 99). Having found the chamber empty or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front and regrasp the small of the stock in the position of port arms (4, fig. 99).

b. Inspection arms with the grenade launcher is not a precision movement and is not, executed as part of the manual of arms, except when your unit is formed and dismissed, or for an inspecting officer.

c. At inspection arms, the only command is PORT, ARMS. At the command ARMS, by using both hands in a breaking motion, force the receiver group and chamber downward until the latch lever engages with the barrel locking lug. With the thumb of the right hand, push the safety button forward, pull the trigger with your forefinger, and resume port arms.

d. The grenade launcher nomenclature is shown in figure 100.

### 3. To Resume Sling Arms

a. Execute SLING, ARMS on the commands, ORDER, (RIGHT SHOULDER) ARMS after INSPECTION, ARMS, and PORT, ARMS have been given.

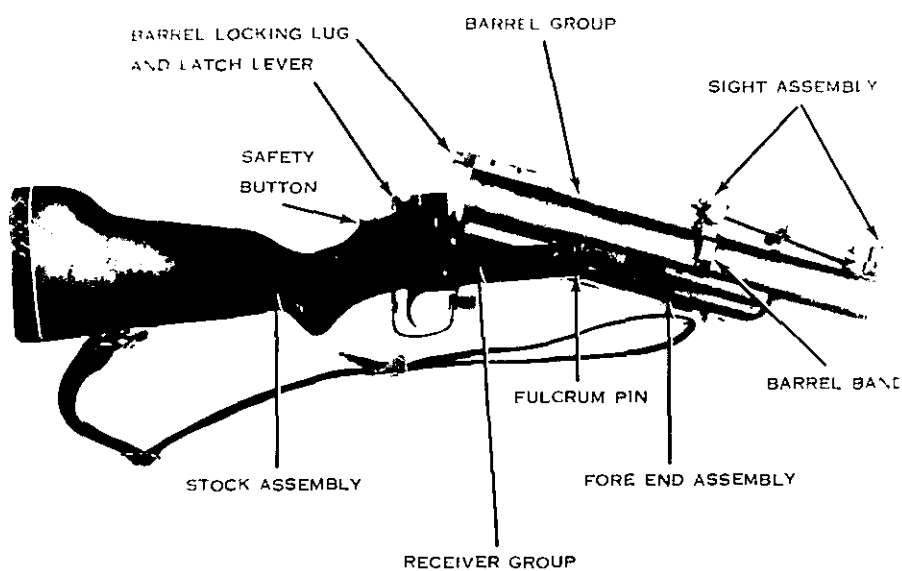


Figure 99. Inspection arms.



Figure 99—Continued.

b. At the command of execution, grasp the sling with your left hand, thrust the right arm through the sling, and assume the position of sling arms. This movement is not executed in cadence.



*Figure 100. Nomenclature of the 40-mm grenade launcher, M79.*

## APPENDIX H

### EXAMPLES OF CEREMONIES

---

#### Section I. INTRODUCTION

##### 1. General

This appendix is added for the purpose of assisting the user in planning and conducting those ceremonies common throughout the Army. The outline and sequence of events described in this appendix does not necessarily fit the needs of all Army units, therefore this portion of the manual is flexible and may be applied to meet the needs of the user.

##### 2. Ceremonies

The following ceremonies are included in this appendix:

- a. Reveille .....Section II
- b. Command Reveille .....Section III
- c. Muster .....Section IV
- d. Retreat .....Section V
- e. Command Retreat .....Section VI

##### 3. The Commander

The commander will designate the time and place for these ceremonies to be conducted. He will also determine whether or not they will be conducted by his unit.

##### 4. Explanation

An explanation of each of these ceremonies is contained in the general paragraph of each section. When applying these ceremonies, where movements are named, the user must refer to the applicable portion of this manual for a description on how to execute the movements. For a definition of supplementary commands see paragraph 10, chapter 2. When a review or presentation of honors is planned in conjunction with these ceremonies, refer to chapters 9 and 10.

#### Section II. REVEILLE

##### 5. General

Reveille is a ceremony in which the unit pays honors to the National Flag when it is raised on the flagpole in the morning. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the commander. The installation commander will set the time for sounding reveille.

##### 6. Sequence of Events

- a. Commanders form the unit facing the flag, when possible.
- b. Commanders should have the unit formed 5 minutes prior to the sounding of reveille.
- c. At 4 minutes prior to the sounding of reveille, the adjutant or other appointed officer (normally the duty officer) takes his position

centered on the line of troops and commands the unit to *attention*, and then commands REPORT.

d. All subunits (companies, batteries, or troops) report in succession from right to left, "Sir, B Company all present or accounted for," or "Sir, C Company, (so many) men absent." Salutes are exchanged with each report.

e. The adjutant then commands PARADE, REST and then executes parade rest himself. Approximately 30 seconds prior to the sounding of reveille, the adjutant commands the unit to attention, and commands PRESENT, ARMS so the unit is at present arms when the first note of reveille is sounded.

f. After the last note of reveille has sounded,

the adjutant commands **ORDER, ARMS** and **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR COMPANIES**. This terminates the ceremony.

*Note.* When a unit conducts the reveille ceremony, not as a member of a major command, battalion, or company, the sequence of events remain the same except the unit commander gives all commands.

### Section III. COMMAND REVEILLE

#### 7. General

Command reveille is the reveille ceremony conducted with all members of the command present. Normally, the command reveille is conducted by a battalion or larger size unit.

#### 8. Sequence of Events

a. The unit is formed in line formation facing the flag, if possible. (Subunits may be in mass formation.)

b. Subunits will be commanded to attention at the approach of the commander and his staff.

c. The commander of troops forms his staff in line at the flank of the line of troops.

d. The commander of troops takes his post two steps in front of and centered on his staff and commands **FORWARD, MARCH**, and marches his staff to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. The commander of troops will give the proper commands so as to halt his staff facing the line of troops.

e. As soon as the staff is halted by the commander of troops, the adjutant moves (without command) from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders.

f. The adjutant commands **PRESENT, ARMS**, faces the commander of troops, salutes and reports "Sir, the battalion (brigade, etc.) is formed."

g. The commander of troops returns the salute and directs the adjutant to **POST**.

h. The adjutant moves to his position as right flank member of the staff.

i. The commander of troops commands **ORDER, ARMS** as soon as the adjutant is in position.

j. The commander of troops directs the adjutant (over his right shoulder) **RECEIVE THE REPORT**.

k. The adjutant moves to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders and commands, **REPORT**.

l. Unit commanders salute and report in succession from right to left: "Sir, A Company, All Present or Accounted for."

m. The adjutant returns each unit commander's salute.

n. After all unit commanders have reported, the adjutant faces the commander of troops, salutes, and reports, "Sir, All Present or Accounted for."

o. The commander of troops returns the salute and directs the adjutant, **PUBLISH THE ORDERS**.

p. The adjutant faces about, without saluting, and commands, **ATTENTION TO ORDERS**. The adjutant then reads any orders or makes any announcements the commander of troops desires to publish.

q. The adjutant, upon completion of the publishing of orders, faces about and takes his post with the staff without saluting.

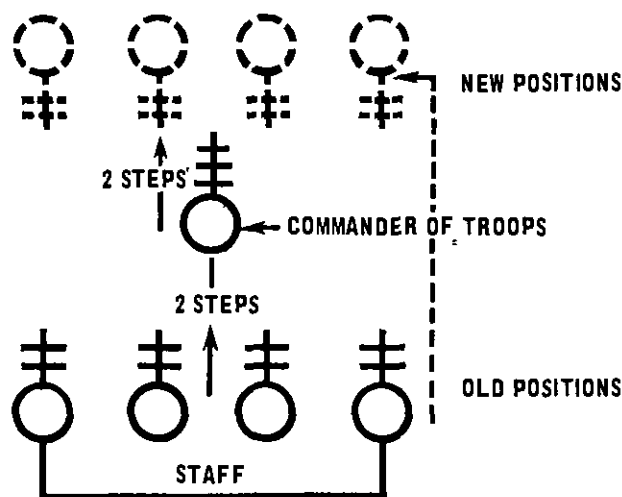


Figure 101. Command reveille.

r. When the adjutant is in position, the senior staff member commands, RIGHT, FACE. COLUMN, LEFT, and COLUMN, LEFT. When the staff is centered on the commander of troops, he then commands STAFF, HALT (fig. 101). LEFT, FACE.

s. The commander of troops commands PRESENT, ARMS, executes about face, and commands STAFF, PRESENT, ARMS. Reveille is then sounded either by record or field music as the flag is raised. After the last note of music, the

commander of troops commands STAFF, ORDER, ARMS, executes about face, and commands the unit ORDER, ARMS and then, TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS.

t. The unit commanders salute.

u. The commander of troops returns all salutes with one salute.

v. The commander of troops marches his staff away or dismisses them at this time.

## **Section IV. MUSTER**

### **9. General**

Muster is a company ceremonial formation to call the company roll to determine if all persons are present.

### **10. Sequence of Events**

a. The first sergeant forms the unit in line formation.

b. The first sergeant directs PREPARE FOR MUSTER.

c. The platoon or section sergeants face about, without saluting and command OPEN, RANKS, MARCH.

d. The first sergeant commands PARADE, REST and begins calling the roll. (Either alphabetically or by section or platoon.)

e. Each member assumes the position of attention, answers "Here Sergeant," takes one step forward, and returns to parade rest as his name is called.

f. The first sergeant calls the entire company's roll.

g. After the roll has been called, the first sergeant commands ATTENTION and directs the platoon sergeants CLOSE, RANKS.

h. The platoon sergeants command CLOSE, RANKS, MARCH, and then command BACKWARD, MARCH, moving their unit backward into the same position as before open ranks was given.

i. After all platoons are back in their original positions, the first sergeant commands, POST, waits until the platoon sergeants are in position, faces about, and awaits the arrival of the unit commander.

j. The unit commander moves to a position three steps in front of the first sergeant.

k. The first sergeant salutes and reports to the commander in one of the following methods: "Sir, all present," or "Sir, (so many) men absent."

l. The commander returns the first sergeant's salute and the first sergeant takes his post by the most direct route. This completes the muster.

## **Section V. RETREAT**

### **11. General**

Retreat is a ceremony in which the unit pays honors to the National Flag when it is lowered and removed from the flagpole in the evening. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the unit commanders.

### **12. Sequence of Events**

a. The commander forms the unit facing the flag, if possible.

b. Commanders should have the unit formed 5 minutes prior to the sounding of retreat.

c. At 4 minutes prior to the sounding or retreat, the adjutant or other appointed officer takes his position centered, on the line of troops and commands **BATTALION ATTENTION** and then **PARADE, REST**.

d. The adjutant executes parade rest and waits until the last note of retreat has sounded. Then he commands **BATTALION ATTENTION** and **PRESENT, ARMS**, so the unit is at present arms when the first note of *To the Colors* or *The National Anthem* is sounded.

e. At the last note of *To the Colors* (*The National Anthem*) the adjutant commands **ORDER, ARMS**, and **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS** (companies, batteries) terminating the retreat formation.

f. Unit commanders render the hand salute.

g. The adjutant returns all salutes with one salute.

*Note.* When a subordinate unit stands retreat, not as a part of a major command, battalion, or company, the sequence is the same except the unit commander gives the commands.

## Section VI. COMMAND RETREAT

### 13. General

Command retreat is a retreat ceremony conducted with all members of the command present. Normally the command retreat is conducted by a battalion or larger size unit.

### 14. Sequence of Events

a. The unit is formed in line formation facing the flag, if possible. Subunits may be in mass formation.

b. Subunits will be brought to attention at the approach of the commander and his staff, or at a predesignated signal.

c. The commander of troops forms his staff in line, takes his position two steps in front of the staff, and marches them to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. He will give the proper commands to his staff to have himself and his staff facing the line of troops when halted.

d. The adjutant (without command) moves from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders as soon as the staff is at the halt.

e. The adjutant commands **REPORT**. All unit commanders salute and report in succession from right to left, "Sir, A Company all present or accounted for," or "Sir, A Company (so many) absent." The adjutant returns each salute.

f. The adjutant then commands **PRESENT, ARMS**, faces about, salutes and reports to the commander of troops, "Sir, the battalion (brigade) is formed."

g. The commander of troops returns the salute and directs the adjutant, **POST**.

h. The adjutant moves to his position in the staff.

i. The commander of troops commands **ORDER, ARMS**.

j. The senior member of the staff will give the commands to move the staff from behind the commander of troops to a position two steps in front of the commander of troops.

k. The commander of troops commands **PARADE, REST**. Retreat is sounded.

l. After the last note of Retreat the commander of troops commands **ATTENTION** and **PRESENT, ARMS**. He then executes about face and present arms. *To the Colors* or *The National Anthem* is sounded as the flag is lowered.

m. After the last note of *To the Colors* or *The National Anthem* the commander of troops executes order arms and about face. He then commands **ORDER, ARMS**, and **TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS**. The unit commanders render the hand salute; this terminates the ceremony.



## APPENDIX I

### CIVILIAN PARTICIPATION IN MILITARY CEREMONIES

---

#### 1. General

The purpose of this appendix is to serve as a guide for commanders in planning and conducting military ceremonies with civilian participation. As in appendix H, this guidance is flexible and may be modified to meet the needs of the user.

#### 2. Types of Ceremonies

Civilians may participate in three general categories of military ceremonies:

- a. Ceremonies in which civilians present awards.
- b. Ceremonies in which civilians receive awards.
- c. Ceremonies in which civilians are honored.

#### 3. Civilians Presenting Awards

This category includes those occasions on which the award is made to another civilian and those in which the award is presented to military personnel. These ceremonies will be conducted as outlined in chapter 10 with the following exceptions:

- a. The reviewing officer will be accompanied to the reviewing stand by the civilian. The reviewing officer may relinquish the place of honor to the civilian.
- b. The civilian should participate in the ceremony in the same manner as the reviewing officer, accompanying him throughout the sequence of events.
- c. Because of lack of familiarity with military ceremonies, it may be necessary to brief the civilian before or during the conduct of the ceremony.

#### 4. Civilians Receiving Awards

a. Conduct of these ceremonies should be guided by paragraphs 124 through 130 with the following exceptions to paragraph 129:

(1) Civilians should be initially positioned to the right of the reviewing stand and not marched forward with the military personnel, if any, to receive awards.

(2) When the colors are brought forward (para 129b(5)) civilians will move to a position five steps in front of and centered on the colors, or to the left of military personnel being decorated.

(3) When the awardees are posted (para 129b(7)), civilians will move to a position in line with and to the left of the military awardees. If there are no military awardees the civilians will move to the left of the reviewing stand as stated in the paragraph.

b. When this ceremony is conducted for the purpose of presenting posthumous awards, other types of awards should not be incorporated. It may be desirable to have an escort officer accompany relatives receiving posthumous awards.

#### 5. Reviews in Honor of Civilians

a. Government employees, private citizens and local, state, national or foreign officials may be honored by a review.

b. Consult AR 600-25 for special honors due certain officials. Other civilians may be honored as noted in paragraph 3a above, by participating in the place of or with the reviewing officer.

# INDEX

|                                 | Paragraph | Page |   | Paragraph | Page  |
|---------------------------------|-----------|------|---|-----------|-------|
| Awards .....                    | 129       | 93   | Ceremonies—Continued.                   |           |       |
| Battalion, brigade:             |           |      | Funerals—Continued.                     |           |       |
| Battalion:                      |           |      | March in review .....                   | 130       | 95    |
| Dismiss .....                   | 120       | 87   | Parades:                                |           |       |
| Formations .....                | 115       | 84   | Ceremonial battalion .....              | 133       | 97    |
| Forming columns .....           | 116       | 85   | Ceremonial brigade .....                | 134       | 98    |
| Form in line with companies     |           |      | Presentation, honors .....              | 127       | 92    |
| in line .....                   | 117       | 86   | Retreat .....                           | 131       | 96    |
| Form in line with companies     |           |      | Reviewing party .....                   | 126       | 91    |
| in mass .....                   | 118       | 86   | Troop formation .....                   | 125       | 90    |
| Form in mass .....              | 119       | 87   | Change step .....                       | 31        | 16    |
| Brigade:                        |           |      | Colors .....                            | 138-146   | 101   |
| Dismissing .....                | 123       | 88   | Commands:                               |           |       |
| Formations .....                | 121       | 87   | Two-part .....                          | 8         | 7     |
| Forming .....                   | 122       | 87   | Supplementary .....                     | 10        | 7     |
| Commands, orders .....          | 113       | 84   | Combined .....                          | 9         | 7     |
| Introduction .....              | 112       | 83   | Directives .....                        | 11        | 8     |
| Staff .....                     | 114       | 84   | Voice control .....                     | 13-15     | 8     |
| Cadence .....                   | 16        | 10   | Cadence .....                           | 16        | 10    |
| Ceremonies:                     |           |      | Snap .....                              | 17        | 10    |
| Color escorts .....             | 136       | 99   | Company:                                |           |       |
| Colors:                         |           |      | Alining .....                           | 94        | 70    |
| Guard movement .....            | 141, 142  | 102  | Alining mass formation .....            | 101       | 72    |
| Guards .....                    | 140       | 101  | Change direction .....                  | 97        | 71    |
| Introduction .....              | 138       | 101  | Change direction in mass .....          | 102       | 72    |
| Salutes by brigade colors ..... | 139       | 101  | Change interval .....                   | 98        | 72    |
| Positions:                      |           |      | Company mass .....                      | 100       | 72    |
| At carry .....                  | 144       | 104  | Correct distance .....                  | 105       | 73    |
| At order .....                  | 143       | 104  | Dismissing .....                        | 93        | 70    |
| At parade rest .....            | 145       | 104  | Forming .....                           | 94        | 70    |
| Color salute .....              | 146       | 104  | Form column of twos .....               | 99        | 72    |
| Decoration, awards .....        | 129       | 94   | Forming column from mass .....          | 103       | 73    |
| Funerals:                       |           |      | Forming column of platoons .....        | 104       | 73    |
| Arrangements .....              | 157       | 109  | Forming in column .....                 | 96        | 71    |
| Cannon salute .....             | 153       | 108  | Open, close ranks .....                 | 95        | 71    |
| Ceremonial firing .....         | 159       | 109  | Organization .....                      | 91        | 67    |
| Chaplain duties .....           | 156       | 109  | Decorations .....                       | 129       | 94    |
| Chapel service .....            | 148       | 105  | Directives .....                        | 11        | 8     |
| Cremated .....                  | 151       | 107  | Distinctness, voice .....               | 14        | 8     |
| Floral tributes .....           | 158, 160, | 109  | Drill instruction .....                 | 4         | 4     |
| 161                             |           |      | Drill terms .....                       | 2, 19     | 3, 11 |
| Graveside .....                 | 149, 150  | 107  | Field equipment display (fig. 46) ..... |           | 78    |
| Introduction .....              | 147       | 104  | Funerals .....                          | 147-161   | 104   |
| Patriotic organizations .....   | 155       | 109  | Guidon, manual for:                     |           |       |
| With aviation .....             | 154       | 109  | Carry .....                             | 64        | 49    |
| Honor guards .....              | 137       | 99   | Introduction .....                      | 62        | 48    |
| Inspection .....                | 128       | 93   | Order .....                             | 62        | 48    |
| Introduction .....              | 124       | 89   | Present .....                           | 65        | 50    |
|                                 |           |      | Raise .....                             | 63        | 48    |

|   | Paragraph | Page |
|---|-----------|------|
| Honor guards .....                      | 137       | 99   |
| Honors, presentation ..                 | 127       | 92   |
| Inflection, voice .....                 | 15        | 9    |
| Inspections:                            |           |      |
| Battalion .....                         | 111       | 81   |
| Ceremonial .....                        | 128       | 93   |
| Company .....                           | 107       | 75   |
| Procedures for weapons, personnel ..... | 108-110   | 75   |
| Instruction, technique ..               | 5         | 5    |
| Marching:                               |           |      |
| Backward .....                          | 29        | 16   |
| Change step .....                       | 31        | 16   |
| Double time in place ..                 | 34        | 17   |
| Facing from a halt .....                | 32        | 16   |
| In place .....                          | 27        | 15   |
| Opposite direction .....                | 30        | 16   |
| Rest movements .....                    | 35        | 17   |
| Steps in .....                          | 24        | 14   |
| With a 10-inch step .....               | 28        | 15   |
| With 15-inch step .....                 | 26        | 15   |
| With 30-inch step .....                 | 25        | 15   |
| With 36-inch step .....                 | 33        | 16   |
| Mounted drill:                          |           |      |
| Base .....                              | 167       | 111  |
| Formations .....                        | 170       | 112  |
| Inspections .....                       | 190,      | 121, |
| 191                                     | 122       |      |
| Intervals, distances ..                 | 168       | 111  |
| Manual of arms .....                    | 165       | 111  |
| Reviews:                                |           |      |
| Formation .....                         | 186       | 119  |
| Inspection .....                        | 187       | 119  |
| March in .....                          | 188       | 119  |
| Preparation .....                       | 185       | 119  |
| Road .....                              | 189       | 120  |
| Signals: Arm, hand ..                   | 183       | 117  |
| Speed .....                             | 169       | 112  |
| The commander ..                        | 166       | 111  |
| Vehicles:                               |           |      |
| Formation .....                         | 173       | 113  |
| Form column, line .....                 | 180       | 114  |
| Form single column .....                | 181       | 116  |
| Forward .....                           | 178       | 114  |
| Halt .....                              | 179       | 114  |
| Load .....                              | 174       | 113  |
| Massed .....                            | 171       | 112  |
| Start engines .....                     | 177       | 114  |
| Unload .....                            | 175       | 113  |
| With troops .....                       | 172       | 113  |
| Weapons disposition ..                  | 164       | 111  |
| Parades:                                |           |      |
| Battalion .....                         | 133       | 97   |
| Brigade .....                           | 134       | 98   |
| Pistol, manual of arms:                 |           |      |
| Inspection arms .....                   | 55        | 43   |
| Return pistol .....                     | 56        | 45   |

|                                      | Paragraph | Page |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|------|
| Platoon:                             |           |      |
| Alining .....                        | 85        | 64   |
| Change direction .....               | 88        | 65   |
| Change interval .....                | 88        | 65   |
| Column of twos .....                 | 90        | 66   |
| Drill terms .....                    | 80        | 61   |
| Form a file .....                    | 89        | 65   |
| Formations .....                     | 83        | 63   |
| Forming, dismissing ..               | 84        | 63   |
| Guide's rules .....                  | 81        | 62   |
| Open, close ranks ..                 | 86        | 64   |
| Squad drill application ..           | 82        | 62   |
| Positions:                           |           |      |
| Attention .....                      | 20        | 11   |
| Facings .....                        | 22        | 13   |
| Marching .....                       | 24-35     | 14   |
| Rest .....                           | 21        | 12   |
| Salute .....                         | 23        | 13   |
| Retreat .....                        | 131       | 96   |
| Reviewing party .....                | 126       | 91   |
| Rifle, manual of arms, M14:          |           |      |
| Bayonets .....                       | 48        | 29   |
| Inspection arms .....                | 45        | 26   |
| Left shoulder arms .....             | 43        | 24   |
| Order arms .....                     | 38        | 19   |
| Rest positions .....                 | 39        | 20   |
| Rifle salute .....                   | 46        | 27   |
| Right shoulder arms .....            | 42        | 22   |
| Rules .....                          | 37        | 18   |
| Port arms .....                      | 41        | 21   |
| Present arms .....                   | 44        | 25   |
| Sling, unsling .....                 | 47        | 28   |
| Trail arms .....                     | 40        | 21   |
| Rifle, manual of arms, M16A1:        |           |      |
| Inspection .....                     | 51        | 31   |
| Stack arms .....                     | 52        | 33   |
| Take arms .....                      | 53        | 35   |
| Salutes .....                        | 23        | 13   |
| Shelter tents, pitching (fig. 45) .. | 110       | 81   |
| Snap, voice .....                    | 17        | 10   |
| Squad:                               |           |      |
| Alining .....                        | 72        | 55   |
| Change interval in line .....        | 71        | 54   |
| Column, change direction ..          | 74        | 56   |
| Column of twos .....                 | 78        | 60   |
| Count off .....                      | 76        | 56   |
| Dismissing .....                     | 70        | 54   |
| Drill terms .....                    | 67        | 52   |
| Formations .....                     | 68        | 53   |
| Forming .....                        | 69        | 53   |
| March in column .....                | 73        | 55   |
| March to flank .....                 | 75        | 56   |
| Stack arms .....                     | 77        | 57   |
| Take arms .....                      | 77        | 57   |
| Vehicles:                            |           |      |
| Formations .....                     | 171-181   | 112  |
| Inspections .....                    | 190       | 121  |
| Reviews .....                        | 185-189   | 119  |
| Signals .....                        | 183       | 117  |

|               | Paragraph | Page |                    | Paragraph | Page |
|---------------|-----------|------|--------------------|-----------|------|
| Voice:        |           |      | Distinctness ..... | 14        | 8    |
| Cadence ..... | 16        | 10   | Inflection .....   | 15        | 9    |
| Control ..... | 13        | 8    | Snap .....         | 17        | 10   |

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

KENNETH G. WICKHAM,  
*Major General, United States Army,*  
*The Adjutant General.*

W. C. WESTMORELAND,  
*General, United States Army,*  
*Chief of Staff.*

Distribution :

To be distributed in accordance with DA Form 12-11 requirements for Drill and Ceremonies.

exp. 1

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
HEADQUARTERS  
WASHINGTON, D.C.

CHANGE }  
No. 1

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
WASHINGTON, D.C., 14 November 1968  
GENERAL STAFF SECTION

## DRILL AND CEREMONIES

FM 22-5, 2 August 1968, is changed as follows:

Page 1. Lines 26 through 31 are superseded as follows:

| CHAPTER 10. CEREMONIES                                 | Paragraph    |
|--|--------------|
| SECTION I. Reviews .....                               | 124-129      |
| II. Parades .....                                      | 130-133      |
| III. Honor guards .....                                | 134-135      |
| IV. Colors .....                                       | 136-148      |
| V. Salute battery .....                                | 149-150      |
| VI. Reveille .....                                     | 151-152      |
| VII. Command reveille .....                            | 153-154      |
| VIII. Retreat .....                                    | 155-156      |
| IX. Command retreat .....                              | 157-158      |
| X. Civilian participation in military ceremonies ..... | 159-161.2    |
| XI. Funerals .....                                     | 161.3-161.18 |



## CHAPTER 10

### CEREMONIES

---

#### Section I. REVIEWS

##### 124. General

a. A review is a military ceremony designed to—

(1) Honor a visiting higher commander, official, or dignitary.

(2) Present decorations, awards, or honors and/or recognition to members of units of a command.

(3) Permit a higher commander, official or dignitary to observe the state of training of a command.

b. A review normally is conducted with a battalion or larger troop unit; however, a composite or representative element consisting of two or more platoons may serve the same purposes. A review consists of the following steps in the sequence indicated :

(1) Formation of troops.

(2) Presentation and honors.

(3) Inspection (may be omitted for decoration, award, or retirement ceremonies).

(4) Honors to the Nation.

(5) Remarks (when appropriate).

(6) March in review.

(7) Conclusion.

c. Other ceremonial activities or combinations thereof which may be incorporated within the framework of a review are—

(1) Review with decorations, awards, and individual retirement.

(2) Review with change of command, activation or inactivation of units.

(3) Review with retreat.

(4) Review with retreat with decorations, awards, and retirement.

(5) Review with retreat with change of command, activation or inactivation of units.

d. In order that he may review his own command or accompany a visiting reviewing officer,

a commander normally designates an officer of his command as commander of troops. The commander of troops is responsible for the preparation of the troops for the review.

e. The *ready line* and *final line* on which the units are to form and the route of march are marked or designated prior to beginning the ceremony (fig. 53). The primary function of the *ready line* is to enable the unit commander to arrange his unit into the prescribed formation prior to movement to the *final line*. The *ready line* is located to the rear of the *final line*. Flags or appropriate markings are used to designate the post of the reviewing officer and the points where *eyes right* and *ready front* are to be commanded (six steps to the reviewing officer's right and left and from six to 20 steps in front of the reviewing officer depending on the width of the formation). Commanders should determine the length of their formation (steps) so that when they have arrived at the ready front marker (6 steps beyond the reviewing officer) they march pass the marker for the length of their formation and then command *ready front*. This will insure that the last members of their unit are six steps beyond the reviewing officer when the command is given. The command *EYES* is given as the right foot strikes the ground and the command *RIGHT* is given the next time the right foot strikes the ground. The command *ready* and *front* is given as the left foot strikes the ground.

f. The two recommended formations for conducting reviews are—

(1) Battalion in line with companies in mass (fig. 54).

(2) Brigade in line with battalions in mass (fig. 55 and 56). However, any of the formations described for the battalion or brigade may be used. When desired or more appropriate, commands may be substituted for direc-



tives. The formation selected is limited by space available and other desires of the commander. Commanders may alter the formations or prescribed distances to meet local situations. Each unit should be sized uniformly with the tallest men in front and on the right.

g. If possible, the reviewing officer should arrive at his post (fig. 57) after the commander of troop's staff has reversed and the commander of troops has faced the reviewing stand. Upon arrival, the reviewing officer should immediately take his post and refrain from greeting distinguished spectators until after the review has terminated.

h. The local commander (if not acting as commander of troops), distinguished persons invited to attend the review (but not themselves receiving the review), staffs, and enlisted personnel take positions facing the troops as shown in figure 57.

i. The honor position, regardless of rank, is the reviewing officer's post. The local commander (host) or his direct representative gives the appropriate directive (*present the command and pass in review*) during the conduct of the review.

j. When a civilian or foreign dignitary receives the review, he (or she) takes the honor position to the right of the host. The host (local commander) will return all salutes when, in his judgment, it would be more appropriate. As a courtesy, the host (local commander) should cue the dignitary and inconspicuously explain the procedures during the conduct of the ceremony. The position in which the flags are displayed at the rear of the reviewing party will correspond to the position taken by the individual in the front rank of the reviewing party.

k. When a ceremony is conducted honoring a foreign official or dignitary entitled to honors, equivalent honors (salutes) are rendered in the manner prescribed in AR 600-25. The national anthem of the dignitary is played first followed by a drum roll and the playing of the U.S. National Anthem.

l. When the ceremony includes decorations, awards, or retirements the reviewing officer should be senior in rank or position to the highest ranking individual being honored.

m. An officer from the local staff is designated to escort members of the reviewing party and to show them their positions.

n. Since all situations or eventualities relative to various services or units (e.g., military academies, TOE units, reserve components, ROTC and training centers) cannot be foreseen, commanders may make *minor* changes to stated procedures. However, with a view toward preserving Army tradition and maintaining consistency, they should not alter or modify the sequence of events (other than stated), or in any way jeopardize the concept of military ceremonies.

## 125. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

### a. Formation of Troops.

(1) Units are moved to their positions on the *ready line* in the most convenient manner. For a large review, the commander of troops prescribes the routes, sequence, and time of arrival on the *ready line*.

(2) In motorized or mechanized units, occupants of vehicles will form dismounted in a formation corresponding to that of the other units. Their vehicles remain to the rear of the formation.

(3) After verification that all units are positioned on the *ready line*, the adjutant positions the band so that its left flank will be on line 12 steps to the right of the right flank unit's marker. The adjutant's initial post is three steps to the left and 6 inches in front of the band. He faces down the *final line* and directs (over his shoulder) the band to SOUND ATTENTION.

(4) The band sounds *attention*, pauses, and waits for the command to sound *Adjutant's Call*.

(5) Upon hearing *attention*, unit commanders *face about* and bring their units to *attention* and *right shoulder arms* (when appropriate) and *face* back to the front. (Supplementary commands are not given in mass formations.)

(6) When all units are at *attention*, the adjutant directs, SOUND ADJUTANT'S CALL.

(7) The band sounds *Adjutant's Call*. (This is the signal for commanders to form their units on the final line.)

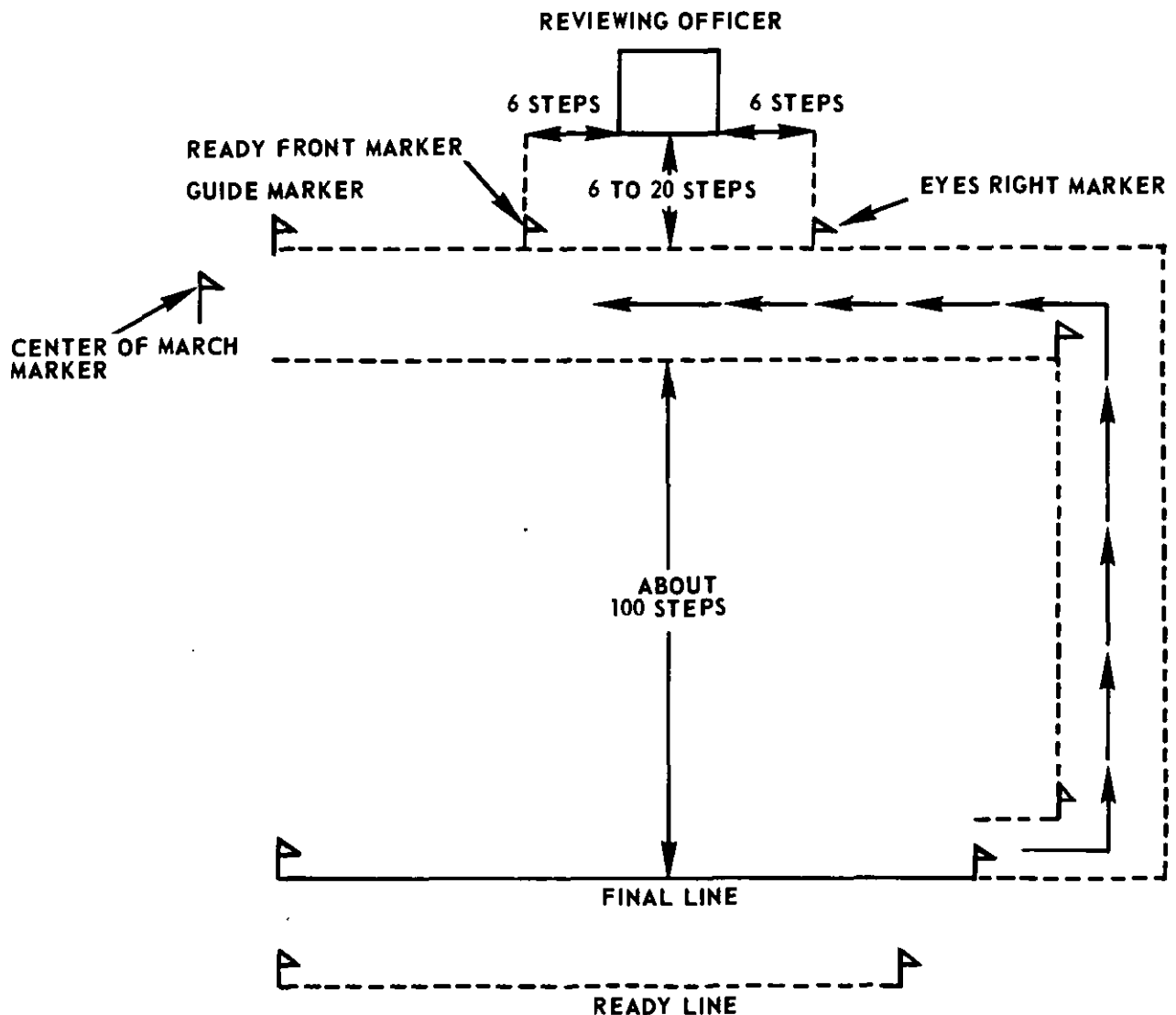


Figure 53. Preparation for review.

(8) Immediately after *Adjutant's Call*, the following events take place simultaneously:

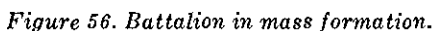
(a) All unit commanders immediately command, **GUIDE ON LINE**. The guide of each unit double times (port arms—unless weapons are to be carried at sling arms) to his position 6 inches in front of the *final line* of markers, *halts* (order arms, unless weapons are to be carried at sling arms), and executes *right face*.

(b) On the command **FORWARD, MARCH**, given by the commander nearest the band, the band *begins* to play marching music and *continues* until the adjutant signals that all units are on the *final line*.

(c) The adjutant aligns the guides and immediately *moves* to a position centered on the command and halfway between the post of the commander of troops and the *final line*. He *halts* and *faces* to the left, facing the line of troops.

(d) As soon as the guides are on line, the unit commanders (in sequence from right to left) command **FORWARD, MARCH**. The unit commander nearest the band must give his command loud enough to be heard by the band. As the commanders approach the guides' positions, they *face about* marching backward and command, **COMPANY (BATTALION), HALT**. The units *halt* so that the right man of the front





(9) When all units are on the *final line* and have been given *parade rest*, the adjutant

(16) When the units have completed *order arms* and the staff has reversed, the commander of troops then *faces* the reviewing stand and waits for the reviewing officer to take his post. (If for some reason the reviewing officer has been delayed, or if a delay is prearranged, the

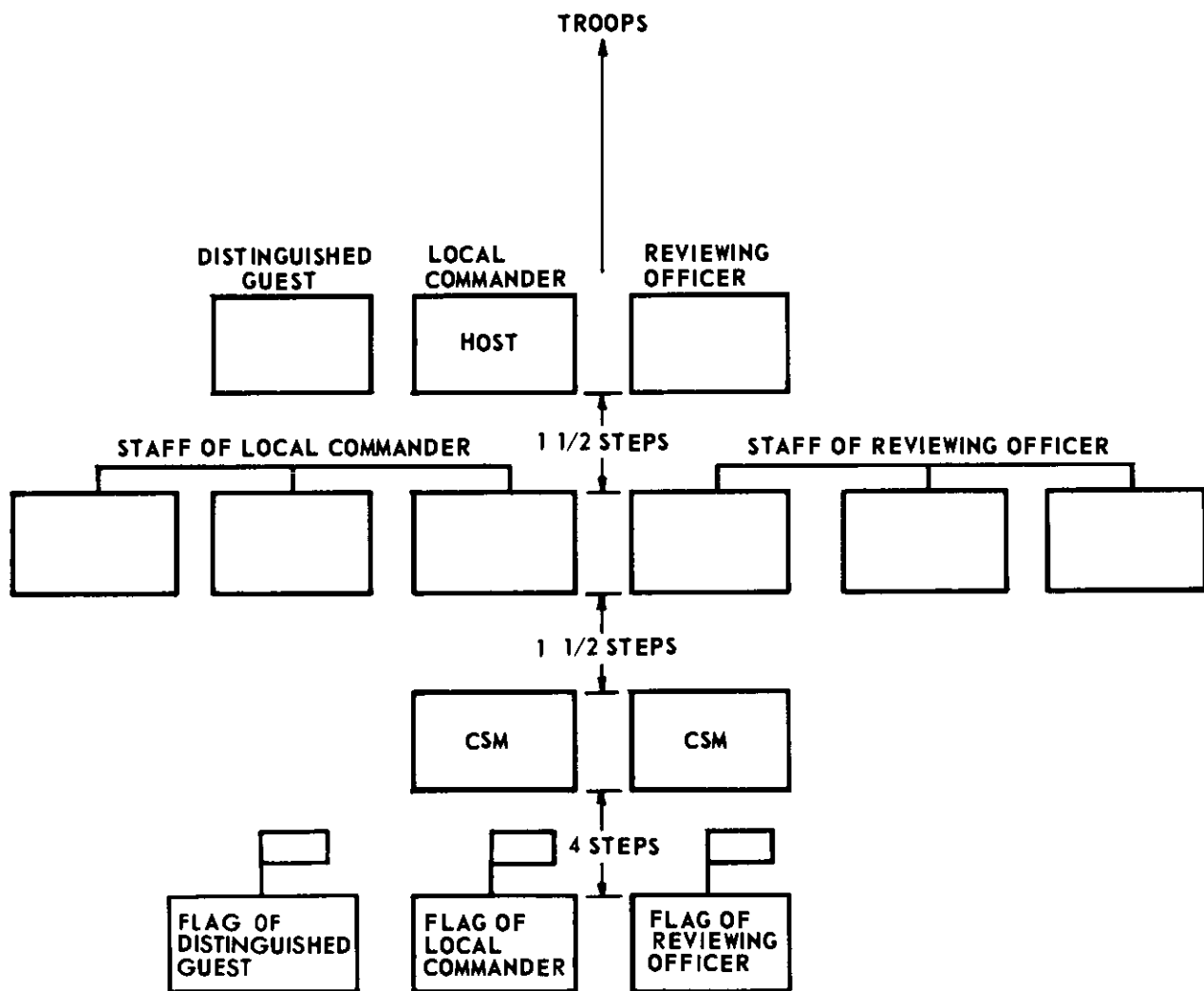


Figure 57. Reviewing party.

commander of troops will direct the units to *parade rest* and then directs them to *attention* prior to the reviewing officer's arrival.)

*b. Presentation and Honors.*

(1) When the reviewing officer has halted at his post, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS. Unit commanders *face about* and command, PRESENT, ARMS, *face* to the front, and *salute*. When the units have completed this movement, the commander of troops verifies that the salute battery and band are ready to render honors. He then *faces about* and commands his staff and himself to *present arms*.

(2) The color guards execute *present arms* on command of the color unit. At all military ceremonies the organizational color is dipped in salute each time the units are brought to *present arms*. The United States Army Flag is an organizational color but is dipped in salute *only* when honors are rendered to the Chief of Staff, U.S. Army, his direct representative, or an individual of higher rank or position than the Chief of Staff, or when the National Anthem or To The Color is played.

(3) Persons entitled to honors are specified in AR 600-25. When appropriate and available, cannon salutes are fired in addition to appropriate music. The *salute* of the com-

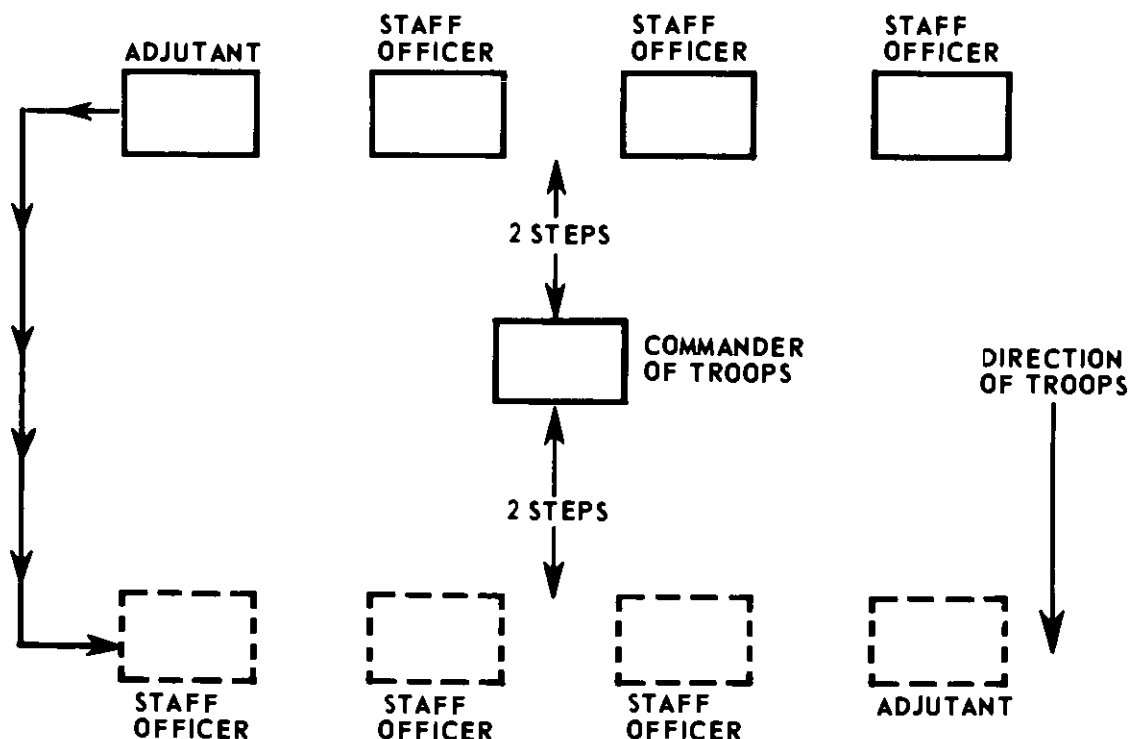


Figure 58. Movement of the staff to the rear of the commander of troops.

mander of troops is the signal for the band and the salute battery to *render* honors. The reviewing party and all military personnel within sight or hearing *salute* on the first note of the music and terminate their *salute* after honors have been completed.

(4) If honors are not appropriate, only the reviewing officer returns the *salute* of the commander of troops.

(5) Upon completion of the presentation and/or honors, the commander of troops commands his staff to **ORDER, ARMS, faces about,** and directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST.**

(6) Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, and command **ORDER, ARMS, and PARADE, REST.** They then *face* back to the front and execute *parade rest*.

(7) When all troops are at *parade rest*, the commander of troops *faces about*. He and his staff remain *at attention*.

*Note.* When scheduled, retreat will be integrated into the review at this point. Procedures are outlined in paragraph 128.

#### c. Inspection.

*Note.* The inspection may be omitted for decorations, awards, or retirement ceremonies. If the inspection is omitted, the ceremony continues as stated in paragraph 126 immediately following the presentation and/or honors, or following retreat if scheduled.

(1) When the commander of troops has *faced* the reviewing stand, the reviewing officer and the host (local commander) *move forward* and *halt* three steps in front of the commander of troops (fig. 59). Staffs, aides-de-camp, flag bearers, and orderlies do not normally accompany the inspecting party.

(2) The commander of troops reports, "Sir, The command is prepared for inspection," and guides the reviewing party to the right flank of the band. The commander of troops and the local commander (host) march to the right of the reviewing officer (fig. 59). Whether marching or riding, the reviewing party passes immediately in front of the line of company commanders regardless of the size of the review except when companies are in a line formation, then they pass immediately in front of the platoon leaders.

(3) When the inspection is made by motor vehicle, the reviewing party enters the vehicle in front of the reviewing stand. The reviewing officer enters first and occupies the left rear position. The local commander (host) occupies the right rear. The vehicle (approaching from the commander of troops' left) proceeds to the post of the commander of troops and stops. The commander of troops *salutes, reports, and enters* the vehicle occupying the right front position.

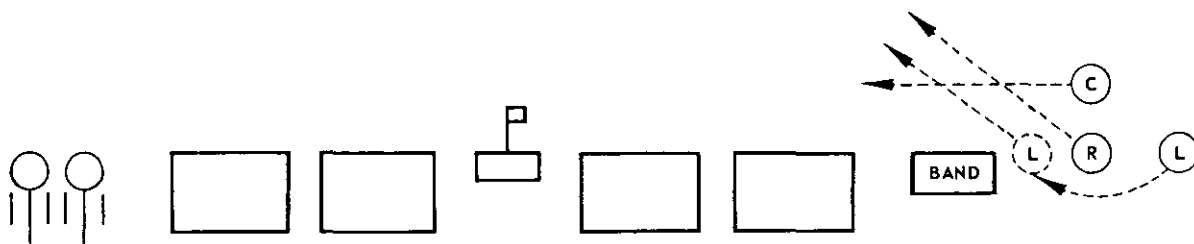
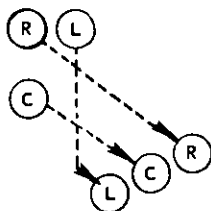
(4) Upon the departure of the reviewing party, the senior staff officer commands, STAFF PARADE, REST. After the inspection has been completed, the senior staff officer commands, STAFF, ATTENTION prior to the return of the commander of troops.

(5) The band plays marching music as the reviewing party departs the post of the commander of troops and continues to play until the reviewing officer has returned to his post.



#### LEGEND

- (R) REVIEWING OFFICER
- (L) LOCAL COMMANDER (HOST)
- (C) COMMANDER OF TROOPS



NOTE. THE LOCAL COMMANDER (HOST) AND COMMANDER OF TROOPS WILL HESITATE WHEN NECESSARY TO ALLOW THE REVIEWING OFFICER TO PRECEDE THEM.

WHEN A DISTINGUISHED GUEST PARTICIPATES, HE MARCHES ON THE RIGHT OF THE LOCAL COMMANDER DURING THE INSPECTION.

Figure 59. Movement of the reviewing party.

(6) When the reviewing party approaches the right flank of each unit, the unit commander *faces about* and commands, COMPANY, ATTEN-

TION. He then *faces* to the front and (over his right shoulder) commands, EYES, RIGHT. On the command *eyes right*, the company com-

mander and platoon leaders execute eyes right and salute. The guidon bearers execute *eyes right* and *present guidon*.

*Note.* Platoon leaders give the command *eyes right* and salute when the company is in a line formation. The company commander faces his unit but neither he nor his guidon salute.

*Note.* When in battalion mass formations, the battalion commander *faces about* and commands, **BATTALION, ATTENTION, and EYES, RIGHT**, but neither he nor his staff *salute* or execute *eyes right*. The unit commanders, platoon leaders, and guidon bearers *salute*. The battalion commander remains *facing* his unit until the reviewing officer has passed the left front of his unit at which time he commands, **ORDER, ARMS, PARADE, REST**. He then commands his staff to *parade rest* and executes *parade rest* but remains facing his unit.

Each soldier turns his head to the right and as the reviewing officer comes into their line of vision, they follow him with their eyes, *turning* their heads until he reaches their front. At this point, the head and eyes of each man remain fixed to the front. As soon as the reviewing officer has cleared the unit, the commander commands, **ORDER, ARMS**. He then *faces about* and commands, **PARADE, REST**, assumes the position himself, and remains facing his unit. The left flank unit will remain at *attention* until the reviewing party has cleared the right rear of the unit. Other commanders remain *facing* to the rear and command their units to *attention* as the party passes to the rear of their units. They then command, **PARADE, REST**, *face* to the front, and assumes *parade rest*.

(7) As the reviewing party approaches the Colors, the commander of troops inconspicuously commands, **PRESENT, ARMS**, six steps from the Colors and **ORDER, ARMS**, six steps beyond the Colors. They do not salute when passing to the rear of the Colors. The color guard and bearers execute *eyes right*. The organizational color salutes (dips).

(8) After passing in front of the troops (to include the salute battery), the inspection continues along the rear of the troops and terminates at the right flank of the band. The commander of troops commands, **PARTY, HALT**. The commander of troops *marches* forward (oblique) two steps, *halts*, and *faces about*. The local commander (host) *repositions* himself to the left of the reviewing officer. When the local commander is in position, the commander of

troops and the reviewing officer exchange salutes. Upon termination of the salutes, the reviewing officer and local commander immediately *face* to the half left in marching and return to their post. The commander of troops hesitates momentarily and then *faces* to the right in marching and returns to his post (fig. 59).

*Note.* Other ceremonial activities may be integrated into the review at this point. The sequence of events and actions of individuals are discussed in paragraphs 126 and 127.

#### *d. Honors to the Nation.*

(1) When the reviewing party has returned to its post, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS**. Unit commanders *face about* and command, **COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION, and PRESENT, ARMS**. Each commander then *faces about* and *salutes*. When all units have completed these movements, the commander of troops *faces about* and commands, **PRESENT, ARMS**, for himself and his staff. The band begins to play the National Anthem upon the execution of the hand *salute* by the commander of troops.

(2) The reviewing party and all military spectators *salute* while the National Anthem is being played.

(3) Upon completion of the National Anthem, the commander of troops and staff terminate their *salutes* on his command. He then *faces about* and directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS**. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, command, **ORDER, ARMS**, and *face back* to the front. If remarks are to be made, the commander of troops also directs, **PARADE REST**, *faces about*, and commands, **PARADE, REST**, for himself and his staff.

*Note.* The commander of troops must have prior knowledge if remarks are to be made.

*e. Remarks.* After the commander of troops and his staff have assumed the *parade rest* position, the reviewing officer, local commander (host) or distinguished guests may address the command at this time.

#### *f. March in Review.*

(1) Upon completion of the remarks, the commander of troops commands his staff to



THE BAND IS FACED AND MARCHED TO INDICATED POSITION BEFORE THE COMMAND RIGHT TURN MARCH IS GIVEN

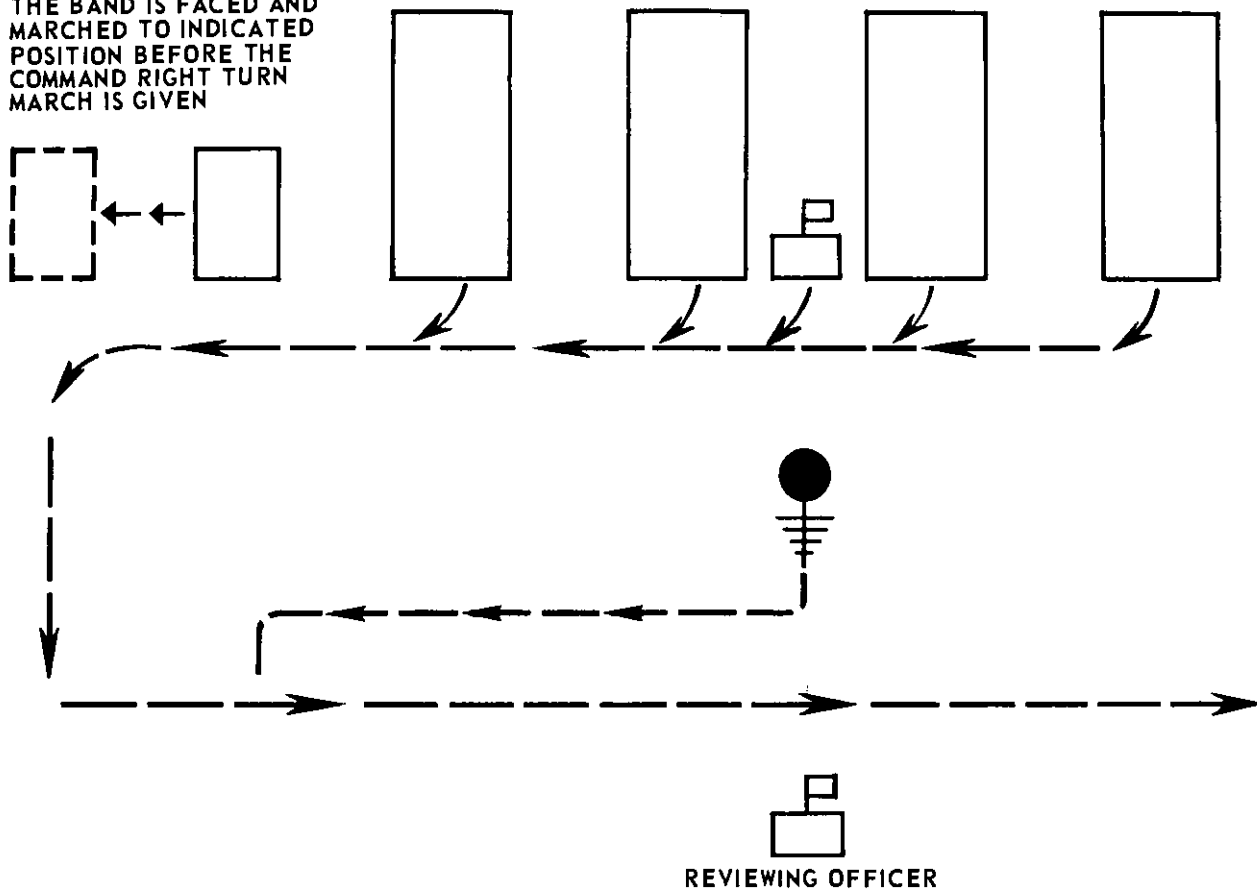


Figure 60. March in review in column with units in mass.

attention, faces about, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION. Unit commanders face about and command, COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION, and face back to the front. When the units are at attention, the commander of troops then faces the reviewing officer.

(2) Having directed the command to order arms (following honors to the Nation), if no remarks are to be made, or when the units are at attention after remarks are made, the commander of troops faces the reviewing officer. At this time the host (local commander) directs, PASS IN REVIEW.

(3) The commander of troops faces about and directs, PASS IN REVIEW. The band is then faced to the right and marches to a position that enables it to move straight forward onto the line of march without an initial turning movement (fig. 60).

(4) Unit commanders face to the right on the commander of troops' directive pass in review. (If weapons are to be carried at right shoulder, the commander faces about and commands, RIGHT SHOULDER, ARMS. He then faces to the left.) The commander next to the band waits until the band moves into position. He then commands, RIGHT TURN, MARCH (loud enough for the band to hear). The band takes this command as their signal to begin to play and to march forward onto the line of march.

(5) Other units move out in procession in the same manner and follow in column at the prescribed distance (fig. 61). For large reviews, commanders may command their units in sequence to parade rest, while waiting their turn to move onto the line of march.

(6) The band and each following unit change direction at points indicated by markers. When units are in mass formation, the



sergeant major execute *eyes right* and *salute* when in position six steps (marker) from the reviewing officer. They terminate *eyes right* and the *salute* when their staffs have passed six steps beyond the front of the reviewing officer.

(10) The reviewing officer returns only the *salute* of the commander of troops when passing in review. (The return of the commander of troops' *salute* by the reviewing officer represents the return *salute* from all subordinate commanders. This enables the reviewing officer to observe the review without being interrupted by frequent salutes.) The reviewing officer, local commander (host), their staffs, and military spectators *salute* the National Color when it passes.

(11) After saluting the reviewing officer, the commander of troops and his staff (without command) execute a wheeling movement (marching in an arc). When on line with the reviewing officer they again execute two wheeling movements simultaneously and take their post so that the commander of troops is on line with and six steps to the right of the reviewing officer. When executing wheeling movements the members of the staff should lengthen or shorten their steps as necessary so that the staff remains alined and abreast of each other while turning.

(12) Troop units will execute *eyes right* on command from their company commander or from the center company commander when in battalion mass. Commanders give the preparatory command *eyes* over their right shoulder two steps from the marker as the right foot strikes the ground. The command of execution *right* is given when the right foot strikes the ground again on line with the marker. On the preparatory command, the guidon bearer *raises* the guidon. On the command of execution, the company commander and platoon leaders execute *eyes right* and hand *salute*. The guidon bearer executes *eyes right* and *present guidon*. The right file continues to look straight forward and maintains correct distance. All other members execute *eyes right* and aline themselves. When the rear of the unit has passed six steps beyond the reviewing officer (marker), company commanders command, READY (as the left foot strikes the ground), FRONT (the next time the left foot strikes the ground). All per-

sons end their salute and return their head and eyes to the front. The guidon bearer *raises* the guidon on the command *ready* and returns it to the carry position on the command *front*.

(13) The bandmaster and drum major will execute *eyes right* and *salute* when passing the reviewing officer. The other members of the band will continue to play marching music without interruption. When the band has passed the reviewing officer, the drum major will cause the band to *execute* three left turns into a position in front of and *facing* the reviewing officer and at least 12 steps from the left flank of the marching troops. As the Colors pass, the bandmaster and drum major will *salute* while the band continues to play marching music without interruption.

(14) As the color guard passes the reviewing officer, each member, except the right flank man, executes *eyes right* on the command of the senior color sergeant. The organizational color is *dipped*.

#### *g. Conclusion.*

(1) When the last element of troops has passed the reviewing stand and has executed *ready front* the band will cease playing and go immediately into an 8-bar drum cadence. On the second beat of the last bar of drum cadence the band will begin playing (in place) the pickup notes to letter A of the official version of "The Army Goes Rolling Along." On the second time through letter A (i.e., 9th bar), the drum major will cause the band to march forward and execute a left turn onto the line of march while continuing to play until the completion of the chorus. This arrangement will be modified by bandmasters to provide a cadential ending by prolonging the tonic chord occurring on the down beat of two measures before letter D for three full beats. At the completion of this version of "The Army Song" the band will cease playing (near the ready front marker) and conclude the ceremony with drum cadence only.

(2) At the completion of The Army Song the commander of troops and the reviewing officer *face* each other and exchange *salutes*, thus officially terminating the ceremony.

(3) Military spectators stand at the position of *attention* while The Army Song is being played.

## 126. Review With Decorations, Awards, and Individual Retirement (Sequence of Events)

*Note.* If the inspection is omitted, the commander of troops (following *order arms* after the presentation and/or honor, or after *To the Colors* is played) will command, **PERSONS TO BE HONORED AND COLORS CENTER** (pause), **MARCH**. The ceremony then continues as outlined in *c* through *q* below.

*Note.* The procedures mentioned below provide latitude for recognition of one or a group of retirees of various ranks. However, local commanders should consider it appropriate to cause the review to be conducted in the retiree's honor when only one distinguished individual is retiring and allow that individual to participate as the reviewing officer. When the Colors are marched forward, the reviewing officer (retiree) would position himself in front and center of the Colors. After remarks by the host, the retiree returns to the reviewing officers' post.

*a.* The procedure for the formation of troops, presentation and honors, and inspection remain the same as previously mentioned.

*b.* When the reviewing officer has completed the inspection and returned to his post, the commander of the troops *faces about* and directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION**. Unit commanders *face about* and command, **COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION**, and *face* back to the front. The commander of troops then commands (loud enough for the band to hear) **PERSONS TO BE HONORED AND COLORS CENTER**, (pause) **MARCH**.

*c.* On the command *march*, the band begins to play marching music and continues to play until the detachment is *halted* in front of the reviewing officer.

*d.* The persons to be decorated and retirees are formed at the *ready line* at normal distance behind the last rank of the unit to the right of the Colors. (An alternate position for these personnel may be six steps to the left and on line with the reviewing officer. They then join the detachment after the Colors are brought forward.) They line up from left to right according to the rank of the decoration to be received. Those persons receiving decorations of the same rank will take positions according to their military rank. On the command *center* persons to be decorated execute a *right face*. On the command *march* they march forward to clear the right rear of the unit they are behind. They then execute a *column left*, *march* six

steps in front of the line of company commanders and execute a *column left*, *halt* in a position centered on the Colors, and execute a *right face*. The commands *halt* and *right face* are given by the last man in the file.

*e.* When unit colors or guidons are to be decorated, they are accompanied by their commander and positioned in a single rank five steps in front of the persons to be decorated according to the rank of the decorations to be bestowed—the highest ranking decoration on the right. The senior staff officer (battalion) or platoon leader (company) assumes command in the absence of the commander.

*f.* On the command *march*, the Colors *march* forward (seven steps) and *halt* one step in front of the line of company commanders.

*g.* The staff of the commander of troops, on the command *center*, executes a *right face*. On the command *march*, the staff *marches* forward far enough to provide clearance for the Colors and persons to be honored. The staff then *halts* and executes *left face* on command of the rear staff officer.

*h.* The commander of troops takes his post five steps in front of, and centered on, the leading element. He *faces about* and commands, **FORWARD, MARCH**. The commander of troops, persons to be honored, and Colors *march* forward. The commander of troops commands, **DETACHMENT, HALT**, when he is approximately six steps from the reviewing officer. He then *salutes* and reports, "Sir, The persons to be honored and colors are present." The reviewing officer returns the *salute*. The host (local commander) directs, **PRESENT THE COMMAND**.

*i.* The commander of troops *faces about* and passes around the right flank of the persons being honored and proceeds directly to his post, two steps in front of and centered on his staff. He then directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS**. Unit commanders *face about* and command, **PRESENT, ARMS**. They then *face about* and execute the *hand salute*. The commander of troops then *faces about* and commands, **DETACHMENT PRESENT, ARMS**; he and his staff come to *present arms* with the detachment.

*j.* Honors to the Nation will be rendered at this time. At the last note of the National Anthem the commander of troops commands, **DE-**

TACHMENT ORDER, ARMS. He then *faces about* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST. Unit commanders terminate their *salutes*, *face about*, and command, ORDER, ARMS, and PARADE, REST. They then *face* to the front and assume *parade rest*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands himself and his staff to *parade rest*.

k. The reviewing officer, accompanied by appropriate members of his staff, advances by the most direct route to the right front of the line of persons to be honored. A narrator reads the citation and pauses between citations to permit the reviewing officer time to pin the medal on the person being decorated, or to fasten the streamer on the staff of the guidon or colors. As the reviewing officer approaches the guidon to be decorated, the bearer executes *present guidon* so the reviewing officer may fasten the streamer. Color bearers *lower* the color to be decorated far enough for the reviewing officer to fasten the streamer. The color bearer gathers the color around the staff so it cannot touch the ground. He resumes the *carry position* after the streamer has been attached.

l. When the last award has been presented, the reviewing officer and his party *return* to their post.

*Note.* Remarks are made at this time. The commander of troops must have prior knowledge if remarks are to be made.

m. Upon completion of the remarks, the commander of troops commands his staff to *attention*, *faces about*, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION. Unit commanders *face about* and command, COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION, and then *face about*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands (loud enough for the band to hear), DETACHMENT POST, (pause) MARCH. On the command *post*, persons being honored execute a *right face*, and on the command *march*, they march forward executing two *column lefts* and *halt* on line six steps to the left of the reviewing officer and execute a *left face*. The commands *halt* and *left face* are given by the last man in the file. Also on the command *post*, the Colors execute *reverse march*. On the command *march*, they return to their original post.

n. On the command *march*, the band plays marching music until the Colors are back in position.

o. As the Colors pass his position, the commander of troops *marches* his staff back to the center of the field, and *faces* them to the right. The commander of troops *faces* to the left. When the Colors are in position he then *faces* the reviewing officer.

p. As soon as the commander of troops and his staff are centered and *facing* the reviewing stand, the host, (local commander) directs, PASS IN REVIEW.

q. The procedures from this point on are the same as previously described.

## 127. Review With Change of Command, Activation or Inactivation (Sequence of Events)

a. The procedure for the formation of troops, presentation and honors, and the inspection are the same as previously described.

b. When the reviewing officer has completed the inspection, the commander of troops *faces about* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION. Unit commanders *face about* and command, COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION. They then *face about*. When the command has completed the movement, the commander of troops commands, COLORS CENTER (pause), MARCH.

c. On this command the Colors are brought forward in the same manner as previously described in paragraph 126. *Presenting the Command and Honors to the Nation* remain the same as previously described in paragraph 126.

d. On the completion of Honors to the Nation, the commander of troops commands, DETACHMENT ORDER, ARMS; he *faces about* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST. Unit commanders terminate their salute, *face about* and command ORDER, ARMS, and PARADE, REST. They then *face about* and assume *parade rest*. The commander of troops then *faces about* and commands himself and his staff to *parade rest*.

e. As soon as the commander of troops and his staff have executed *parade rest*, the reviewing party moves forward to within three steps of the Colors and halts.

*Note.* When a senior commander desires to participate in the change of command ceremony, he occupies the position of distinguished guest (fig. 57). During the passing of the Color, he positions himself between the two commanders and passes the Color from the old to the new commander.

(1) For *change of command ceremonies* the outgoing commander will position himself three steps in front of the unit color; the incoming commander will be directly to his left. The (command) sergeant major moves from his post (fig. 57) by the most direct route, halts directly in front of the unit color, removes the color from the color bearer's sling, and *faces about*. The narrator reads the assumption of command order. The sergeant major *steps* forward and *presents* the color to the outgoing commander; both commanders execute *facing movements* so that they are facing each other; the outgoing commander *passes* the color to the incoming commander. Both commanders then execute *facing movements* back to their original direction. The sergeant major *receives* the color from the incoming commander and returns it to the color bearer's sling. The sergeant major *faces about*; the reviewing party *faces about* and returns to the reviewing stand. The outgoing commander *hesitates* and allows the incoming commander to precede him and occupy the honor position. The sergeant major returns to his original post.

*Note.* Remarks are made at this time. The commander of troops must have prior knowledge if remarks are to be made.

(2) For *activation ceremonies* the position of the commander of the unit to be activated will be three steps in front of the color bearer (with an empty sling for the color of the unit to be activated). The sergeant major *moves* from his post (fig. 57) with the cased color and positions himself in front of and facing the commander. The narrator reads the activation order. Upon completion of the reading, the sergeant major *presents* the cased color to the commander and *steps* backward. The commander *lowers* the cased color to allow the sergeant major to uncasing the color. When the color is uncased, the commander *rotates* the staff to allow the color to unfurl and drape freely. The sergeant major *steps* forward and *accepts* the color from the commander, *faces about*, places it in the color bearer's sling, and *faces about*.

When the sergeant major *faces about*, the reviewing party *faces about* and returns to the reviewing stand. The sergeant major returns to his original post.

*Note.* Remarks are made at this time. The commander of troops must have prior knowledge if remarks are to be made.

(3) For *inactivation ceremonies* the position of the commander of the unit to be inactivated will be three steps in front of the unit color. The sergeant major *moves* from his post (fig. 57) and positions himself in front of the unit color. He *removes* the color from the color bearer's sling and *faces about*. The narrator reads the inactivation order. Upon completion of the reading, the sergeant major *presents* the color to the commander and *steps* backward. The commander will *rotate* and *lower* the color allowing the sergeant major to case the color. Upon completion of the casing, the sergeant major *steps* forward and *accepts* the color from the commander. The reviewing party *faces about* and returns to the reviewing stand. The sergeant major, with the cased color, *moves* back to his original position. The color bearer of the inactivated unit will march with the Colors for the remainder of the ceremony with an empty sling.

*Note.* Remarks are made at this time. The commander of troops must have prior knowledge if remarks are to be made.

f. Upon completion of the remarks, if made, the commander of troops commands his staff to *attention*, *faces about*, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION. Unit commanders *face about* and command, COMPANY (BATTALION), ATTENTION. They then *face about*. The commander of troops *faces about* and commands (loud enough for the band to hear), COLORS POST, (pause) MARCH. On the command *post*, the Colors execute *reverse march*. On the command *march*, they return to their original post.

g. On the command *march*, the band begins to play marching music and continues until the Colors are back in position.

h. As the Colors pass his position, the commander of troops *faces about* and *marches* his staff back to the center of the field. He then *faces* his staff to the right and he *faces* to the

left. After the Colors are in position, he *faces* the reviewing stand.

i. As soon as the commander of troops has *faced* the reviewing stand, the host (local commander) directs, PASS IN REVIEW.

j. The procedures from this point on are the same as previously described.

## 128. Review With Retreat (Sequence of Events)

a. The formation of troops, presentations, and honors are the same as previously described.

b. At the completion of the presentation or honors to the reviewing officer, the commander of troops commands his staff to *order arms*, *faces about*, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST. Unit commanders terminate their salute, *face about* and command ORDER, ARMS, PARADE, REST. They then *face about* and assume the *parade rest* position. The commander of troops then directs, SOUND RETREAT, *faces about*, and commands his staff, PARADE, REST. As soon as the commander of troops and his staff are at *parade rest* the band sounds *retreat*. At the conclusion of retreat, the commander of troops commands his staff to *attention*, *faces* the troops, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS. When the units have completed these movements, he then *faces* the reviewing officer, and commands his staff, PRESENT, ARMS. This is the *signal* for the band to play To The Color.

c. When the ceremony is held on an Army post, the cannon is *fired* on the last note of retreat and To The Color is played while the flag is lowered.

d. The reviewing officer, his staff and military spectators stand at the position of *attention* during the sounding of retreat. On the first note of To The Color they *salute* and hold their *salute* until the last note is played.

e. On the last note of the music, the commander of troops commands, ORDER, ARMS, for himself and his staff, *faces about*, and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS AND PARADE REST. When the units have

completed these movements, he then *faces* the reviewing officer.

f. The review then proceeds with the inspection and so on as in a normal review.

## 129. Review With Less Than a Battalion Size Unit

a. A review may be conducted with a unit smaller than a battalion. A composite unit consisting of a band, Colors, two or more platoons, and a salute battery (when appropriate) may be used for the same purpose as previously described.

b. The fact that the size of the formation is reduced does not eliminate any of the components of a review or change their sequence.

c. A reduced strength review is essentially the same as a battalion or larger unit review except:

- (1) The troops are formed on a final line.
- (2) *Attention* and *Adjutant's Call* are not sounded.
- (3) Neither the adjutant nor a staff participate.
- (4) Unit guidons are not used in this formation. (Unit Colors represent the unit conducting the review.)
- (5) The commander of troops gives orders rather than directives.
- (6) The band positions itself in front of the reviewing officer by executing a left turn at a point midway between the final line and the reviewing line and a right turn when on line and centered on the reviewing officer.
- (7) Platoons pass the reviewing stand in line formation rather than column formation.
- (8) On the directive PASS IN REVIEW, the commander of troops commands RIGHT, FACE (right shoulder arms if appropriate), FORWARD, MARCH. Platoon leaders remain six steps and centered on their platoons. Platoon guides remain in front of the left flank squad leader.
- (9) Platoon leaders command COLUMN LEFT, MARCH, at the first turn marker and LEFT FLANK, MARCH, when centered on the reviewing line.

## Section II. PARADES

### 130. General

The appearance and movement of troops in formation are the primary characteristics of a parade. The preparation for and the organization of troops for a parade is similar to that for a review. In a parade, since the troop commander is also the reviewing officer, the distance between the troops and the commander is greater than that for a review. Other differences are that the band conducts *trooping the line*, the inspection is omitted, a report is rendered, orders are published, and officers and guidons are marched forward and centered on the commander. Honors to the Nation is conducted concurrently with retreat, if it is scheduled.

### 131. Ceremonial Battalion Parade

#### a. Formation of Troops.

(1) Units are moved to their positions on the *ready line* in the most convenient manner. The commander prescribes the routes, sequence, and time of arrival on the *ready line*. He and his staff take their post prior to *Adjutant's Call*.

(2) The procedure for moving from the *ready line* to the *final line* is the same as for a review.

#### b. Sound Off.

(1) After the battalion has been *formed*, *alined*, and given *parade rest*, on the *final line*, the adjutant directs, SOUND OFF. He remains facing the formation.

(2) At the directive *Sound Off*, the band plays three chords. At the conclusion of the third chord the band *moves* forward playing a march in quick time. The band executes a *left turn* to march across the front of the troops. At the left of the line the band *countermarches* and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After the band has passed beyond the right of the troops, it executes a *right turn*, *countermarches* again, and *halts* in its original position. When the band finishes the march it again plays *Sound Off*. (Trooping the line by the band may be eliminated when ceremonies are conducted indoors during inclement weather and space is at a premium.)

*Note.* Retreat when scheduled will be integrated at this point. The adjutant directs *sound retreat, atten-*

*tion, present and order, arms.* When the adjutant assumes the *parade rest* position, this is the signal for the band to sound retreat. The commander and his staff assume *parade rest, attention, present arms, and order arms* with the adjutant. The battalion commander's salute is the signal for the band to play *To the Color* or the National Anthem.

#### c. Honors to the Nation.

(1) If retreat is not conducted, the adjutant (after the band has completed *Sound Off*) assumes the position of *attention* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION AND PRESENT ARMS.

(2) Unit commanders assume the position of *attention, face about* and command, COMPANY, ATTENTION, PRESENT, ARMS. They *face about* and *salute*.

(3) When all units are at *present arms*, the adjutant *faces about* and *salutes*.

(4) The battalion commander commands himself and his staff to *present arms*. This is the signal for the band to play the National Anthem.

(5) Upon completion of the National Anthem, the battalion commander commands himself and his staff to *order arms*. The adjutant *terminates* his salute, *faces about* and directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS.

(6) Unit commanders *terminate* their salutes, *face about* and command, ORDER, ARMS. They then *face about*.

#### d. Reports.

(1) When all units are at *order arms*, the adjutant *faces about, salutes* and *reports*, "Sir, The parade is formed."

(2) The battalion commander *returns* the salute and directs, RECEIVE THE REPORT.

(3) The adjutant *faces about* and commands, REPORT. Unit commanders in succession from right to left, *salute* and *report*, "— Company, all present or accounted for." The adjutant *returns* each commander's salute.

(4) After receiving all reports, the adjutant *faces about, salutes* and *reports*, "Sir, all present or accounted for."

#### e. Publishing of Orders.

(1) The battalion commander *returns* the salute and directs, PUBLISH THE ORDERS.



(2) The adjutant *faces about* and directs, ATTENTION TO ORDERS (he then reads the orders).

*f. Officers Center March.*

(1) After reading the orders, the adjutant directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO PARADE REST.

(2) Unit commanders *face about* and command, PARADE, REST. They then *face about* and assume the *parade rest* position.

(3) When all units are at *parade rest*, the adjutant commands (loud enough for the band to hear), OFFICERS (pause), CENTER (long pause), MARCH. He then *faces about* and takes his post with the staff.

(4) On the command OFFICERS, all officers and guidon bearers assume the position of attention and carry guidon.

(5) At the command CENTER, when companies are in mass formation, company

commanders and guidon bearers *face* to the center. Officers commanding platoons *move* one step forward and *face* to the center. Executive officers *move* through the interval between units nearest to the center and take their *posts* in the column formed by the platoon leaders.

(6) At the command *march*, the band plays marching music and continues to play until the officers are *halted* in front of the commander. Officers and guidon bearers *close* to the center, *halt*, and individually *face* to the front. Company commanders, when moving to the center, *face half right* or *half left* in marching, *march* to the front, and *close* on a line four steps in advance of the line of guidon bearers. The guidon bearers *close* on their own line, each taking a *post* in rear of his company commander. All other officers *close* on the line of platoon leaders (fig. 61.2).

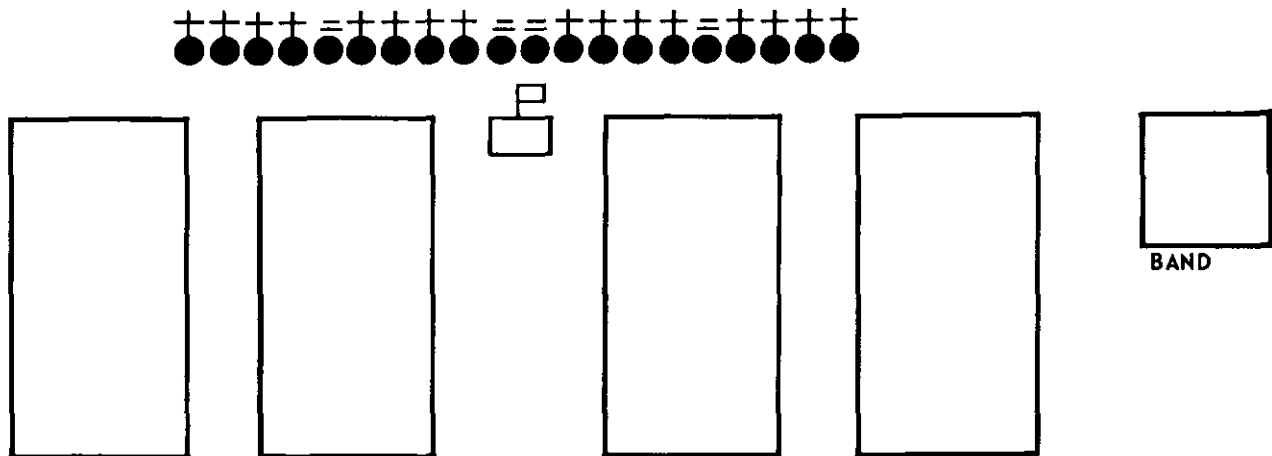
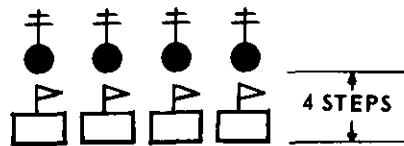


Figure 61.2. Position of key personnel after the command *Officers Center March*.

(7) The officers and guidon bearers having *closed* and *faced* to the front, the senior company commander commands, FORWARD,

MARCH. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide. The officers and guidon bearers are *halted* with the leading rank six steps from

the battalion commander and *salute*. The commands to *halt* and *present arms* are given by the senior company commander. The battalion commander returns the *salute*. On the command, ORDER, ARMS, by the senior company commander, the officers terminate their *salutes* and the guidon bearers execute *carry guidon*.

(8) The battalion commander gives such instruction as he deems necessary and then commands; OFFICERS POST (loud enough for the band to hear) (pause), MARCH.

(9) At the command *post*, all officers and guidon bearers *face about*.

(10) At the command *march*, they step off and the band begins to play.

(11) The senior commander commands, OFFICERS, HALT. He *halts* the leading rank in line three steps from the line of companies. He then commands, POST (pause), MARCH.

(12) At the command *post*, the officers and guidon bearers *face* outward.

(13) At the command *march*, the officers and guidon bearers *step off* and *return* to their post and assume *parade rest*. The music *ceases* when the last officer has taken his original post and executed *parade rest*. Executive officers take their post without commands.

(14) During the execution of *officers center* and *officers post*, except when saluting, all guidon bearers remain at *carry guidon*.

#### *g. Pass in Review.*

(1) When all officers have returned to their post and the band has stopped playing, the battalion commander directs, BRING YOUR UNITS TO ATTENTION.

(2) Unit commanders assume the *position of attention*, *face about*, and command, COMPANY, ATTENTION. They then *face about*.

(3) When all units are at *attention*, the battalion commander directs, PASS IN REVIEW.

(4) The battalion passes in review in the same manner as prescribed for a review.

#### *h. Conclusion.*

(1) When the last element of troops has passed the reviewing stand and has executed *ready front* the band will cease playing and go immediately into an 8-bar drum cadence. On the second beat of the last bar of drum cadence the band will begin playing (in place) the pick

up notes to letter A of the official version of "The Army Goes Rolling Along." On the second time through letter A (i.e., 9th bar), the drum major will cause the band to march forward and execute a left turn onto the line of march while continuing to play until the completion of the chorus. This arrangement will be modified by bandmasters to provide a cadential ending by prolonging the tonic chord occurring on the down beat of two measures before letter D for three full beats. At the completion of this version of "The Army Song" the band will cease playing (near the ready front marker) and conclude the ceremony with drum cadence only.

(2) The completion of The Army Song officially terminates the ceremony.

(3) Military spectators stand at the position of attention while The Army Song is being played.

### **132. Ceremonial Brigade Parade**

a. The brigade ordinarily is formed in line of battalions in mass formation. The parade is the same as the ceremonial battalion parade with the following major exceptions:

(1) *Brigade commander* is substituted for *battalion commander*, and *brigade* for *battalion* in the description.

(2) In moving across the front of the brigade, the band passes in front of the line of battalion commanders.

b. The battalions execute *present arms*, *order arms*, *parade rest*, and come to *attention* on the command of execution of their respective commanders. Reports are made by the battalion, instead of company commanders.

c. At the command *march*, of the command OFFICERS CENTER, MARCH, the battalion commanders, their staffs, and colors *close* on the line of battalion commanders and staffs. The company commanders *face* to the *half right* or *half left* in marching and *close* on a line four steps to the rear of the battalion color. The guidon bearers *face half right* or *half left* in marching and *close* on a line four steps back of the company commanders. The other officers *face half right* or *half left* in marching and *close* on a line four steps back of the guidon bearers. The command sergeant major remains in place and assumes command of the battalion.

d. The officers, guidon bearers, and colors having *closed* and *faced* to the front, the senior battalion commander commands, FORWARD, MARCH. The center officer of the leading rank is the guide. On the command of the senior battalion commander the officers and guidon bearers are *halted* with the leading rank six steps from the brigade commander. They *salute* the brigade commander, who returns the salute. The commands, PRESENT, ARMS, and ORDER, ARMS, are given by the senior battalion commander.

e. The brigade commander commands (loud enough for the band to hear), OFFICERS POST (pause), MARCH. On the command *post* the Colors execute *reverse march*. All others execute about face. On the command *march*, the officers, Colors, and guidon bearers march forward. The senior battalion commander commands, OFFICERS, HALT, so that the rank of battalion commanders is on line with its original position. The senior battalion commander then commands POST (pause), MARCH. On the command *post* the battalion commanders and staffs *face* outward; the battalion color guards

execute *wheeling movements*, and on the command *march* they march back to their original positions. The company commanders, guidon bearers, and other officers *face* to the *half right* or *half left* in marching and move back to their original positions.

### 133. Street Parades

a. For street parades, the troops are formed and marched in the most convenient manner. Street parades may include military vehicles. Towed or transported weapons add to the effect of a street parade. Cargo vehicles are included only when it is desired to increase the size of the display.

b. Practical formations for street parades are—

(1) Columns of threes and fours.

(2) Two or more columns of threes and fours abreast.

(3) Mass formation.

c. The vehicles move in a single column or column of twos, threes, or fours abreast, as the street width permits.

## Section III. HONOR GUARDS

### 134. General

a. An honor guard consists of a band, Colors, salute battery (when available and appropriate), and a formation of troops. Honor guards are held to render personal honors to persons of high military or civilian rank or position upon arrival or departure from a military command. Honor guards are not a substitute for those ceremonies appropriate in a review or parade.

b. An honor guard should not be so large as to compromise the exceptional standards required of honor guards. Uniforms will be those prescribed in Army regulations and tables of allowance.

c. The senior commander or his appointed representative is the host and takes part in the ceremony. He is briefed on the sequence of events and advises the person to be honored of actions which will take place.

d. Prior to the arrival of the person to be honored, the honor guard commander positions

the band, formation of troops, and salute battery from right to left in that order. The troops are formed in a line of companies or platoons with the Colors centered (fig. 61.3). When conditions dictate, the salute battery may be located separately but its control and purpose must not be impaired.

### 135. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

a. At the approach of the person to be honored, the honor guard commander *faces about* and commands, HONOR GUARD, ATTENTION, and then *faces about*. The host welcomes the person to be honored on arrival and escorts him to a position 20 steps in front of and *facing* the honor guard commander and takes his position on the guest's *left*. When the person to be honored has *halted* in his position, the honor guard commander *faces about* and commands, PRESENT, ARMS, *faces about*, and *salutes*.

b. As the honor guard commander executes the hand *salute*, the band begins the appropri-

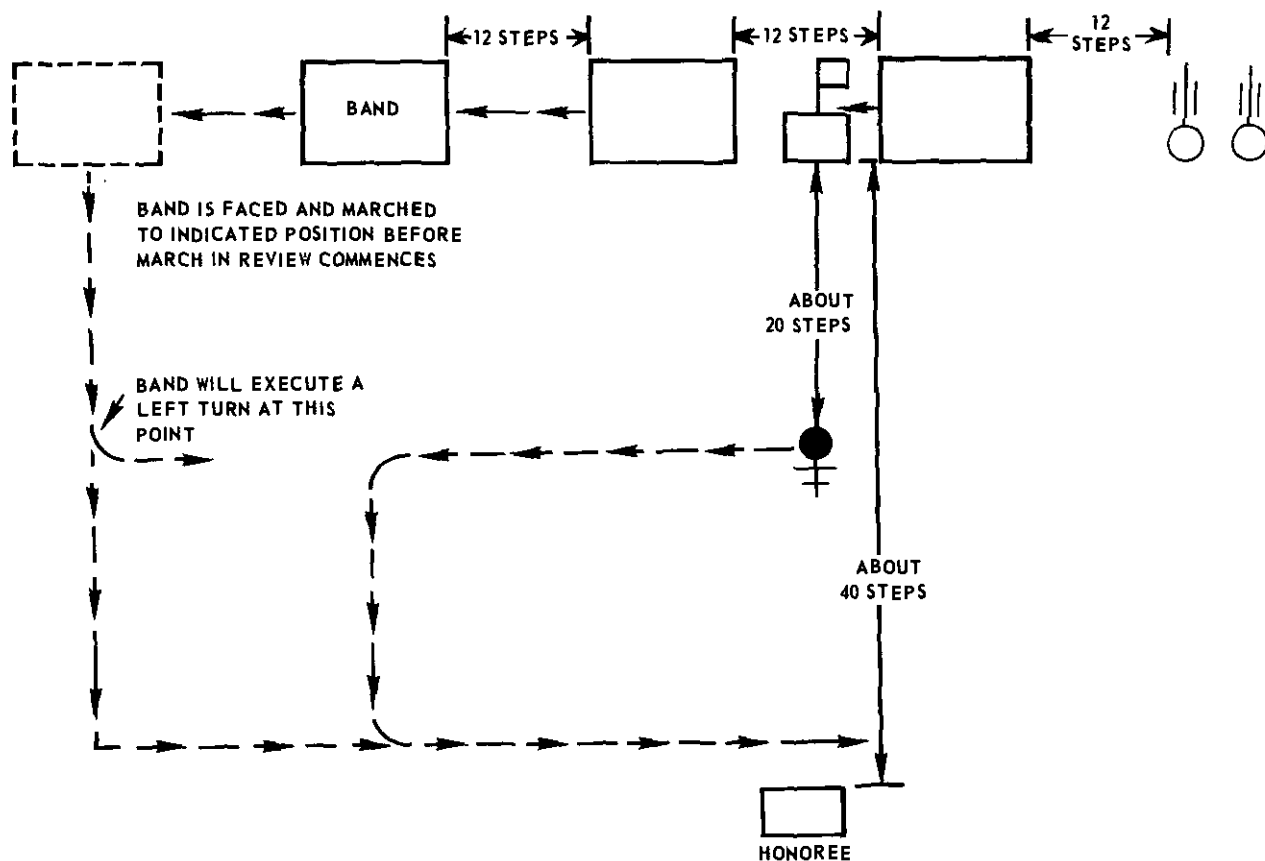


Figure 61.3. Honor guard formation

ate honors. When a salute battery is employed, the first round is fired simultaneously with the first note of the music and remaining rounds are fired at 3-second intervals. All military personnel in the vicinity of the honor guard formation, except those on security duty, salute during the firing of the cannon *salute* and the rendering of honors (AR 600-25).

c. On the completion of the honors, the honor guard commander terminates his *salute*, *faces about*, and commands, ORDER, ARMS. He then *faces about*.

d. At this time, the honoree and host march forward and halt three steps from the honor guard commander. The honor guard commander *salutes* and *reports*, "Sir, The honor guard is prepared for inspection." He then guides the honoree and host to the right of the band (fig. 59). The inspecting party passes along the front and rear of the line of troops, to include the salute battery if used, with the option of omitting the salute battery from the

inspection if its distance from the remainder of the honor guard is prohibitive.

e. The honor guard commander takes a position on the *right* of the person honored and guides him through the inspection. The host takes a position on the *right* of the honor guard commander. The band plays appropriate music until the inspection is completed.

f. The inspection begins at the right of the band. The inspecting party passes along the front rank of troops. Ranks are not opened; the individual members of the honor guard *do not* come to *inspection arms* or execute *eyes right*.

g. The members of the inspecting party render hand *salutes* when they pass in front of the Colors.

h. The inspection terminates at the right flank of the band. The honor guard commander commands PARTY, HALT. The honor guard commander *marches* forward (oblique) two steps, *halts*, and *faces about*. The host reposes

tions himself to the left of the honoree. When the host is in position, the honor guard commander and the honoree exchange salutes. Upon termination of the salutes, the honoree and the host immediately *face* to the half left in marching and return to their post. The honor guard commander hesitates momentarily and then *faces* to the right in marching and returns to his post (fig. 59).

i. After the inspection is terminated and the honoree and host *return* to their positions, the honor guard is given *present arms* and the band plays *honors to the nation or nations*. If the honoree is a foreign dignitary, the National Anthem of his country is played first followed by a drum roll and the playing of the *Star Spangled Banner*.

j. When the Star Spangled Banner ends, the command *order arms* is given. At this point, the honor guard may use one of two procedures. First, if a *march in review* is not desired, the honor guard commander will *face about* after the command for *order arms* is given and remain at *attention* while the band plays one chorus or refrain (32 bars) of the *Army Song*. At the completion of the *Army Song*, the honor guard commander will *salute* and announce, "Sir, This concludes the ceremony." The honor guard remains at *attention* until the honoree has departed. The band may play incidental background music while the honoree is being introduced to the staff and other guests as appropriate. Second, if a *pass in review* is desired the host directs, *PASS IN REVIEW*. The honor guard commander *faces about* and commands, *RIGHT, FACE* (right shoulder arms if appropriate). The band is then *faced* to the right and marches to a position that enables it to move straight forward on to the line of march with-

out an initial turning movement. When the band is in position the honor guard commander commands, *FORWARD, MARCH*. Platoon leaders remain six steps and centered on their platoons. The platoon guides remain in front of the left flank squad leader. On the command *march* the band marches forward and executes a *left turn* at a point midway between the line of troops and the honoree and a *right turn* when on line and centered on the honoree. Platoons pass the honoree in line formation rather than column formation. Platoon leaders command *COLUMN LEFT, MARCH* at the first turn marker and *LEFT FLANK, MARCH* when centered on the reviewing line.

k. When the last element of troops has passed the honoree and has executed *ready front* the band will cease playing and go immediately into an 8-bar drum cadence. On the second beat of the last bar of drum cadence the band will begin playing (in place) the pick up notes to letter *A* of the official version of "The Army Goes Rolling Along." On the second time through letter *A* (i.e., 9th bar), the drum major will cause the band to march forward and execute a left turn onto the line of march while continuing to play until the completion of the chorus. This arrangement will be modified by bandmasters to provide a cadential ending by prolonging the tonic chord occurring on the down beat of two measures before letter *D* for three full beats. At the completion of this version of "The Army Song" the band will cease playing (near the ready front marker) and conclude the ceremony with drum cadence only.

l. The completion of the *Army Song* officially terminates the ceremony. At this time, the host normally will introduce appropriate commanders.

## Section IV. COLORS

### 136. General

a. The national and organizational flags carried by color bearing units are called the National Color and the organizational color. When used singularly the term Color implies the National Color. The term Colors may imply both the National Color and the organizational color.

b. In garrison, the Colors are normally kept at the office or headquarters of the commanding

officer. They are escorted to and from his quarters or office by the color guard. In the field the Colors are normally displayed from reveille to retreat in front of the commanding officer's quarters or command post. (During inclement weather they are cased and placed in the commanding officer's office, quarters or tent.)

c. Individuals or units passing uncased Colors outside will render honors. Individuals

not part of a formation salute six steps distance from the Colors and hold the salute until they have passed six steps beyond the Colors. Units will execute eyes right and ready front on order from the commander six steps prior to and six steps beyond the Colors from the first and last man, respectively, in the unit. The commander will execute the hand salute and eyes right. The organizational color when not displayed or carried with a National Color is not entitled to a salute by regulation. However, the commander may prescribe that members of his command salute their own color as a matter of courtesy and respect.

d. The Colors may be carried in any formation in which two or more companies, honor guards, or representative elements of a command participate.

e. Traditionally, the *command sergeant major* is responsible for the safe guarding, care, and display of his unit colors. He is also responsible for the selection, training, and performance of the color bearers and color guards.

f. The manual for individual colors and distinguishing flags for general officers and other dignitaries is the same as that for organizational colors (AR 600-25).

g. During a review, parade, or honor guard ceremony, ordinarily only one National Color will be present. The National Color is given the honor position and is carried on the marching right of all other colors. The United States Army Flag or the Army Field Flag (when authorized) is carried to the immediate left of the National Color. The organizational color of the senior headquarters sponsoring the ceremony is carried to the left of the Army Flag or Field Flag, if present. The Colors belonging to the headquarters conducting the ceremony are positioned on line with and centered on the command. Subordinate color bearing organizations ordinarily carry *only* their organizational color four steps to the rear of their staff.

*Note.* When desired or considered more appropriate by the local commander, he may also authorize subordinate color bearing organizations to carry their National Color with their organizational color behind their staffs. Consideration must be given the spectators as to the number of times they will be required to stand during the pass in review. Also, consideration must be given to the frequency of salutes required by the re-

viewing officer. Another method in which the subordinate color bearing units may carry both their Colors is to have them participate in a mass Color formation. Due to many complications caused by massed Colors, units should prescribe a local SOP governing the desired procedures. Examples of complications include: Organizational colors lose their identity; order of precedence difficulties; re-sizing of color guards and bearers; uniformity when the first rank of Color consists of five men rather than four; presenting a good appearance when returning to the formation after being brought forward while keeping the National Color on the marching right.

### 137. Salutes

a. The National Color renders no salute.

b. The organizational color *salutes* (dips) in military ceremonies each time the units are commanded to *present arms* and while the National Anthem, To The Color, Reveille, or Taps (funeral only) is being played.

*Note.* The United States Army flag is an organizational color but is dipped in salute *only* when honors are rendered to the Chief of Staff, U. S. Army, his direct representative, or an individual of higher rank or position than the Chief of Staff, or when the National Anthem, To The Color, Reveille, or Taps (funeral only) is being played.

c. Salutes by general officer or other individual flags are executed when rendering honor to an individual of equal or senior in rank or position and while the National Anthem, To The Color, Reveille, or Taps (funeral only) is being played.

d. When marching, the organizational color *salutes* when six steps from the person entitled to the salute. It is returned to the *carry position* when six steps beyond the person. During the inspection the organizational color salutes as the inspecting party passes.

### 138. Color Guard

a. The color guard consists of two (three) sergeants and two specialists or privates. It is an honor to be selected as a member of the color guard. The senior sergeant carries the National Color and commands the color guard. He gives the necessary commands for the movements and for rendering honors.

b. When battalions or brigades carry their organizational color in a ceremony as part of a larger command the battalion or brigade color is carried four steps to the rear of the staff. A sergeant acts as color bearer and two

experienced specialists or privates selected by the battalion or brigade commander act as members of the color guard (fig. 56).

c. The color guard is formed and marched in one rank at close interval, the bearers in the center. They do not execute *rear march* or *about face*. The color guard marches at *right shoulder arms* (or at sling arms with the M16 rifle) and execute facing movements by wheeling to the right or left. The command is RIGHT (LEFT) WHEEL, MARCH. To execute a wheeling movement the guard nearest the direction of turn serves as the pivot point and executes the movement by marching in place and simultaneously turning in the new direction. Other members shorten or lengthen their steps and turn in an arc keeping abreast of each other and maintaining alinement. When the wheel has been completed, each member automatically marches in place until the command *halt* or *forward march* is given.

d. When passing in review, the color guard executes *eyes right* at the prescribed saluting distance upon the command of the senior sergeant. The commands are: EYES, RIGHT, and READY, FRONT. The organizational color *salutes* at the command *right* and resumes the *carry* at the command *front*. The man on the right flank of the color guard *does not* execute *eyes right*.

e. During ceremonies the color guards remain at *right shoulder arms* except when *presenting arms*.

f. When not participating in a ceremony and a situation occurs which warrants a salute by the organizational color, the senior sergeant commands, COLOR, SALUTE. The return to the *carry* is made at the command CARRY, COLOR.

g. When in formation, and not during a ceremony, the color bearer executes *at ease* and *rest* with the color company, keeping the staffs of the Colors vertical. The color guard executes *right shoulder*, *order*, and *present arms* with the color company.

h. The uniform for color guards should be the same as prescribed for participating troops.

### 139. Receiving or Dismissing the Colors by the Color Guard

a. When receiving uncased Colors on display in the commander's office, the color guard is

positioned in a single rank facing the colors. The senior color sergeant commands *present arms* and *order arms*. Upon completion of *order arms* the color bearers (without command) secure the Colors. The color guard files outside (guard, National Color, organizational color, guard) and re-form in a line formation. The color guards execute *right shoulder arms* and the color bearers assume the *carry* position.

b. To dismiss the Colors the procedures are basically the same, except that the Colors are placed back in their stands prior to executing *present arms*.

### 140. Casing and Uncasing the Colors

a. The color guard is formed in a line formation with the cased Colors at the *carry* position (order position when indoors). The command sergeant major or his direct representative positions himself six steps in front of and centered on the formation. He then directs, SLING ARMS. The color guards immediately adjust their slings and assume the sling arms position. The sergeant major commands, POST. The color guards march forward (oblique) four steps, *halt* and execute an *about face*. The sergeant major then directs, UNCASE THE COLORS. The color bearers lower the Colors (same as *present guidon*). The two guards move forward and untie and uncase the Colors. The color bearers unfurl and immediately return the Colors to the *carry* position. While the Colors are being unfurled the guards fold the cases and secure them in their left hand. When the Colors are in the *carry* position, the sergeant major commands, PRESENT, ARMS. The sergeant major, color guards, and the organization color salute. He then commands, ORDER, ARMS, and then commands, POST. On the command *post*, the color guards place the folded canvass cases inside the cartridge belts (center rear) of the color bearers. They assume their original positions, adjust their slings and return to *right shoulder arms*. If the sergeant major or his representative is not present, the senior color sergeant gives the necessary commands.

b. To case the Colors the procedures are basically the same except *present arms* is given before the Colors are lowered.

c. When casing or uncasing the Colors with the command *present*, the commander directs,

**UNCASE (CASE) THE COLORS.** The sergeant major and color guards execute the movement as mentioned above except they execute *present arms* and *order arms* with the color company. When the Colors are uncased and returned to the carry position, the commander directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO PRESENT ARMS.** After the units have executed this directive, he then directs, **BRING YOUR UNITS TO ORDER ARMS.**

d. If the colors are to be cased or uncased during the receiving or dismissing by the color company, the color guards execute *present arms* and *order arms* on command of the company commander.

e. The command sergeant major uncases the organizational color when it is displayed by itself. He may also assist the color guards when uncasing more than two Colors.

#### 141. Receiving or Dismissing the Colors by Color Company

a. At drills and ceremonies in which the Colors are to participate, the Colors are received by the color company before the formation of the battalion. The color company receives the Colors as follows: The color company is already formed, its commander *facing* the front. The color guard, guided by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and *halts* at a distance of 10 steps from the company commander. The company commander then *facing* his company and brings it to *present arms*, *facing* the Colors, and *salutes*. He then *facing* his company and brings it to *order arms*. The specialists or privates of the color guard execute *present arms* and *order arms* with the color company. The color guard then is marched by the senior sergeant directly to its post. The color guard takes its post on the left, when the company is in line or mass; the color guard takes its post in the rear when the company is in column. When the color company joins the battalion, the color guard takes its appropriate post in the formation.

b. When it is desired to dismiss the color guard at the conclusion of a drill or ceremony, the color guard proceeds from its position and *halts* 10 steps in front of and facing the commander of the color company. The actions at this time are the same as receiving the Colors.

The color guard then escorts the Colors to the office, quarters or tent of the commanding officer. The color guard is received and dismissed from organizations smaller than a company, such as a funeral escort, in a similar manner.

#### 142. Movements of Three-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face the color guard to the rear (fig. 61.4) the command is **COLORS REVERSE, MARCH.** At the command *march*, each man executes simultaneously the following movements: Number 1 *facing* left while marking time, takes two steps forward, and *facing* to the left while marking time. Number 2 takes one full step forward, executes *about face* while marking time and takes one full step in the new direction, mark-

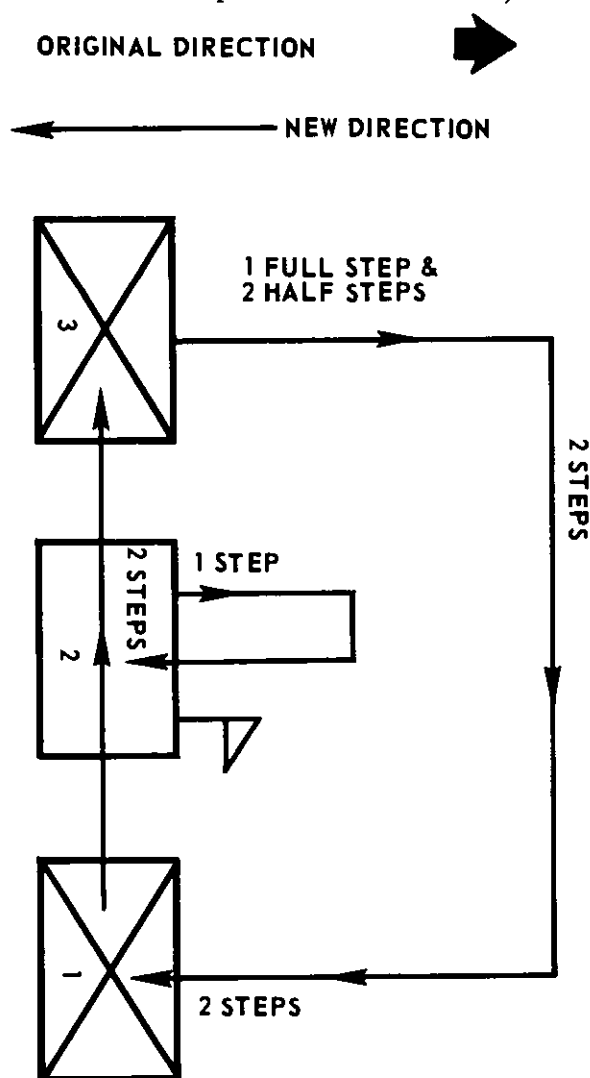


Figure 61.4. Movement of three-man color guard to the rear.



ing time. Number 3 takes one full step and two half steps, *faces* to the right while marking time, takes two full steps, *faces* to the right in

marching, taking two full steps, and marks time. When all men are abreast of each other they step off together or halt, as commanded.

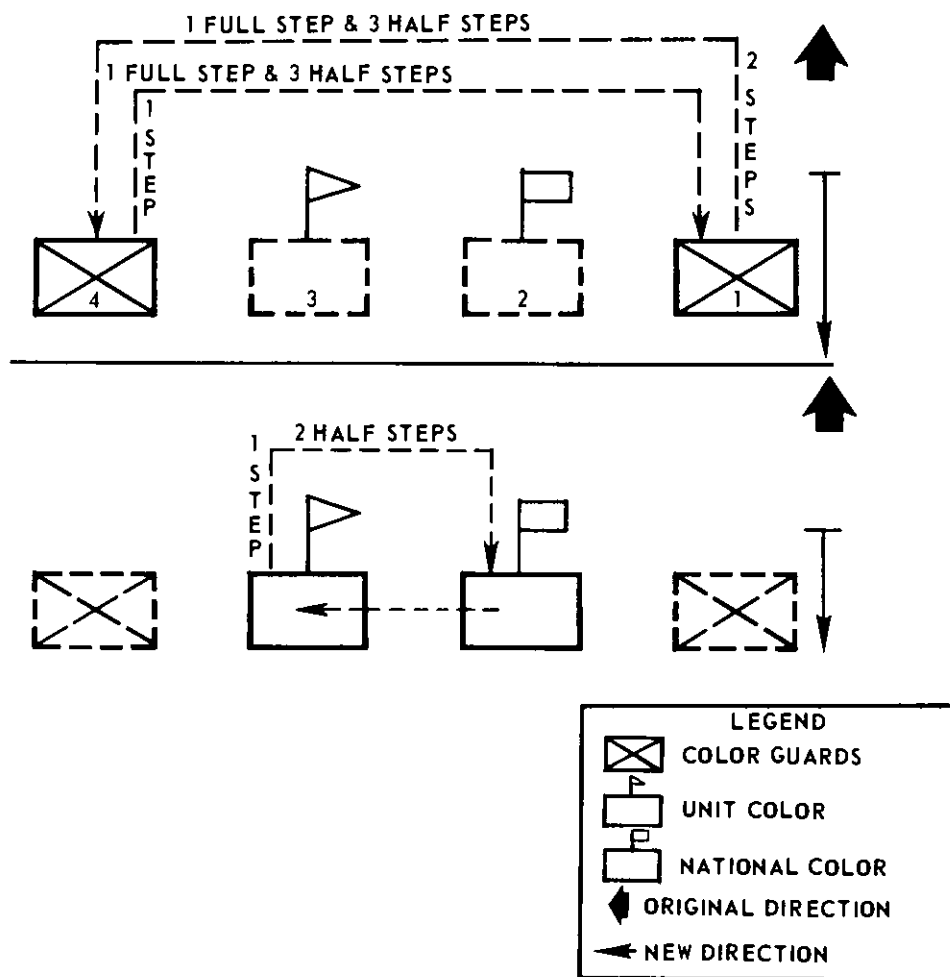


Figure 61.5. Movement of four-man color guard to the rear.

### 143. Movement of Four-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face the color guard to the rear (fig. 61.5) the command is **COLORS REVERSE, MARCH**. At the command *march*, each man steps off simultaneously and executes the following movements: Number 1 takes two steps forward, *faces* to the left in marching, takes one full step and three half steps, *faces* to the left in marching, and takes two steps in the new direction. Number 2 *faces* to the left in marching and *faces* to the left while marking time. Number 3 takes one step forward, *faces* to the right in marching, takes two half steps, *faces* to the

right in marching, and takes one step in the new direction. Number 4 takes one step forward, *faces* to the right in marching, takes one full step and three half steps, *faces* to the right in marching, and takes one step forward in the new direction. Numbers 2, 3, and 4 mark time after completing their movements until all men are abreast, then step off together or halt, as commanded.

### 144. Movement of Five-Man Color Guard to the Rear

To face the color guard to the rear (fig. 61.6) the command is **COLORS REVERSE, MARCH**. At the command *march*, each executes simultane-

ously the following movements: Number 1 takes four steps forward, *faces* to the left in marching, taking four full steps forward, *faces* to the left in marching, taking four full steps in the new direction, and *halts*. Number 2 *faces* left while marking time, takes two steps forward, and *faces* to the left while marking time. Number 3 takes one full step forward, executes *about face* while marking time, and takes one full step in the new direction, marking time. Number 4 takes one full step and one half step, *faces* to the right while marking time, takes

two full steps, *faces* to the right in marching, taking two full steps, and marks time. Number 5 takes three full steps forward, *faces* to the right in marching, taking four full steps forward, *faces* to the right in marching, takes three full steps in the new direction, and marks time. Numbers 2, 3, 4, and 5 mark time after completing their movements. When all men are abreast of each other they step off together or halt as the situation may dictate.

*Note.* Color guards armed with the M16 rifle remain at *sling arms* throughout all ceremonies.

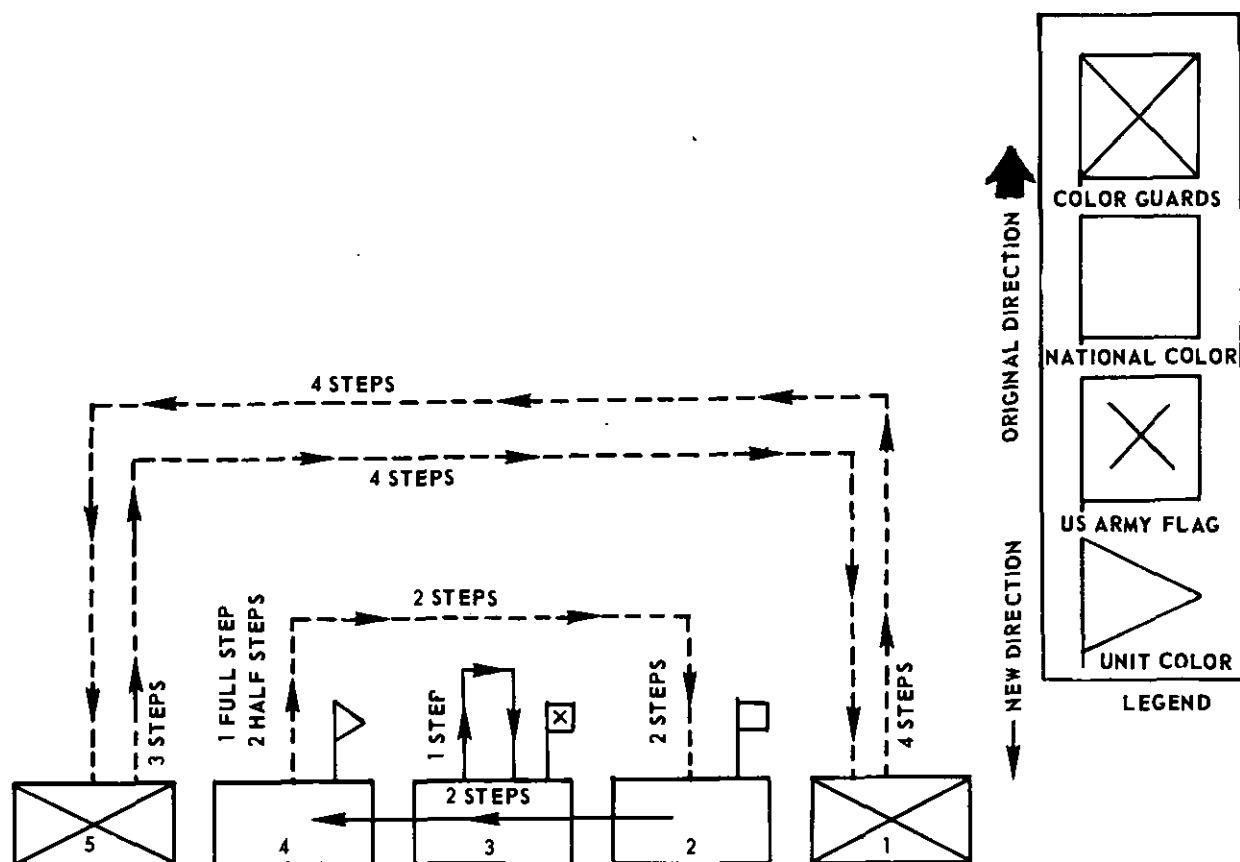


Figure 61.6. Movement of five-man color guard to the rear.

#### 145. Position of the Color at the Order

*At the order*, the ferrule of the staff is rested on the ground and touching the outside of the right footgear opposite the ball of the right foot. Hold the staff in your right hand in the "U" formed by your fingers extended and joined, and your thumb. Keep your right hand and arm behind the staff with your arm bent naturally. Rest the staff against the hollow of

your shoulder. The thumb is along the seam of the trousers (fig. 61.7).

#### 146. Position of the Color at the Carry

*At the carry*, the ferrule of the staff is rested in the socket of the sling; the staff is grasped with the right hand even with the mouth, with the staff inclined slightly to the front (fig. 61.8). (Both hands may be used on exceptionally windy days, the left hand immediately below the right.)



*Figure 61.7. Position of the Color at the order.*



*Figure 61.9. Position of the Color at parade rest.*



*Figure 61.8. Position of the Color at the carry.*



*Figure 61.10. Position of the Color at color salute.*

#### 147. Position of the Color at Parade Rest

a. *Parade rest* with the Colors is executed similarly to parade rest with the rifle (fig. 61.9).

b. The order and parade rest are executed with the color company except during ceremonies. (Colors remains at the carry position.)

#### 148. Position of the Organizational Color at Color Salute

a. This position is assumed from the *carry* by slipping the right hand upward approximately 4 inches and then thrusting the arm

forward shoulder high and horizontal to the ground forming an approximate 45 degree angle (fig. 61.10). When the colors salute with troops who execute *present arms* from the *order*, the color bearers assume the position of *carry* at the command *arms*, and then execute the *color salute*.

b. When casing or uncasing Colors indoors (at the order) the organizational color bearer salutes (dips) by slipping his right hand upward and grasping the staff firmly; the forearm is horizontal; the staff is thrust forward until the arm is fully extended.

### Section V. SALUTE BATTERY

#### 149. General

a. The salute battery should arrive at the ceremonial site early enough to allow the positioning of their pieces prior to the arrival of units on the ready line.

b. The pieces are positioned so that the muzzles are pointing away from the reviewing stand. The opened trails are two steps to the rear of the *final line*. The number six piece is

positioned 12 steps from the left flank unit. Other pieces are positioned approximately four steps apart (measure from inside wheels) and on line with number six.

c. Once the pieces are in position, the battery is formed to the left of the number one piece and in front of the final line so that the number six and three sections are on the *final line* (fig. 61.11).

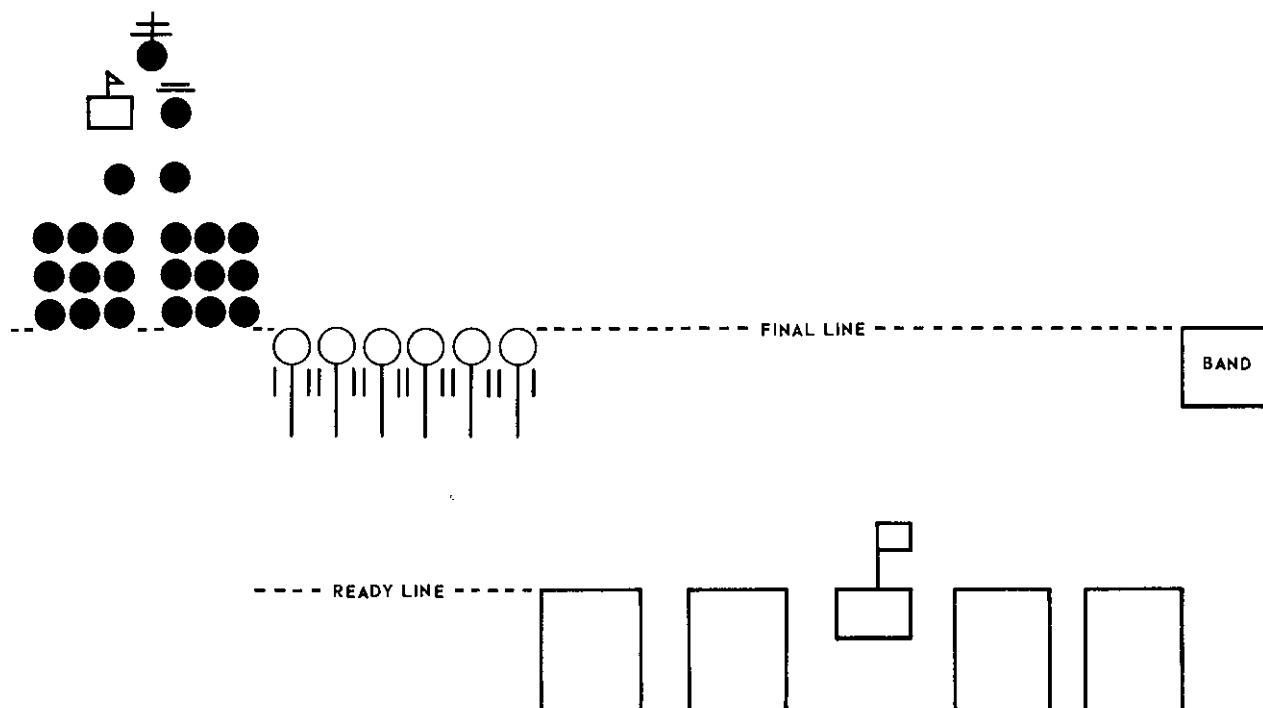


Figure 61.11. Position of salute battery and personnel prior to the review.

## 150. Sequence of Events and Individual Actions

### a. Formations of Troops.

(1) Upon hearing the band sound *attention*, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, BATTERY, ATTENTION, and then *faces about*.

(2) Upon completion of *adjutant's call*, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, RIGHT, FACE. He then commands, SECTIONS, POST.

(3) The section chiefs in sequence (6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1) command FORWARD, MARCH, or COLUMN HALF RIGHT, MARCH. The sections march forward along the *final line* and *halt* when centered on the piece.

(4) The battery commander *faces* to the left and commands himself and his staff, COLUMN HALF RIGHT, MARCH. They march forward (inclining as necessary) so that when *halted* the battery commander will be six steps from and centered on the firing battery. The chief of section and the counter should be centered and three steps to the rear of the commander. The executive officer is on line with the guidon bearer.

(5) When the battery commander has *halted* his staff he then *faces* to the right and commands, LEFT, FACE. He then commands, DRESS RIGHT, DRESS, READY, FRONT, and PARADE, REST (for large reviews the command *at ease* may be substituted for *parade rest*). He then *faces about* and executes *parade rest*.

(6) The battery then takes its commands or directives from the adjutant and the commander of troops.

### b. Presentation or Honors.

(1) When the commander of troops has directed *order arms* (adjutant has taken his post), the battery commander *faces about* and commands, ORDER, ARMS. He then directs, FIRE THE SALUTE, and *faces about*.

(2) The battery commander will quietly command himself and the guidon bearer to *present* and *order arms* as appropriate.

(3) The executive officer, counter, and chief of firing battery *face about*. The executive officer commands, CANNONEER, POST.

(4) The cannoneers immediately *move* to their firing positions.

(5) The executive officer commands, WITH BLANK AMMUNITION, (Pause) LOAD. He then commands, STAND BY NUMBER ONE.

(6) As each piece is ready to fire, the section chief raises his arm (nearest the executive officer) and looks at the executive officer.

(7) When all section chiefs have their arms raised, the executive officer raises his right arm and looks at the commander of troops.

(8) The commander of troops takes the raised arm as the signal that the battery is ready to fire. He then *faces about* and commands (himself and his staff), PRESENT, ARMS.

(9) As the commander of troop's hand touches his headgear, the executive officer *signals* the first piece to fire.

(10) The executive officer will drop his arm to a horizontal position and then raise it back to a vertical position for each round. Rounds are fired at 3-second intervals.

(11) During the salute, as the second to last round is fired, the counter *faces about* and announces, ELEVEN (e.g.).

(12) As the next to last round is fired the chief of firing battery *faces about* and announces, TWELVE (e.g.). This is the signal for the executive officer to fire one more round.

(13) During the firing each section will immediately load after each round and be prepared to fire in case of a misfire.

(14) When the last round has been fired the executive officer *signals cease fire* and then *signals unload*.

(15) When all pieces are unloaded and the cannoneers are at *attention*, the executive officer commands, TO THE REAR OF THE PIECE, FALL IN. (Cannoneers automatically fall in at *dress right*); he then commands READY, FRONT, PARADE, REST.

(16) When all sections are back in *position* on the *final line*, the executive officer *faces about*.

### c. Inspection.

(1) As the reviewing party approaches the first piece, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, BATTERY, ATTENTION. He then *faces* to the front and (over his right shoulder) commands, *eyes right*.

(2) The battery commander and executive officer *salute*.

(3) The guidon bearer executes *eyes right* and *present guidon*.

(4) All others execute *eyes right* and follow the reviewing officer, turning their heads until he reaches their front.

(5) When the reviewing party has passed the last piece, the battery commander commands, ORDER, ARMS, for himself, the executive officer, and the guidon bearer. He then faces about. When the reviewing party has cleared the right rear of his unit he then commands, PARADE, REST, and then *faces about* and assumes the *parade rest* position.

*d. Honors to the Nation.* The battery executes appropriate movements on command or directives by the commander of troops.

*e. Remarks.* Same as for Honors to the Nation.

*f. March in Review.*

(1) On the command or directive to *pass in review*, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, PARADE, REST. He then *faces about* and assumes *parade rest*.

(2) When the Colors are passing to their front, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, BATTERY, ATTENTION, and PRESENT, ARMS. He then *faces about* and executes the hand *salute*.

(3) When the Colors have passed, the battery commander terminates his *salute*, *faces about*, and commands, ORDER, ARMS, and PARADE, REST. He then *faces about* and assumes *parade rest*.

*g. Conclusion.*

(1) When the band begins the 8-bar drum beat (prior to the Army Song), the battery commander *faces about* and commands, BATTERY, ATTENTION. He then *faces about*.

(2) When the band has finished playing The Army Song, the battery commander *faces about* and commands, REST.

## Section VI. REVEILLE

### 151. General

Reveille is a ceremony in which the unit honors the National Flag as it is raised in the morning. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the commander. The installation commander will set the time for sounding reveille.

### 152. Sequence of Events

*a.* The unit is formed facing the flag 5 minutes (if possible) prior to the sounding of reveille.

*b.* At 4 minutes prior to the sounding of reveille, the adjutant or other appointed officer (normally the duty officer) takes his position centered on the line of troops and commands the unit to *attention* and then commands REPORT.

*c.* All subunits (companies, batteries, or troops) report in succession from right to left,

"Sir, —Company all present or accounted for," or "Sir, —Company, —men absent." *Salutes* are exchanged with each report.

*d.* The adjutant then commands, PARADE, REST, and then executes *parade rest* himself. Approximately 30 seconds prior to the sounding of reveille the adjutant commands the unit to *attention* and commands, PRESENT, ARMS, so the unit is at *present arms* when the first note of reveille is sounded.

*e.* After the last note of reveille has sounded, the adjutant commands, ORDER, ARMS, and TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS. The unit commanders *salute*. The adjutant returns all *salutes* with one salute. This terminates the ceremony.

*Note.* When a unit conducts the reveille ceremony, not as a member of a major command, battalion, or company, the sequence of events remain the same except the unit commander gives all commands.

## Section VII. COMMAND REVEILLE

### 153. General

Command reveille is the reveille ceremony conducted with all members of the command present. Normally, command reveille is conducted by a battalion or larger size unit.

### 154. Sequence of Events

*a.* The unit is formed in line formation facing the flag, if possible. Subunits may be in mass formation.

*b.* Subunits will be commanded to *attention*

at the approach of the commander and his staff.

c. The commander of troops takes his post two steps in front of and centered on his staff and commands, FORWARD, MARCH, and marches his staff to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. The commander of troops will give the proper commands in order to *halt* his staff in a position facing the line of troops.

d. As soon as the staff is *halted* by the commander of troops, the adjutant moves without command from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders.

e. The adjutant commands, PRESENT, ARMS, *faces* the commander of troops, *salutes*, and reports, "Sir, The battalion (brigade) is formed."

f. The commander of troops returns the salute and directs the adjutant to *post*.

g. The adjutant moves to his position as right flank member of the staff.

h. The commander of troops commands, ORDER, ARMS, as soon as the adjutant is in position.

i. The commander of troops turns his head to the right and directs the adjutant, RECEIVE THE REPORT.

j. The adjutant moves to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders and commands, REPORT.

k. Unit commanders *salute* and *report* in succession from right to left, "Sir, Company all present or accounted for."

l. The adjutant returns each unit commander's *salute*.

m. After all unit commanders have *reported*, the adjutant *faces* the commander of troops, *salutes*, and *reports*, "Sir, All present or accounted for."

n. The commander of troops returns the *salute* and directs the adjutant, PUBLISH THE ORDERS.

o. The adjutant *faces about* without saluting and commands, ATTENTION TO ORDERS. The adjutant then reads any orders or makes any announcements the commander of troops desires to publish.

p. The adjutant, upon completion of the publishing of orders, *faces about* and takes his post with the staff without saluting.

q. When the adjutant is in position, the left flank staff member commands: RIGHT, FACE; FORWARD, MARCH; COLUMN LEFT, MARCH, and COLUMN LEFT, MARCH. When the staff is centered on the commander of troops he then commands, STAFF, HALT, LEFT, FACE. Approximately 30 seconds prior to the sounding of reveille the commander of troops commands, PRESENT, ARMS, executes *about face*, and commands, STAFF PRESENT, ARMS. Reveille is then sounded either by record or field music as the flag is raised. After the last note of music the commander of troops commands, STAFF ORDER, ARMS, executes *about face*, and commands (the units to), ORDER, ARMS; he then directs, TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS.

r. The unit commanders *salute*. The commander of troops returns all salutes with one *salute*. The commander of troops marches his staff away or dismisses them at this time. This terminates the ceremony.

## Section VIII. RETREAT

### 155. General

Retreat is a ceremony in which the unit pays honors to the National Flag when it is lowered in the evening. This ceremony is conducted at the direction of the unit commanders.

### 156. Sequence of Events

a. The unit is formed facing the flag 5 minutes (if possible) prior to the sounding of retreat.

b. At 4 minutes prior to the sounding of retreat, the adjutant or other appointed officer takes his position centered on the line of troops and commands, BATTALION, ATTENTION, and then PARADE, REST.

c. The adjutant executes *parade rest* and waits until the last note of retreat has sounded. Then he commands, BATTALION, ATTENTION, and PRESENT, ARMS, so that the unit is at *present arms* when the first note of To The Colors or the National Anthem is sounded.

d. At the last note of To The Color or the National Anthem, the adjutant commands, ORDER, ARMS, and TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS.

e. Unit commanders render the hand *salute*.

The adjutant returns all *salutes* with one *salute*. This terminates the retreat formation.

*Note.* When subordinate units stand retreat, not as a part of a major command, the sequence is the same except the unit commander gives the commands.

## Section IX. COMMAND RETREAT

### 157. General

Command retreat is a retreat ceremony conducted with all members of the command present. Normally the command retreat is conducted by a battalion or larger size unit.

### 158. Sequence of Events

a. The unit is formed in line formation facing the flag, if possible. Subunits may be in mass formation.

b. Subunits will be brought to *attention* at the approach of the commander and his staff, or at a predesignated signal.

c. The commander of troops forms his staff in line, takes his position two steps in front of the staff, and marches them to a position centered on and in front of the line of troops. He will give the proper commands to his staff to have himself and his staff facing the line of troops when *halted*.

d. The adjutant, without command, moves from his position with the staff to a position midway between the commander of troops and the line of unit commanders as soon as the staff is halted.

e. The adjutant commands, REPORT. All unit commanders *salute* and report in succession from right to left, "Sir, — Company all present or accounted for." The adjutant returns each *salute*.

f. The adjutant then commands, PRESENT, ARMS, *faces about*, *salutes*, and reports to the

commander of troops, "Sir, All present or accounted for."

g. The commander of troops returns the *salute* and directs the adjutant, POST.

h. The adjutant moves to his position in the staff.

i. The commander of troops commands, ORDER, ARMS.

j. The left flank member of the staff will give the *commands* to move the staff from behind the commander of troops to a position two steps in front of the commander of troops.

k. The commander of troops commands, PARADE, REST. Retreat is sounded.

l. After the last note of retreat, the commander of troops commands, BATTALION, ATTENTION, and PRESENT, ARMS. He then executes *about face* and commands (himself and his staff), PRESENT, ARMS. To The Color or the National Anthem is sounded as the flag is lowered.

m. After the last note of To The Color or the National Anthem, the commander of troops commands (himself and his staff), ORDER, ARMS, and *faces about*. He then commands, ORDER, ARMS, and TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR UNITS. The unit commanders render the hand *salute*. The commander of troops returns all *salutes* with one *salute*.

n. The commander of troops marches his staff away or dismisses them at this time.

## Section X. CIVILIAN PARTICIPATION IN MILITARY CEREMONIES

### 159. General

The purpose of this section is to serve as a guide for commanders in planning and conducting military ceremonies with civilian participation.

### 160. Types of Ceremonies

Civilians may participate in three general categories of military ceremonies:

a. Ceremonies in which civilians present awards.

b. Ceremonies in which civilians receive awards.

c. Ceremonies in which civilians are honored.

### 161. Civilians Presenting Awards

This category includes those occasions on which the award is made to another civilian and those



in which the award is presented to military personnel by a civilian. These ceremonies will be conducted as outlined in paragraph 126 with the following exceptions:

*a.* The reviewing officer will be accompanied to the reviewing stand by the civilian. The reviewing officer may relinquish the place of honor to the civilian.

*b.* The civilian should participate in the ceremony in the same manner as the reviewing officer, accompanying him throughout the sequence of events.

*c.* Because of lack of familiarity with military ceremonies, it may be necessary to brief the civilian before and/or during the conduct of the ceremony.

### **161.1. Civilians Receiving Awards**

*a.* Conduct of these ceremonies should be guided by paragraph 126 with the following exceptions:

(1) Civilians should be initially positioned to the left of the reviewing stand and not marched forward with the military personnel, if any, to receive awards.

(2) When the Colors are brought forward civilians will move to a position five steps in front of and centered on the Colors, or to the left of military personnel being decorated.

(3) When the awardees are posted, civilians will move to a position in line with and to the left of the military awardees. If there are no military awardees, the civilians will move to the left of the reviewing stand as stated in paragraph 126.

*b.* When this ceremony is conducted for the purpose of presenting posthumous awards, other types of awards should not be incorporated. It may be desirable to have an escort officer accompany relatives of persons receiving posthumous awards.

### **161.2. Reviews in Honor of Civilians**

*a.* Government employees, private citizens, and local, state, national or foreign officials may be honored by a review.

*b.* Consult AR 600-25 for special honors due certain officials. Other civilians may be honored as noted in *a* above, by participating in the place of or with the reviewing officer.

## **Section XI. FUNERALS**

### **161.3. General**

*a.* Military funerals are divided into the three following classes:

(1) With chapel service, followed by the march to the grave or place of local disposition with the prescribed escort.

(2) Without chapel service, the funeral procession forming at the entrance to (or at a point within a reasonable distance of) the cemetery.

(3) With graveside service only.

*b.* A full military funeral normally consists of the following elements:

(1) Band.

(2) Escort appropriate to the grade of the deceased, including a firing squad and bugler (AR 600-25).

(3) Colors.

(4) Clergy.

(5) Caisson and active pallbearers.

(6) Caparisoned horse (if the deceased was a member of a mounted unit).

(7) Honorary pallbearers.

*c.* Upon request, chaplains will conduct or arrange for appropriate burial services at interment of members of the military service, active and retired, and for members of their families. The family of the deceased (or its representative) may, however, request some other clergyman to officiate in lieu of a military chaplain. A civilian clergyman can conduct all religious elements of a military funeral or interment. The desires of the family are given the fullest consideration possible in the selection of elements involved, but the funeral is conducted as prescribed in this manual.

*d.* The commanding officer or his representative, in coordination with the cemetery superintendent and the funeral director, makes the funeral arrangements and supervises the conduct of the funeral.

*e.* When honorary pallbearers are desired, they are selected by the family of the deceased or its representative, or when the family or its representative so desires, by the commanding officer.

f. At a military funeral all persons in the military service in uniform attending in their individual capacity will *face* the casket and execute the hand *salute* at the following times: when honors, if any, are sounded; at any time when the casket is being moved (the exception being when they themselves are moving); during cannon salutes, if sounded; during the firing of volleys; and while Taps is being played. Honorary pallbearers in uniform will conform to these instructions when not in motion. Military personnel in civilian clothes in the above cases, and during the service at the grave, will stand at *attention* uncovered and hold the head-dress over the left side of the chest, or if no head-dress is worn the right hand will be held over the heart. Female military personnel in civilian clothes will hold the right hand over the heart. During the religious graveside service, all personnel will bow their heads at the words, "Let us pray." All personnel except the active pallbearers will follow the example of the officiating chaplain. If he uncovers, they will uncover, if he remains covered they will remain covered. When the officiating chaplain wears a biretta (clerical headpiece) during the graveside service all personnel as indicated above will uncover. When the officiating chaplain wears a yarmulke (Jewish skull cap) all personnel will remain covered.

g. When arms are presented at the military funeral of a person entitled to personal honors, the prescribed *ruffles and flourishes* are sounded. This is followed immediately by the National Anthem (or To The Color), or the march prescribed for the grade of the deceased, except when arms are presented at the close of the benediction at the grave (AR 600-25).

h. The remains of a member of the Armed Forces, who died while on active duty, may be consigned direct to a national cemetery from a military installation. In such cases, the cemetery superintendent will, regardless of time of arrival, if not otherwise provided for, engage a funeral director to receive the remains at the common-carrier terminal, hold them at his establishment until the date of the funeral, if necessary, and deliver them to the cemetery. The superintendent will not authorize a funeral director to render any other service incident to the interment.

i. The word "chapel" is interpreted to include the church, home or other place where services are held, exclusive of the service at the grave.

j. The word "casket" is interpreted to include a receptacle containing the cremated remains of the deceased.

#### 161.4. Funeral With Chapel Service

a. Before the beginning of the service, the funeral escort is formed in line facing the chapel. The band forms on the flank toward which it is to march.

b. Members of the immediate family, relatives, and friends of the deceased are requested to enter the chapel and be seated before the casket is taken in. Members of the immediate family and relatives occupy front seats on the right of the chapel.

c. The conveyance bearing the remains to the chapel should arrive in front of the chapel a few moments before the time set for the service. Since the casket normally is covered with the National Color, the escort is called to *attention* and the escort commander *salutes* as the conveyance passes. When all is in readiness to move the casket into the chapel, the commander of the escort brings the escort to *present arms*. As the escort commander *presents arms*, the band renders honors, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the casket is removed from the conveyance by the active pallbearers and carried between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, if any, into the chapel. The remains are handled in a dignified, reverent, and military manner-insuring that the movement of the casket is feet first at all times. As soon as the casket enters the chapel, the band ceases to play. The escort then is brought to the *order* and given *at ease*.

d. When honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in two ranks, each facing the other, forming an aisle from the conveyance to the entrance of the chapel. At the first note of the music, and while the casket is being borne between the ranks of honorary pallbearers, they *uncover* or *salute* as prescribed in paragraph 161.3. They then follow the casket in column of twos and occupy pews to the left front.

e. When the casket has been placed upon the church truck, two active pallbearers push the

truck to the front of the church while the other active pallbearers move to the vestibule and await the termination of the church service. If there is no church truck, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the front of the church as instructed by the chaplain before the service. When no honorary pallbearers are used and if the active pallbearers are selected friends of the family, they may, if desired by the family, occupy the pews to the left front of the church.

f. After the chapel service, the honorary pallbearers (if present) precede the casket in column of twos as the two active pallbearers push the church truck to the entrance of the chapel. The honorary pallbearers again form an aisle from the entrance of the chapel to the caisson or hearse and *uncover* or *salute* as prescribed. When the casket has been placed on the caisson or in the hearse, the honorary pallbearers enter their conveyances. When marching, the honorary pallbearers form columns of files on each side of the caisson or hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the caisson or hearse.

g. The casket, followed by the family group, is moved to the entrance immediately behind the honorary pallbearers. As soon as the honorary pallbearers have taken their positions, the active pallbearers carry the casket to the caisson or hearse and form in a column of twos behind it if the honorary pallbearers march. If the honorary pallbearers do not march, the active pallbearers form files on each side of the caisson or hearse, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels. The family group remains at the chapel entrance until the honorary pallbearers have broken ranks to enter their conveyances or have taken their positions for marching. The members of the family group then are guided to their conveyances.

h. When the casket appears at the entrance of the chapel at the conclusion of the service, the funeral escort and band repeat the procedure as prescribed for entering the chapel. The band *ceases* playing and the escort is brought to the *order* when the casket has been secured to the caisson.

i. The procession is then formed in the following order:

- (1) Escort commander.

- (2) Band.

- (3) Escort, including colors, firing squad, and bugler. (Firing party and bugler may be prepositioned in the vicinity of the gravesite for full honor funerals (AR 600-25).)

- (4) Honorary pallbearers, if riding in cars.

- (5) Clergy.

- (6) Caisson or hearse, and honorary pallbearers, if walking.

- (7) Active pallbearers.

- (8) Personal flag.

- (9) Caparisoned horse (para. 161.3 b (6)).

- (10) Family.

- (11) Friends, patriotic or fraternal organizations.

j. When the procession has been formed, the band and escort are put in *march* by the escort commander. The elements in the rear conform. The procession *marches* slowly to solemn music. When there is considerable distance from the chapel to the grave, the escort, after leaving the vicinity of the chapel, may *march* in quick time. The band will play appropriate music throughout the *march*. When the escort is in the vicinity of the grave, it *resumes* a slow cadence to solemn music. Customary music will be used.

k. As the procession approaches the grave, the marching elements move directly to their predesignated positions. The band and military escort are formed in line in view of the next of kin. The other marching elements are placed as near as practicable to the grave. The firing party is positioned so that it will not fire directly over the mourners but over the grave, and so that it is in view of the next of kin.

l. As soon as the caisson is *halted*, the honorary pallbearers are *formed* in two ranks, forming an aisle extending from the caisson toward the grave. When the grave is too near the road to permit this formation, they *take* their position at the grave before the removal of the casket from the caisson.

m. When all is in readiness to move the casket from the caisson, the escort commander commands, PRESENT, ARMS. At the command *arms*, the band renders honors, if appropriate, followed by a hymn. At the first note of the hymn, the active pallbearers remove the casket

from the caisson. At the first note of Taps, and until its last note has sounded, military personnel attending in an individual capacity and honorary pallbearers *uncover* or *salute*.

n. Preceded by the chaplain and the cemetery representative or funeral director, the active pallbearers bear the casket between the ranks of honorary pallbearers. As soon as the casket has passed, the honorary pallbearers *face* toward the grave and follow the casket in column of twos, followed by the family and friends. The active pallbearers upon reaching the grave place the casket on the lowering device. They remain in place *facing* the casket. They *raise* the flag from the casket and hold it in a horizontal position, waist high, until the conclusion of Taps.

o. During the movement of the casket from the caisson or hearse to the grave, the escort is brought to *present arms*. When the casket has been placed over the grave, the band ceases playing and the escort is brought to *order arms*. The commander of the escort then commands, PARADE, REST.

p. When the escort has been brought to *parade rest*, the chaplain conducts the graveside service. At the conclusion of the benediction, he moves two steps to the side or rear.

q. When the service has been completed, the commander brings the escort to *attention*. He then commands: ESCORT PRESENT, ARMS; FIRING PARTY, FIRE THREE VOLLEYS. The firing party fires three volleys of blank cartridges, assumes the position of *present arms* at the command of the noncommissioned officer in charge, and remains in this *position* until the conclusion of Taps. The bugler positioned near the firing party and in view of the next of kin sounds Taps immediately following the last volley.

r. At the conclusion of Taps, the rifles of the firing party are locked and the entire escort then is brought to *order arms*. The active pallbearers then fold the flag into the shape of a cocked hat (fig. 61.12). They do not let the flag touch the casket. The band plays appropriate music as the flag is folded. The flag, when folded, is passed to a pallbearer at the head of the grave who *faces* left and places the flag at chest level in the hands of the superintendent of the cemetery or his representative. The pall-

bearer *salutes* the flag for 3 seconds and then *faces* right to assume his original position. The active pallbearers *face* left or right together and *march* away from the grave in column of twos. The superintendent of the cemetery, or his representative, then makes disposition of the flag as prescribed in AR 840-10. The band and escort remain in position until the family begins to move away from the grave. The band and escort are then put in *march* in quick time by the escort commander. The other elements conform. At the first *halt*, the rifles of the firing party are unloaded and inspected.

s. On the return *march*, the band does not play in the immediate vicinity of the grave. In a small cemetery this is considered as within the cemetery limits. In a large cemetery this is considered as a distance from the grave so short that the playing would detract from the solemnity of the occasion. Care is exercised to avoid disturbing other funeral processions or services which may be passed on the route of march.

#### 161.5. Funeral Without Chapel Service, but With Procession and Graveside Service

a. When the escort for a military funeral forms at or near the entrance to the cemetery, the officer in charge supervises the transfer of the casket from the hearse to the caisson.

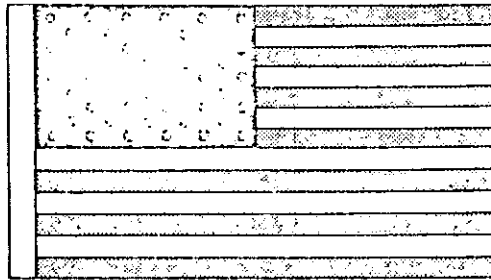
b. When honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in a single line facing the caisson; the leading honorary pallbearer is opposite to the line on which the hearse is halted. When more than 12 honorary pallbearers are present, they are formed in double rank.

c. While the casket is being transferred from the hearse to the caisson, the escort is brought to *present arms* and the band plays appropriate music. The honorary pallbearers *uncover* or *salute* as described in paragraph 161.3. During the transfer of the casket, the family and friends remain in their conveyances.

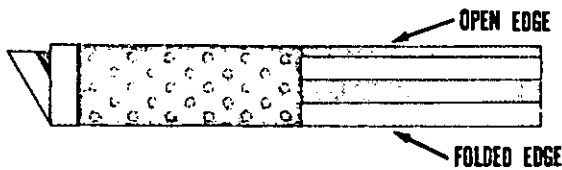
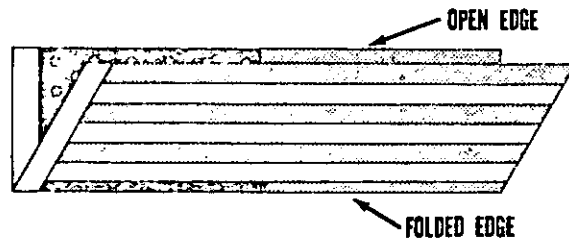
d. The funeral procession then is formed and proceeds as prescribed.

#### 161.6. Graveside Service

a. For this type funeral (without chapel service) all elements of a military funeral except the caisson or hearse and caparisoned horse are present and used as described in paragraph 161.4. However, if troops are not con-

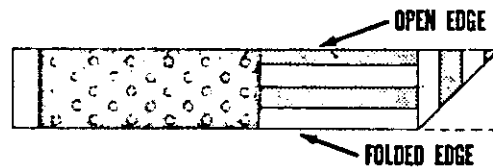


**FOLD THE LOWER STRIPED SECTION OF THE FLAG OVER THE BLUE FIELD.**

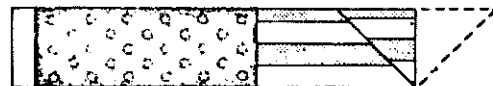


**FOLD THE FOLDED EDGE OVER TO MEET THE OPEN EDGE.**

**START A TRIANGULAR FOLD BY BRINGING THE STRIPED CORNER OF THE FOLDED EDGE TO THE OPEN EDGE.**



**FOLD THE OUTER POINT INWARD PARALLEL WITH THE OPEN EDGE TO FORM A SECOND TRIANGLE.**



**CONTINUE FOLDING UNTIL THE ENTIRE LENGTH OF THE FLAG IS FOLDED INTO A TRIANGLE WITH ONLY THE BLUE FIELD AND MARGIN SHOWING.**



**TUCK THE REMAINING MARGIN INTO THE POCKET FORMED BY THE FOLDS AT THE BLUE FIELD EDGE OF THE FLAG.**



**THE PROPERLY FOLDED FLAG SHOULD RESEMBLE A COCKED HAT.**



*Figure 61.12. Correct method of folding the United States flag.*

veniently available or if the family desires to eliminate other elements, the following are used:

- (1) Clergy.
- (2) Officer in charge or noncommissioned officer in charge appropriate to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25).
- (3) Active pallbearers.
- (4) Firing party.
- (5) Bugler.
- (6) Personal flag bearers (if appropriate to grade of deceased).

b. The military elements participating in a graveside service are in position before the arrival of the remains.

### 161.7. Cremated Remains

a. When the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the provisions of paragraphs 161.4 through 161.6, with necessary modifications, will govern.

b. For all phases of the funeral where the cremated remains are carried by hand, one man is detailed to carry the receptacle containing the ashes and another is detailed to carry the flag, folded into the shape of a cocked hat (fig. 61.12). The pallbearer carrying the flag is always positioned to the right of the remains. When the receptacle is carried from the conveyance into the chapel and from the chapel to the conveyance these two men are the only participants in the ceremony. During the procession to the graveside the receptacle and flag are carried by the two enlisted men mentioned above and followed by four additional pallbearers. When the container has been placed on the gravesite, all six men unfold the flag and hold it over the grave.

c. When the receptacle and flag are placed before the chancel of the chapel or transported to gravesite by vehicle or caisson, the receptacle and folded flag are placed side by side. If the pallbearers walk to the gravesite, the two bearers carrying the receptacle and the flag join the other four pallbearers already prepositioned on either side of the conveyance.

d. When no vehicle or caisson is used, suitable transportation is provided for the receptacle bearer and the other pallbearers.

e. In cases where the remains are conducted to a crematory and the ashes are to be interred

with military honors at a later time, the ceremony consists only of the escort to the crematory. *Arms are presented* as the remains are borne into the crematory. The firing of volleys and the sounding of Taps are omitted. When the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory and when no further military honors are anticipated, the volleys are fired and Taps is sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer.

### 161.8. Ceremony Before Shipment of Remains

When the remains of a deceased officer or soldier are moved to a railway station or other point for shipment to a distant place for interment or final disposition, funeral services are modified as necessary. When no further military honors are anticipated at the place of interment or final disposition, the volleys are fired and Taps sounded at the discretion of the commanding officer. When military honors are anticipated at the place of final disposition, the firing of volleys and the sounding of Taps are omitted.

### 161.9. Cannon Salute

a. When the funeral of a general officer on the active or retired list, who was entitled to a cannon salute, takes place at or near a military installation, minute guns equal to the number to which the officer was entitled (AR 600-25) will be fired at noon on the day of the funeral.

b. Immediately preceding the benediction, a cannon salute corresponding to the grade of the deceased (AR 600-25) will be fired at 5-second intervals. Following the benediction, three volleys of artillery, cannons firing simultaneously or three volleys of musketry, will be fired.

### 161.10. Funerals Off Post

a. The commander upon request provides a funeral detail for deceased Army personnel when the burial is to take place in a civilian or national cemetery off the installation. The detail is normally composed as follows:

- (1) Noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
- (2) Six pallbearers.
- (3) Firing squad.
- (4) Bugler.

b. The arrangements for the funeral are supervised by the Survivor Assistance Officer. The

NCOIC of the funeral detail coordinates all aspects of the ceremonies with the Survivor Assistance Officer.

c. Upon arrival at the city where the funeral is to be conducted the NCOIC meets the Survivor Assistance Officer and ascertains the sequence of the ceremony. The normal sequence of events is as follows:

(1) *At the funeral home.* The pallbearers act as a guard of honor when the casket is being prepared for movement. Upon the order of the funeral director the pallbearers will move the casket to the hearse. The pallbearers should be certain to move the casket *feet first* at all times.

(2) *At the church.*

(a) The NCOIC may utilize the firing squad as an honor guard when the pallbearers are moving the casket from the hearse to the church. If this is done the firing squad will be formed in two ranks, each facing the other, forming an aisle from the convoy and to the entrance of the church. While the casket is being borne between them, they will *present arms* until the casket enters the church. The firing squad will not enter the church. Under the supervision of the NCOIC the firing squad will proceed to the interment site and await the arrival of the funeral cortege.

(b) When the casket has been placed upon the church truck, two pallbearers push the truck to the front of the church while the other pallbearers move to the vestibule and await the termination of the church service. If there is no church truck the pallbearers carry the casket to the front of the church as instructed by the funeral director or minister concerned. If desired by the family the pallbearers may occupy the pews to the left front of the church.

(c) After the church service, the pallbearers, under the direction of the funeral director, will move the casket to the conveyance. When the casket has been placed in the hearse, the pallbearers enter their conveyance.

(3) *At the cemetery.*

(a) The prepositioned firing squad will *present arms*, as soon as the casket is removed from the hearse.

(b) The pallbearers carry the casket, *feet first*, to the grave. Upon reaching the grave

the casket is placed on the lowering device. The pallbearers raise the flag from the casket and hold it in a horizontal position, waist high, until the conclusion of Taps.

(c) The remainder of the ceremony is conducted as prescribed in paragraph 161.4 *p* through *s* and paragraph 161.5.

(d) Firing is conducted as outlined in paragraphs 161.16 through 161.18.

### **161.11. Participation of Aviation**

When aviation participates in a military funeral it is timed so that the airplanes appear over the procession while the remains are being borne to the grave.

### **161.12. Participation of Fraternal or Patriotic Organizations**

a. At the request of the immediate family of the deceased or its representative, military organizations of which the deceased was a member may be permitted to take part in the funeral service.

b. When the ritual is military or semimilitary, the rites begin immediately upon the conclusion of the Army religious service. When the ritual contains the firing of three volleys of musketry and the sounding of Taps, the military firing squad and bugler are used. The sounding of Taps concludes the funeral services.

c. All fraternal or patriotic organizations wishing to conduct services at gravesite will conduct such services at the conclusion of the military portion of the ceremony which ends with Taps.

### **161.13. Duties of the Chaplain**

a. The chaplain takes his position in front of the chapel before the arrival of the remains. He precedes the casket when it is borne from the conveyance into the chapel, from the chapel to the conveyance, and from the conveyance to the grave. While the remains are being placed on the caisson or in the hearse, he stands uncovered at the rear and to the side facing the caisson or hearse. When he is wearing vestments, he may, at his discretion, proceed from the chancel to the sacristy (vestry) at the conclusion of the chapel service and divest, joining the procession before it moves from the chapel.

b. When the procession is formed at the entrance to the cemetery or other point and the chapel service is omitted, he stands uncovered at the rear and to the side facing the caisson while the remains are being transferred from the hearse to the caisson. In cold or inclement weather, he may remain covered except when reading such parts of the service as require him to be uncovered.

#### 161.14. Preliminary Arrangements

The officer in charge of a military funeral, the commander of the escort, and the superintendent of the cemetery or his representative visit the places involved and make careful arrangements before the time set for the funeral. They determine the positions at the grave for the various elements of the funeral, and make arrangements for traffic control.

#### 161.15. Floral Tributes

a. In the absence of the chaplain, the chaplain's assistant will assist the funeral director in arranging all floral tributes in the chapel. The commanding officer or his representative will coordinate with the funeral director the necessary transportation for prompt transfer of floral tributes from the chapel to the gravesite. The conveyance bearing the floral tributes is loaded promptly at the conclusion of the chapel service. It precedes the funeral procession, moving as rapidly as practicable to the site of the grave. The funeral procession does not move from the chapel until the conveyance carrying the floral tributes has cleared the escort.

b. The funeral director or the cemetery representative is responsible for removing cards and making a record that gives a brief description of the floral piece pertaining to each card. After completion of the funeral services, the cards and records are turned over to a member of the family of the deceased.

#### 161.16. General Rules for Ceremonial Firing

a. For ceremonial firing, the firing party consists of not more than seven riflemen and one noncommissioned officer in charge. The party is formed in line before firing.

b. Rifles are *loaded* while locked.

c. Except during firing, after the rifles have been ordered *loaded* and *locked*, they remain

loaded and locked without command until the command *unload* and *inspection arms*.

#### 161.17. To Load

a. With the unit *halted* in any formation, the command is WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES, LOAD. At the command *load*, each rifleman *faces* half right and *moves* his right foot 10 inches to the right to a position that gives him a firm and steady stance. He *raises* or *lowers* the rifle, and drops it into his left hand, grasping it at the balance. His right hand is at the small of the stock, the muzzle held in the air at an angle of 45°.

b. For instruction in loading, the command is SIMULATE, LOAD. The movements of loading are executed except that the handling of the cartridges is simulated.

c. Magazines will be loaded with three rounds of blank cartridges.

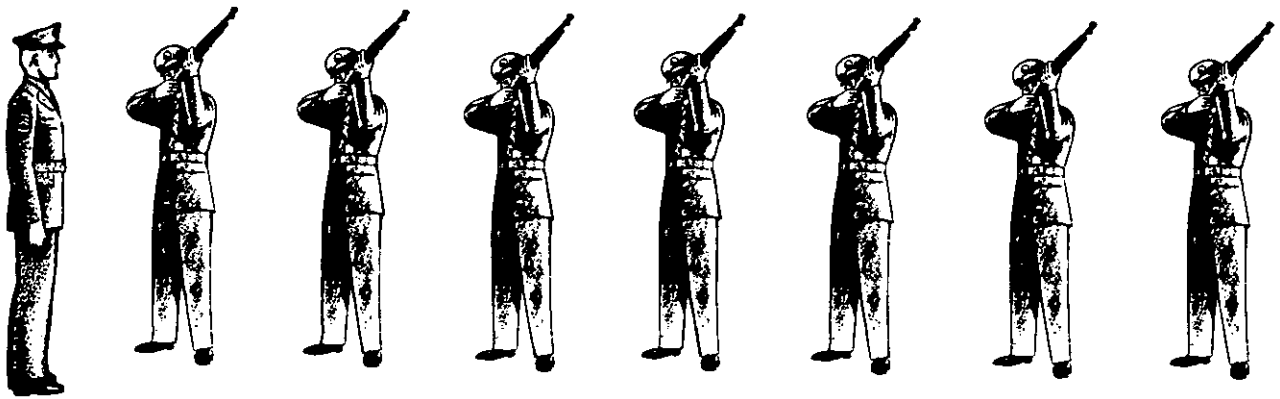
#### 161.18. To Fire by Volley

a. Being in the firing formation with the rifles *loaded*, the command is READY, AIM, FIRE. For ceremonial purposes blank ammunition and blank adaptors will be utilized. At the command *ready*, each rifleman *faces* half right, *moves* his right foot 10 inches to the right to a position that gives him a steady stance, and assumes the position of *port arms*. The safety lock of the rifle is pressed to its forward position with the trigger finger. At the command *aim*, the rifle is *raised* with both hands to a position 45° from the horizontal. The rifle rests in the palm of the left hand, and the butt is placed and held firmly against the shoulder. The right cheek is pressed firmly against the stock as far forward as possible without straining. As a safety precaution, a firing party may find it necessary to swing the muzzles of their weapons to the right or left from front to avoid firing over the attendants assembled at the gravesite (fig. 61.13), but where possible the firing party should fire over the grave. At the command *fire*, the trigger is squeezed quickly and the weapons are returned to *port arms*.

b. To continue the firing, the command is AIM, FIRE. Each command is executed as prescribed above.

c. To cease firing, the command is CEASE FIRING. Rifles not already at the position of load are brought to that position.





*Figure 61.13. Position of fire, modified, ceremonial firing.*

Page 124. Figure 77 is superseded as follows:

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | DIVISION OR DIVISION COMMANDER OF TROOPS |
|  | BRIGADE COMMANDER/COMMANDER OF TROOPS    |
|  | BATTALION COMMANDER/COMMANDER OF TROOPS  |
|  | COMPANY COMMANDER                        |
|  | COMPANY COMMANDER ALTERNATE POSITION     |
|  | EXECUTIVE OFFICER (COMPANY)              |
|  | PLATOON LEADER                           |
|  | COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR                   |
|  | FIRST SERGEANT                           |
|  | PLATOON SERGEANT                         |
|  | SECTION LEADER                           |
|  | SQUAD LEADER                             |
|  | FIRE TEAM LEADER                         |
|  | RADIOTELEPHONE OPERATOR                  |
|  | SQUAD MEMBER                             |
|  | DIRECTION TROOPS ARE FACING OR MARCHING  |
|  | GUIDON                                   |
|  | COLORS                                   |

*Figure 77. Key to symbols used in illustrations.*

*Page 148. Appendix H is rescinded.*

*Page 152. Appendix I is rescinded.*

By Order of the Secretary of the Army :

Official :

KENNETH G. WICKHAM,  
*Major General, United States Army,*  
*The Adjutant General.*

W. C. WESTMORELAND,  
*General, United States Army,*  
*Chief of Staff.*

Distribution :

To be distributed in accordance with DA Form 12-11 requirements for Drill and Ceremonies.